





Class E178

Book .1

Copyright No. H35

**COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT**





mi-34  
A

# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY

JOHN R. G. HASSARD,

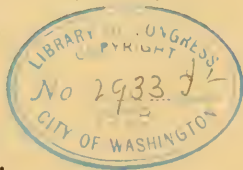
*Author of "Life of Archbishop Hughes," "Life of Pius IX.," Etc.*

WITH AN INTRODUCTION

BY THE

RIGHT REV. J. L. SPALDING, D.D.,

*Bishop of Peoria.*



NEW YORK:

THE CATHOLIC PUBLICATION SOCIETY CO.,  
9 BARCLAY STREET.

1878.

Copyright,  
THE CATHOLIC PUBLICATION SOCIETY CO.,  
1878.

E178  
.1  
.H35

## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE value of the study of history as a means of education is so evident as hardly to need statement. The young reflect but little; their knowledge is of facts and events, not of principles; and their thoughts and conversation habitually assume the historic form of narration. They seldom speak of what they think or have thought, but constantly of what they have seen or undergone; and hence the youthful mind finds more interest and instruction in the deeds than in the thoughts of men. The knowledge thus acquired is also the truest, for what we do is a more real expression of ourselves than what we think. Action is not only intelligible to every one, but its effects are often highly picturesque and appeal strongly to the imagination. History has thus the force of example. By bringing us into almost living contact with the greatest and most highly endowed members of our race, it fills us with admiration for what is noble and heroic. The effort to preserve the memory of high and worthy deeds is universal. There is no tribe so rude as not to have some record of its struggles and victories, and the most civilized nation has no deeper lesson of wisdom to teach than that which is conveyed by its own history. It is needless to insist upon this, for no one is so unreasonable as to imagine that the study of history should be excluded from the process of education.



We Americans have a history which if not ancient is honorable. The charm that is given by the consecrating and beautifying power of time is indeed wanting. The thrilling and soul-stirring incidents of an age of chivalry are absent; embattled castles frown not down upon us, and the pageant of plumed knights and highborn ladies passes not before our eyes. We seem to tread a lower plane. As of old the Israelites with no king but God entered into the promised land, so the people took possession of this New World, to which the Cross of Christ, like the pillar of fire of other days, led the way. The principles and elements of Christian civilization they brought with them to give vigor and strength in a new world to new social forms and systems. They were in a very true sense a chosen people entrusted with a Providential mission, upon the fulfilment of which the future of a large and important portion of the human race is dependent; and as the highest object of a nation cannot be self-defence, or wealth, or any other outward good, this mission must be associated with principles which are intimately related to the moral welfare and progress of the race. Our growth has been prodigious, our prosperity unbounded, our enterprise and industry keen and unwearying. The wilderness has fled from the face of a resistless army of pioneers; populous and well-built cities, the centres of a commerce that extends to the end of the world, have sprung up as while men slept; steam and electricity have made a thousand miles as but a step; upon our wide-extending plains and prairies the richest harvests wave, and from the exhaustless earth we dig the most precious ores. At the same time the opportunities of education and the means of acquiring knowledge have been brought within the reach of every one.





All this, however, is but the work of preparation—a removal of obstacles. [If our society fails to reconcile material with moral progress, and to develop man's higher nature while satisfying his lower wants, it is defective and contains within itself the germ of its dissolution. For the end of society is not to multiply indefinitely the means and opportunities of indulgence, but to form strong and noble men and women; and such characters are not created by indulgence but by self-control, which comes of self-denial.] The progress of industries, the growth of material and mechanical civilization, are interesting; but unless our views of human nature are to undergo a radical change there are other things which more nearly concern us. Dr. Brownson maintained that the mission of the United States is to reconcile authority with liberty, to establish the sovereignty of the people without social despotism, and individual freedom without anarchy. But this is the common aim of all free states, and can, therefore, hardly be considered as the peculiar mission of any nation. [Americans have hitherto been accustomed to emphasize the value of liberty, and to consider authority as in some way or other dangerously allied to despotism; they are now beginning to perceive, however, that if tyranny lurks in the shadow of authority, anarchy may very readily assume the garb of liberty; and that if a despot is ever to rule over us, he will be lifted to power by the lawless rabble, and not by those who respect and love authority. And this reveals an all-important social mission of the Church in the United States. There are various forces at work in modern society which weaken the spirit of patriotism. The facility and cheapness of travel brings about an increasing friendly intercommunion of the civilized peoples of the world, by which national prejudice and hatred are being insensibly destroyed.



The introduction of machinery has produced relations between capital and labor which are substantially the same in all manufacturing countries ; and as the working classes feel themselves aggrieved and at a disadvantage, they merge their national sentiments and seek to make common cause. Again, the frequency of revolution and the notorious unworthiness of politicians have brought government into disrepute, and, though there is a distinction between the country and the government, yet the one cannot be despised without a corresponding diminution of the love and reverence which we bear the other. And finally, as religion is always the surest inspiration and support of patriotism, the breaking down of religious beliefs in various modern nations, and notably in our own, is accompanied by a loss of patriotism. As the love of country grows cold men cease to take an interest in public affairs, or are influenced by selfish motives. Local questions take precedence of national interests, and the spirit of sectional and partisan strife is substituted for the lofty and ennobling passion of patriotism. Reverence for authority is lost, and society, in order to protect itself, is driven to appeal to force. Nothing can avert this danger but the influence of a great moral power, endowed with all the attributes which create respect and encourage obedience.

The Catholic Church is this power, and the mission which she is destined to fulfil in behalf of American society is as yet hardly suspected, though an observant mind cannot fail to perceive its vast importance. No other religion in the United States has unity of doctrine and discipline, or the consciousness of definite purposes, or a great and venerable history, or the confidence born of a thousand triumphs and of victories wrung from defeat. No other thoroughly trusts its destiny, or dares



boldly proclaim its heavenly mission and infallible authority. It is the only historic religion among us. Outside the Church there are shifting views, opinions, and theories; but there is no organic growth and progressive development of faith and discipline. Whatever may be thought of this, it can no longer be denied that Catholics are a living and growing element in American society; and hence it is not possible to ignore their views on subjects which have a bearing upon the destiny and welfare of our common country. [For my own part, I believe that he who will do most to form the character of the Catholic youth of America, will also have done most to mould the future of the American people.] In any event, it is the manifest duty of those who are entrusted with the education of our children to see that in learning the history of their country they do not lose sight of the rise, progress, and social influence of the Church in the United States. The sense of the urgency and importance of this obligation has led the publishers of the *Young Catholic's School Series* to add the present work to their list of text-books. The author's reputation as a careful and thoughtful writer is of itself sufficient assurance that his task has been well performed. The book has, however, been submitted for examination to competent judges, some of them non-Catholics, and they are unanimous in praise of its merits; and if I may be permitted to express my own opinion, I will say that I know of no other school history of the United States which is distinguished by so many excellences. The style is clear and simple, the narrative lucid and flowing; the description of remarkable incidents brief but vivid; and through the whole book there breathes the spirit of candor and truth.

No attempt is made to prove a point, or to establish



a theory, or to arrange the events of our history so as to make them illustrate any particular law or principle. Facts are stated simply as they occurred and are left to tell their own story. The tone and temper in which the work is written at once removes all suspicion of sectional, partisan, or religious prejudice. The writer is a Catholic, and is therefore able to rise above the spirit of party.

✠ J. L. SPALDING.

PEORIA, FEAST OF THE ASSUMPTION, 1878.

# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
INTRODUCTION.—The Native Races of America, . . . . .	9

---

## PART FIRST.

---

### *DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.*

---

#### CHAPTER

I. Discovery by the Northmen—Columbus—The Cabots—Vespucci, . . . . .	12
II. The Spanish Explorers—Ponce de Leon, Ayllon, Narvaez, De Soto—The First Missionaries—The Spaniards and Huguenots in Florida—St. Francis Borgia and Pope St. Pius V. and the Indians, . . . . .	22
III. The French Adventurers and Missionaries—Settlement of Canada—The Jesuits in Maine and New York—Exploration of the Mississippi—Marquette, Joliet, La Salle, . . . . .	32
IV. First English Settlements—Sir Humphrey Gilbert and Walter Raleigh—The English in Virginia—Early Voyages to New England—The Dutch in New York, . . . . .	38
V. Settlement of Virginia—Captain John Smith—Pocahontas—The First Colonial Assembly, . . . . .	46
VI. Virginia continued—Political Development—Character of the Colony, . . . . .	50
VII. Settlement of New England—The Plymouth Company—The Puritans—The Massachusetts Company, . . . . .	55
VIII. New Hampshire—Maine—Connecticut, . . . . .	67
IX. The Dutch Settlements—Swedes on the Delaware—Seizure of New Netherland by the English—New Jersey, . . . . .	71

CHAPT. I.	PAGE
X. The Catholic Colony of Maryland—Lord Baltimore—Freedom of Worship destroyed by the Protestants, . . . . .	76
XI. The Indians in New England—The Pequod War—The United Colonies—King Philip's War, . . . . .	84
XII. The Carolinas—Georgia—Gen. Oglethorpe, . . . . .	89
XIII. The Quakers—William Penn—Settlement of Pennsylvania, . . . . .	94
XIV. The Colonists and the King—Troubles in New York—The "Negro Plot"—Salem Witchcraft, . . . . .	97

---

PART SECOND.

*COLONIAL WARS.*

XV. French and English Rivalries—Enterprises of the French—King William's War, . . . . .	104
XVI. Queen Anne's War—Indians in the Carolinas—Father Rasles, . . . . .	109
XVII. The French in the Mississippi Valley—War with the Spaniards—King George's War—Capture of Louisburg, . . . . .	114
XVIII. The French and Indian War—George Washington—Benjamin Franklin, . . . . .	119
XIX. The French and Indian War continued—Braddock's Defeat—Expulsion of the Acadians, . . . . .	126
XX. The French and Indian War concluded—Capture of Louisburg—Conquest of Canada—Montcalm and Wolfe—Conspiracy of Pontiac, . . . . .	131

---

PART THIRD.

*THE REVOLUTION.*

XXI. Condition of the Colonies—Dawn of the Revolution—Writs of Assistance—The Stamp Act, . . . . .	142
XXII. The Boston Massacre—Destruction of Tea—The Boston Port Bill—The First Continental Congress, . . . . .	148
XXIII. Beginning of the War of Independence—Lexington—Concord—Bunker Hill, . . . . .	156



CHAPTER	PAGE
XXIV. Washington Commander-in-Chief—Operations in Canada—Siege of Boston, . . . . .	162
XXV. The Declaration of Independence, . . . . .	169
XXVI. Battle of Long Island—Capture of New York—Battle of White Plains, . . . . .	175
XXVII. Battle on Lake Champlain—Washington in the Jerseys—Battle of Trenton—Battle of Princeton, . . . . .	180
XXVIII. Campaign of 1777—Invitations to Foreign Officers—Affairs on Long Island Sound—Battle of the Brandywine—Capture of Philadelphia—Battle of Germantown, . . . . .	185
XXIX. Burgoyne's Invasion—Battle of Bemington—Surrender of Burgoyne, . . . . .	190
XXX. Operations of 1778—Alliance with France—Battle of Monmouth—Massacre of Wyoming, . . . . .	196
XXXI. The War in the South—Minor Operations in the North and East—Capture of Stony Point—Indian Hostilities—The Navy—John Paul Jones, . . . . .	202
XXXII. Capture of Charleston—Inglorious Campaign of Gates—Atrocities of Cornwallis—Partisan Leaders in the South, . . . . .	209
XXXIII. Treason of Benedict Arnold—Execution of Major André, . . . . .	213
XXXIV. Arrival of Count Rochambeau—Greene's able Campaign in the South—The Cowpens—Guilford Court-House—Eutaw Springs, . . . . .	217
XXXV. The End of the War—Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—Treaty of Peace and Acknowledgment of American Independence, . . . . .	223

## PART FOURTH.

## THE UNION.

XXXVI. The Constitution—Administration of Washington—Disputes with England, . . . . .	231
XXXVII. Settlement of the West, . . . . .	238
XXXVIII. The Catholic Church in the United States at the end of the Revolution, . . . . .	240

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIX. John Adams President, 1797-1801—Hostilities with France—Death of Washington, . . . . .	245
XL. Thomas Jefferson President, 1801-9—Purchase of Louisiana—War with the Barbary States—Conspiracy of Aaron Burr—Quarrel with England, . . . . .	250
XLI. James Madison President, 1809-17—Tecumseh—Second War with England, . . . . .	256
XLII. Campaign of 1813—Battle of Lake Erie—Perry, Lawrence, and Porter, . . . . .	260
XLIII. Campaign of 1814-15—Lundy's Lane—Plattsburg—Burning of Washington—Battle of New Orleans—End of the War, . . . . .	266
XLIV. War with Algiers—James Monroe President, 1817-25—Purchase of Florida—Slavery—Indian Missions, . . . . .	271
XLV. John Quincy Adams, 1825-29—Andrew Jackson, 1829-37—Seminole War—Nullification—Martin Van Buren, 1837-41, . . . . .	277
XLVI. John Tyler President, 1841-45—The Dorr Rebellion—The Mormons—Annexation of Texas, . . . . .	284
XLVII. The Mexican War—Taylor's Invasion—Fremont in California, . . . . .	288
XLVIII. General Scott's Campaign—Capture of Mexico—End of the War—California—New Mexico—The Oregon Troubles, . . . . .	294
XLIX. General Taylor President, 1849-50—Fillmore's Administration, 1850-53—Slavery—Franklin Pierce President, 1853-57—Kansas—Cuba—Know-Nothingism, . . . . .	302
L. James Buchanan President, 1857-61—Mormon Rebellion—The Dred Scott Decision—John Brown—Election of Abraham Lincoln, . . . . .	308

---

PART FIFTH.

---

THE CIVIL WAR.

LI. Secession—The Confederacy Organized—Capture of Fort Sumter—First Battle of Bull Run—Missouri and Kentucky—The Blockade—The Trent Affair, . . . . .	313
LII. Second Year of the War, 1862—Campaigns in Tennessee and Kentucky—Capture of New Orleans—The Monitor and the Merrimac, . . . . .	324



*CONTENTS.*



CHAPTER	PAGE
LIII. Second Year of the War, continued—McClellan's Peninsula Campaign—Invasion of Maryland—Antietam—Burnside at Fredericksburg. . . . .	335
LIV. Third Year of the War, 1863—Chancellorsville—Gettysburg—Vicksburg—Chickamauga—Chattanooga—Confederate Cruisers, . . . . .	343
LV. Fourth Year of the War, 1864—General Grant in Command of all the Federal Armies—Battles of the Wilderness—Siege of Petersburg—Early and Sheridan—Sherman's Atlanta Campaign—Thomas at Nashville—Sherman's March to the Sea—Capture of Savannah—Farragut at Mobile—Re-election of President Lincoln. . . . .	353
LVI. The End of the War—Assassination of President Lincoln, . . . . .	365

---

PART SIXTH.

*THE UNION RESTORED.*

---

LVII. Reconstruction—Impeachment of President Johnson—President Grant—The Treaty of Washington—The Centenary of Independence—President Hayes, . . . . .	371
LVIII. The Catholic Church in the United States in 1878, . . . . .	376

---

APPENDIX :

Declaration of Independence, . . . . .	1
Constitution, . . . . .	5
Amendments thereto, . . . . .	15
Administrations, . . . . .	20
Battle Record, . . . . .	22

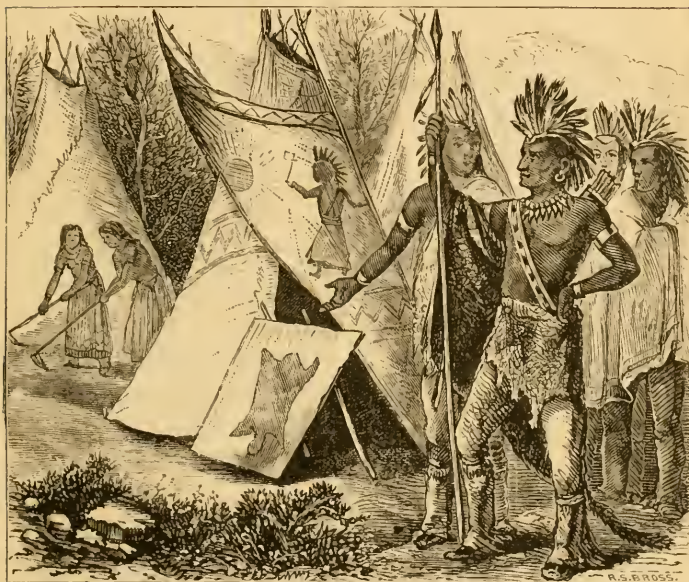


NORTH AMERICA.

# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

## INTRODUCTION.

### THE NATIVE RACES OF AMERICA.



1. **First Settlement of America.**—It is not known how the continent of America was first peopled. The red men who occupied the country at the time of its discovery by Europeans in the fifteenth century were preceded by another race, of which few and indistinct traces remain. The re-

1. How was America peopled? Whence are the Indians supposed to have come?



note ancestors of the American Indians are supposed to have migrated from the northeast of Asia, but how they came is a subject of mere conjecture.

**2. The Indian Families.**—Mexico, Central America, and parts of South America were occupied at the time when authentic history begins by tribes much more civilized than those of the territory now covered by the United States. On the North American continent there were numerous small and generally hostile tribes which are classed in certain great families.

**3.** The Algon'quin (*kin*) tribes inhabited what is now New England and the basin of the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes, and extended from Hudson's Bay to North Carolina and from the Atlantic to the Mississippi. The Mobilian or Muscogee tribes were found between Carolina and the Gulf of Mexico. The Huron-Iroquois (*ir-ro-kwah'*), including the famous Five Nations of New York, occupied a territory surrounded by the Algonquins, with whom they were always at war. The Cherokees inhabited the mountain region of Alabama, Georgia, and Carolina, with the Mobilian family all around them. West of the Mississippi were the various Sioux (*soo*) tribes of the North, the New Mexican family of the South, and still other families on the Pacific coast.

**4. Characteristics of the Indians.**—The clans or tribes embraced in these great divisions spoke different languages or dialects, and differed a great deal in disposition, but they had many characteristics in common. They were copper-colored, with coarse black hair, little or no beard, features often noble and regular, and a haughty bearing. They dressed in skins, or, where the climate was warm, went

- 
2. How did the tribes of Mexico differ from the tribes further north?  
 3. Name the great families of Indians. What territory was occupied by each?  
 4. Did all the tribes speak the same language?



nearly naked. They painted the face and body, and decorated the head with feathers.

5. They dwelt in rude huts of skin, earth, or branches, had no towns, and only a few miserable villages, lived by the chase, despised agriculture, and usually wandered from place to place. While the men hunted, fished, or fought, the women did all the drudgery of the family, carried the burdens on the march, and gathered the scanty crops of maize, potatoes, and tobacco. The weapons in use were the bow and arrow, a spear tipped with flint, a tomahawk or stone hatchet, and a club. Iron was unknown. The dog, horse, ass, ox, and sheep were not found in any part of the continent.

6. **Manners, Customs, Religion.**—Many of the islanders first seen by Columbus were gentle, amiable, and hospitable. The savages of the Northern continent were in general fierce, cruel, cunning, and warlike. They tortured their prisoners with the most shocking ingenuity, and bore pain with extraordinary firmness. They had no regular government. At the head of each tribe was a sachem, sometimes recognized as chief by descent, sometimes chosen for his bravery and wisdom; but his authority depended entirely upon his personal influence and was often disregarded.

7. The Indians recognized one Supreme Being, whom they called the Great Spirit, but they did not worship him. They believed in a Bad Spirit, whom they tried to propitiate, and in many demons, in witches, and in magic. They had some idea of a future state, imagining that after death the brave would be taken to the “happy hunting grounds.” They had no written language, but they sometimes recorded battles and other incidents by a rude sort of pictures.

---

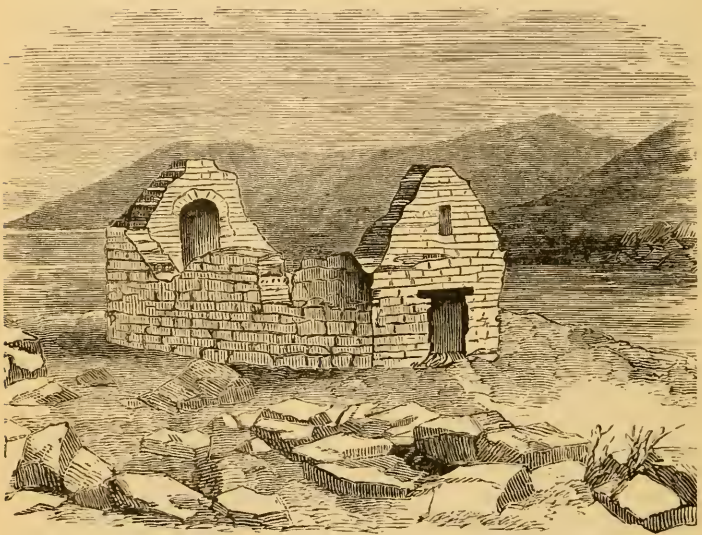
Describe their personal appearance. Dress. 5. Dwellings. Mode of life. Weapons. 6. Their dispositions. How were the tribes governed? 7. Describe their religious belief. How did they record events?

# PART FIRST.

## DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

### CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY BY THE NORTHMEN—COLUMBUS—THE CABOTS—VESPUCCI.



RUINS OF THE CATHEDRAL OF GARDAR, GREENLAND.

**1. Discovery of America.**—The date of the first discovery of America by Europeans cannot be given with absolute certainty. There are many legends of early voyages hither, centuries before Columbus, but the most ancient of them are generally regarded as fictions.

#### **2. Voyages of the Northmen and First Christian Settle-**

1. How are the legends of early discoveries generally regarded?



**ment.**—Greenland was discovered in the ninth century by an Icelander named Gunnbiorn, whose ship was driven thither by a storm. About one hundred years afterwards Greenland was visited by another Icelander named Eric. He explored it, and brought over a large body of colonists, with whom he founded two settlements on the west coast, and thence, dating from the year 1000, expeditions sailed as far south as Narraganset Bay, and probably even to the Bay of New York. Leif, the son of Eric, finding quantities of grapes about the shores of Narraganset Bay, gave the name of Vinland (*vineland*) to the fertile and beautiful country.

3. Iceland having been converted to Christianity about this time, missionaries soon came over to the North American colonists, and the Greenland settlements are said to have had at one period sixteen churches, two monasteries, and a bishop. The colonies were destroyed in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and, as communication between Iceland and the rest of the world was difficult and infrequent, the discoveries of Eric and Leif were forgotten by their own countrymen, and never known by the other peoples of Europe.



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

4. **Christopher Columbus.**  
—The existence of America was therefore unsuspected by the Christian world when Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, conceived the idea that, by sailing westward from

2. When was Greenland discovered? Describe Eric's voyages. 3. How many churches existed in Greenland? What was the fate of the colonies? Why were these voyages forgotten? 4. Who was Columbus?



some port in Europe, he could reach the shores of Asia. Commerce with the Indies was in the fifteenth century one of the chief objects of European enterprise, and the discovery of a short route to those rich countries was the favorite dream of maritime adventurers.

5. The passage around the Cape of Good Hope had not yet been attempted. Ships creeping along the northwestern coast of Africa never ventured as far as the tropic, and in the North Atlantic the boldest sailor did not trust himself beyond the Azores. To the west, it was believed, lay an impenetrable sea of darkness, and to the south a region of boiling water where no man could live for the heat. Columbus knew that the earth was round, but he supposed it to be much smaller than it really is, and he had no suspicion of the existence of a continent between the western coasts of Europe and the eastern shores of the Indies.

6. **Character and Aims of Columbus.**—In seeking for a short way to India he was not animated by love of earthly gain, but, moved by sincere piety, he hoped to become an instrument for the conversion of the heathen and the recovery of the Holy Sepulchre. “It is a curious and characteristic fact,” says Washington Irving, “which has never been particularly noticed, that the recovery of the Holy Sepulchre was one of the great objects of his ambition, meditated throughout the remainder of his life and solemnly provided for in his will. In fact, he subsequently considered it the main work for which he was chosen by Heaven as an agent, and that his great discovery was but a preparatory dispensation of Providence to furnish means for its accomplishment.”

7. **Columbus at the Court of Spain.**—Columbus explained his project and applied for aid at first to the republic of

---

What led him to desire a voyage westward? How did commerce affect enterprise at that time? 5. What were the limits of navigation? 6. What religious motives animated him? What does Irving say of Columbus?





Genoa; then to the king of Portugal; then to Henry VII. of England; next, it is said, to the republic of Venice, and afterward to certain Spanish nobles. Disappointed in all these applications, he had recourse, in 1485, to the court of Spain. Ferdinand of Aragon, and his devout and high-minded queen, Isabella of Castile, uniting their dominions, had raised the Spanish monarchy at this period to great power and renown.

8. They listened to Columbus with respect, and Isabella in particular was deeply moved by his religious projects. Cardinal Men-



ISABELLA THE CATHOLIC.

doza, archbishop of Toledo, and several other Spanish churchmen, also favored his designs; but a commission of learned men to whom Ferdinand referred the matter pronounced the scheme vain and impracticable, and after seven years' delay Columbus turned his steps toward France.

9. On the way he stopped to beg a little bread and water at the convent of La Rabida (*rah-bee'-dah*), near the small seaport of Palos, in Andalusia. The prior, Juan Perez, who had formerly been the queen's confessor, after hearing his story, persuaded him to remain at the convent while he renewed the application to Isabella. The good prior pleaded the cause of his guest with so much ability that Isabella sent for Columbus, and offered to pledge her jewels if the funds for the expedition could be obtained in no other way.

---

7. To whom did Columbus apply for aid? What was the condition of Spain in 1485? 8. How was Columbus received? To whom were his plans referred? The decision? 9. How did Perez assist him? The result?



**10. Preparations for the Voyage.**—After negotiation it was arranged that Columbus, through some of his friends, should furnish one-eighth of the necessary funds, and the crown of Castile the rest. Columbus was invested with the rank and privileges of admiral and viceroy, and granted a title to one-tenth of the profits of the enterprise, the whole of which share he proposed to devote to the recovery of the Holy Sepulchre.



FR. JUAN PEREZ.

**11.** It was eighteen years since the conception of his project; “the greater part of that time was passed in almost hopeless solicitation, amidst poverty, neglect, and taunting ridicule; the prime of his life had wasted away in the struggle; and when his perseverance was finally crowned with success he was about his fifty-sixth year” (*Irving*). In spite of the orders of the crown, it was only with the greatest difficulty that men and ships could be obtained for what almost everybody regarded as a wild and fatal adventure.

**12. Columbus Discovers the New World.**—The fleet, which at last set sail from Palos (*pah'-loce*) on the 3d of August, 1492, consisted of three small vessels, the *Santa Maria* (*mah-ree'-ah*), *Pin'ta*, and *Ni'na* (*neen'-yah*), two of which were light barks, called caravels, without decks. None of them was fit for an ocean voyage. Columbus sailed in the *Santa Maria*, and the two caravels were commanded by the brothers Martin

---

10. Describe the preparations for the voyage. How were the profits to be divided? 11. Describe the struggles of Columbus for success. How did seamen regard this voyage? 12. Describe the fleet.



Alonso Pinzon (*peen-thon'*) and Vincente Yañez (*yahn'-yeth'*) Pinzon. The number of persons on the three vessels was one hundred and twenty, many of the sailors having been embarked by force at the order of the crown. On the morning of their departure the whole expedition confessed and received Holy Communion.



THE ROUTE OF COLUMBUS.

13. They sailed first to the Canary Islands. Thence Columbus was persuaded that by keeping due west for about twenty-two hundred miles he should reach the island of Cipango, or Japan, which he supposed to lie in about the situation actually occupied by Florida. He had fine weather and generally favorable winds; but his men became alarmed at the length of the voyage, and were on the point of mutiny when, on the night of the 11th of October, 1492, the thirty-sixth day after leaving the Canary Islands, Columbus saw a light, and at two o'clock on the following morning land was made out from the *Pinta*.

14. **Landing on San Salvador.**—Soon after daylight they landed on a beautiful island, to which Columbus gave the

Name the commanders. Describe the crew. What religious duties were performed before embarkation? 13. Describe the voyage. When was land discovered? How long did the voyage last?



name of San Salvador. It was called by the natives Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'-nee*), and is now sometimes known as Cat Island, one of the Bahama group. On reaching the shore the discoverers fell on their knees to thank God, and



THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS.

then, planting the cross and the Spanish standard, took solemn possession of the island in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella, while the natives crowded about them and revered them as superior beings descended from heaven.

**15. Columbus in the West Indies.**—In the course of twelve weeks Columbus visited several of the Bahamas, discovered Cuba, which he supposed to be part of the mainland of Asia,

14. Relate the incidents of the landing of Columbus. How were the Spaniards regarded by the natives? 15. How long did Columbus remain in the New World? What did he accomplish before his return?



visited the island of Hayti (*hay'-tee*), naming it Hispanio'la, or Little Spain, and leaving thirty-nine men to form a colony on its coast; then, after losing the *Santa Maria* by shipwreck, he sailed again for Spain.

**16. Columbus Returns to Spain.**—He re-entered the port of Palos, March 15, 1493, after an absence of seven months. Extraordinary honors were lavished upon him, and he was conducted in triumph to the court at Barcelona, taking with him several Indians and a quantity of gold, curious birds and animals, and other products of the New World. A second expedition was immediately fitted out under his command. It consisted of seventeen ships and fifteen hundred men, well supplied with everything necessary for the establishment of a colony. Twelve missionaries accompanied the fleet, one of them, Father Bernardo Boyle, a Benedictine, having the rank of vicar-apostolic.

**17. Second Voyage of Columbus.**—Columbus sailed on his second voyage September 25, 1493. He found the settlement on the island of Hispaniola in ruins and all the colonists dead, their excesses having provoked the hostility of the natives. After building a town, which he called Isabella, erecting a church, and making arrangements to collect gold, he explored the coasts of Hispaniola and Cuba, discovered Jamaica, Porto Rico (*ree'-co*), and other islands, and on his return to Spain left his brother Bartholomew in command of the settlement.

**18. Third Voyage of Columbus and Discovery of the Mainland.**—On his third voyage, in 1498, he discovered the South American continent and entered the mouth of the river Orino'co. Mutinies, however, broke out in the colony. The misconduct of the Spaniards thwarted the labors of the mis-

---

16. How was Columbus received on his return? Describe his second voyage. Who accompanied the fleet? 17. What was accomplished? Describe the settlement. 18. When was the mainland discovered?



sionaries, turned the amiable natives into cruel enemies, and lessened the expected profits of the crown. The intrigues of dissatisfied and avaricious adventurers made so much impression upon the court that an officer was sent out to investigate the affairs of the colony. He listened to everything that was said against the admiral, and finally sent him home in chains. Isabella, indignant at this outrage, caused Columbus to be honored with new marks of the royal favor; but he was never restored to his government, and after the death of the queen, Ferdinand treated him with neglect and injustice.

**19. Fourth Voyage of Columbus; His Death.**—He made a fourth voyage in 1502, in the hope of discovering a passage from the Caribbean Sea into the Indian Ocean, and on this expedition, which was crowded with disaster, he explored part of the coast of Central America. He died in poverty and distress at Valladolid (*val-luh-do-lid'*) in 1506. He never knew that he had found a new world, but supposed to the last that he had reached eastern Asia.

**20. Cabot Discovers the North American Continent.**—In the meantime other expeditions had followed in the path pointed out by Columbus. John Cabot, a Venetian, sailed from England with a single vessel, under a commission from Henry VII., and on June 24, 1497, discovered the North American continent, more than a year before the mainland of South America was seen by Columbus. He traced the coast from Labrador or Cape Breton to Virginia. His son Sebastian the next year made another voyage, and sailed from Newfoundland to Cape Hatteras.

**21. The Spaniards on the Coast of South America.**—These English voyages had no immediate result. The Spaniards,

---

How were the missionaries thwarted? Why was Columbus deprived of power? 19. Describe his fourth voyage. Did he ever understand the extent of his discoveries? 20. Describe the voyages of the Cabots.



however, continued their explorations in the southern part of the New World with the utmost energy and speed. Vincente Yañez Pinzon, Pedro Niño (*neen'-yo*), and Alonzo de Ojeda (*o-hay'-dah*), companions of Columbus, sailed on independent voyages to the coast of South America in 1499.

22. All these were private enterprises, fitted out at the cost of Spanish merchants; and of the same character were the expeditions of Diego de Lepe (*lay'-pay*) and Rodrigo de Bastides (*bas-tee'-des*) in 1500. In the course of two or three years these daring adventurers explored a large part of the coasts of Venezuela, Guiana, and Brazil. The most distinguished of them was Ojeda, who made three voyages to the New World, and died in San Domingo after a most romantic career.

23. **The Portuguese.**—The Portuguese, who had just discovered the route to the Indies by way of the Cape of Good Hope, followed close after the Spaniards. One of their fleets, commanded by Cabral, reached Brazil by accident, on a voyage to India, in 1500, and Cabral, believing himself to be the first discoverer of the country, landed and took possession of it in the name of the King of Portugal.

24. In the same year a Portuguese expedition, under Gaspar Cortereal (*cor-tay-ray-ah'*), was sent to look for a northern route to India. Either on this voyage or a second one, in 1501, Cortereal explored the American coast for five hundred or six hundred miles, being stopped by ice in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. He seized a number of Indians as slaves, and called the country Labrador, a name which was afterwards transferred to a region further north. Cortereal never returned from his second voyage, and his fate is unknown.

---

21. How did the voyages of Columbus and of the Cabots affect their respective countries? 22. Name five Spanish adventurers. 23. Describe Cabral's voyage. 24. Cortereal's voyages.



**25. Amerigo Vespucci.**—One of the companions of Ojeda on his first expedition was a Florentine merchant named Amerigo Vespucci (*a-mer-ree'-go ves-poot'-chee*). In 1501 he made a voyage of his own to Brazil under the patronage of the king of Portugal, and sailed much further south than any navigator had gone before. He wrote the first published account of the New World, and his work excited so much interest that the credit of discovering the continent was wrongly assigned to him, and it was called America in his honor.

---

## CHAPTER II.

THE SPANISH EXPLORERS—PONCE DE LEON, AYLLON, NARVAEZ, DE SOTO—  
THE FIRST MISSIONARIES—THE SPANIARDS AND HUGUENOTS IN FLORIDA—  
ST. FRANCIS BORGIA AND POPE ST. PIUS V. AND THE INDIANS.

**1. Character of the Spanish Explorers.**—The first Spanish explorers of the New World were animated by a thirst for daring adventure and a zeal for the Catholic religion which resembled the chivalrous enthusiasm of the Crusaders. But they had not the piety, pure sentiment, benevolence, and unselfish ambition of Columbus; and while they invited missionaries to accompany their expeditions, in order to convert the savages, they were not willing to submit themselves to the instructions of these religious guides.

**2.** Next to the fascination of bold enterprise their chief impulse was a love of gold. The small quantity of that precious metal which they saw in the possession of the natives convinced them that there were mines and rich cities in the interior, and many hundreds of lives were lost in searching

---

25. Describe Vespucci's voyage. Why was the new continent called America? 1. By what were the first Spanish explorers animated? How did they differ from Columbus? How did they treat the missionaries?





for them. The customs of the age were barbarous and cruel, and the Spaniards, in their hunt for gold, were guilty of outrages upon the savages which soon made those unhappy people enemies of the whole white race.

3. The Indians were distributed as slaves among the conquerors, and compelled to dig in mines, to cultivate the ground, and to serve instead of beasts of burden. Under hardships for which their previous way of life had not prepared them they died with awful rapidity. Queen Isabella suppressed these cruel abuses, but they were revived after her death. Bartholomew de Las Casas, the first priest ordained in the New World, devoted himself with extraordinary ardor to the relief of the poor natives, and made several voyages to Spain to demand redress from the crown.

4. At his instigation, Cardinal Ximenes (*he-may'-nez*), the minister of Charles V., appointed a commission of ecclesiastics to devise a scheme of reform, and Las Casas was honored with the title of Protector-General of the Indians. He afterwards became a Dominican and Bishop of Chiapa (*che-ah'-pah*) in Mexico, continuing his zealous labors in the face of great opposition, and encouraging his Dominican brethren in that enlightened care for the welfare of the Indians for which the missionaries of that order were so highly distinguished.

5. **Rapid Progress of Discovery and Settlement.**—Although the avarice and rapacity of the Spaniards continually thwarted the work of the missions, the material growth of their colonies was very rapid. The settlements in Cuba, Hispaniola, and other islands became points of departure for many important expeditions to the mainland. Within four or five years of the death of Columbus they occupied

---

2. What turned the savages into enemies? 3. What did Las Casas aim to accomplish? 4. Describe his life and works. 5. How did the Spanish colonies prosper? What did the West Indian settlements become?



the coasts of Central America and Southern Mexico, everywhere forming colonies, collecting gold, silver, dye-stuffs, and other valuable products, and setting up royal governors, who pushed their discoveries still further and further.

6. The South Sea, or the ocean washing the shores of Asia, was found in 1513 by Vasco Nuñez (*noon'-yeth*) de Balbo'a, who crossed the Isthmus of Panama, and, wading into the Pacific, took possession of it in the name of the Spanish sovereign. Mexico was visited by Cor'dova in 1517; Cortes sailed from Havana to conquer it in 1519; Pizar'ro went from Panama to the conquest of Peru in 1531.

7. **Discovery of Florida.**—Before this, however, the Spaniards had crossed over to the present territory of the United States. Six years after the death of Columbus, Ponce de Leon (*pone'-tha-da-la-on'*) sailed from Porto Rico in search of a land towards the north where it was reported that gold abounded, and a fountain bubbled up in the forest whose waters conferred upon all who drank of them the gift of perpetual youth.

8. He discovered Florida in 1512, and gave it the name by which it is still known, because he first saw it on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards called Pascua de Flores, or the pasch of flowers. De Leon was appointed governor of this new territory on condition that he would colonize it. He accordingly returned in 1521 with the first expedition which undertook the conquest of any part of the United States, but he was driven away mortally wounded.

9. **Ayllon and Gomez.**—Vasquez (*vahs'-keth*) de Ayllon (*ile-yon*) renewed the attempt in 1525 with six hundred men, explored the coast as far north as Maryland, and made several expeditions inland; but three-fourths of the

---

6. Describe the discovery of the Pacific. Who conquered Mexico? Peru? 7. What led to the discovery of Florida? 8. Why was it so named? Describe De Leon's second voyage. 9. De Ayllon's voyage.



party, including the commander, perished miserably. Gomez about the same time made an examination of the middle Atlantic coast in search of a passage to the East, and brought away a cargo of slaves.

**10. Narvaez and the First Missionaries.**—Panfilo de Narvaez led an expedition into Florida in 1528, looking for gold, and was lost with his whole company except four men, who coasted along the Gulf of Mexico in a canoe, and finally, after six years' wandering, reached the Spanish settlements on the Gulf of Mexico. Narvaez was accompanied by several missionaries, one of whom, a Franciscan, Juan Juarez (*hoo-an' hoo-ah'-res*), had been consecrated Bishop of Florida. These were the first missionaries within the present limits of the United States, and Juarez the first bishop. They all perished without the opportunity of making any establishment.

**11. De Soto on the Mississippi.**—Hernando de Soto landed at Tampa Bay, Florida, in 1539. With nearly a thousand men, prepared for conquest and colonization, he moved inland, searching for gold and pearls, and everywhere pillaging and outraging the Indians. After two years of marching and fighting he crossed the Mississippi River (1541), not far from the present site of Memphis. Although De Soto is generally called the discoverer of the Mississippi, the river must have been previously seen by the survivors of the expedition of Panfilo de Narvaez, and for twenty years its existence had been known to the Spaniards, who named it the River of the Holy Ghost. Worn out with misfortunes, De Soto died in 1542 and was buried in the waters of the Mississippi.

**12.** The remnant of his expedition, after fruitless attempts to reach the coast by a land march, built boats on

---

What is said of Gomez? 10. Narvaez? By whom was Narvaez accompanied? What became of them? 11. What were the objects of De Soto's expedition? Describe its progress. The result.



the river, forging nails from the fetters of their Indian slaves, twisting cordage from the bark of the mulberry, and using Indian mantles for sails. Thus they descended to the Gulf and reached the Spanish settlement of Panuco, in Mexico. They were in sad plight, having been absent four years, lost two-thirds of their number, and accomplished nothing of value. The missionaries who set out with them could do nothing in the face of the excesses of the soldiers, and all of them died during the expedition.

**13. Dominican Martyrs in Florida.**—In 1549 the Dominican Father Cancer made an heroic attempt to establish the faith in Florida without the help of arms. The Spanish king, Philip II., placed a ship at his disposal, and he sailed with three other Dominicans from Havana, first publishing a royal decree to release all natives of Florida held in slavery. He landed at Appalachee Bay, and was immediately put to death by the Indians, the expedition being thereupon abandoned.

**14. Spaniards at Pensacola.**—Ten years later Don Tristan de Luna sailed from Mexico with a considerable fleet, soldiers and their wives, and a number of priests, to attempt the colonization of Florida. He landed in Pensacola Bay, but encountered only misfortunes, and abandoned the enterprise after two years' trials.

**15. Spaniards in New Mexico.**—Meanwhile the Spanish colonists in Mexico sent out expeditions which penetrated into the territory now belonging to the United States, and examined the coast of California. The Franciscan Father Mark, of Nice, led a small party of discovery into New Mexico in 1539, and took back reports of a civilization quite different from the rude condition of most of the North

---

12. What was the experience of the missionaries? What became of them? 13. What noble work did Father Cancer attempt? The result? 14. Describe De Luna's expedition. 15. What was done by Father Mark?



American tribes. He gave such accounts of some large towns, known as the Seven Cities of Cibola, which he had seen from a distance, that the viceroy of Mexico sent an expedition under Vasquez de Coronado to explore the region (1540), Father Mark and four other Franciscans making part of the company.

16. The seven cities proved to be poor towns, and the Spaniards returned disappointed. Father John de Padilla and Brother John of the Cross remained to found a mission among the Indians, but they were soon martyred. The same fate befell three Franciscans—Father Rodriguez, Father Lopez, and Father John de Santa Maria—who attempted to Christianize New Mexico in 1580.

17. **Settlement of St. Augustine ; Massacre of the French.**—The first permanent settlement in what is now the United States was made by the Spaniards at St. Augustine, Florida, in September, 1565. The story of the foundation of this colony is one of the saddest chapters in the annals of the country. A party of French Huguenots under John Ribault (*re'-bō'*) had visited the St. John's River of Florida in 1562, and had planted a small colony at Port Royal Inlet, South Carolina, which did not long live.

18. Huguenots under Laudonnière (*lo-don-yare'*) landed on the St. John's River two years later and built a fort which they named Fort Caroline. Like other settlers they robbed and murdered the natives, searched for gold instead of cultivating the ground, and suffered terribly from their own misconduct. They quarrelled among themselves, and a party of them, seizing four of the ships, turned pirates and went off to prey upon the Spaniards in the West Indies. Ribault came out with re-enforcements in 1565.

---

What region did Coronado explore? 16. Were the first New Mexican missions successful? 17. What can you say of St. Augustine? Of Ribault's colony? 18. Laudonnière's colony? Describe the colonists.



19. Only a week later arrived a Spanish fleet under Pedro Melendez (*ma-len'-deth*), one of the most famous captains of the age, commissioned by Philip II. to destroy all French settlements in the territory of which the Spaniards claimed the ownership. Ribault set sail to attack the Spaniards by sea, but his fleet was wrecked in a storm and he was left helpless on the coast. Meanwhile Melendez, who had landed near the site of St. Augustine, marched against Fort Caroline, took it by surprise, and put the garrison to the sword, only Laudonnière and a few of his followers escaping. Ribault and most of his men afterwards surrendered, and were massacred in cold blood; a remnant of the Frenchmen were captured and sent to the galleys.

20. **Spaniards on the Atlantic Coast.**—Having thus secured the Spaniards in the possession of the southern coast, Melendez laid the foundation of St. Augustine, which remained for seventeen years the only European colony within the limits of the present United States, if we except certain small Spanish outposts which the St. Augustine settlers maintained for a short time on the coast further north. The most important of these were on the St. John's, Florida, and at Orista, or St. Helena, on Port Royal harbor, South Carolina.

21. **Massacre of Spanish Settlers.**—Three years after the massacre of the Huguenots a French adventurer, Dominic de Gourges (*deh-goorg'*), having fitted out an expedition at his own risk, sailed for the Spanish settlements on the St. John's, and, with the help of the Indians, destroyed three forts and slew four or five hundred men. St. Augustine, however, was not attacked.

22. **The Jesuit Missions in Florida.**—Very soon after the

---

19. Describe the movements of Melendez. Of Ribault. What was the fate of the French? 20. Name the important Spanish outposts. 21. What was the object of the expedition of De Gourges? Its result?



Spaniards had established themselves in Florida the condition of the missions in that part of the world attracted the particular attention of St. Francis Borgia, the general of the Society of Jesus. He sent Father Peter Martinez with two associates to attempt the conversion of the natives; but Father Martinez was immediately put to death by the savages near St. Augustine (1566), and his companions went to Havana to prepare themselves for further attempts by learning the languages of the Florida tribes from the slaves held in that settlement. The Father-General sent out a number of other missionaries, with Father John Baptist Segura as vice-provincial (1568); an earnest effort was made by Father John Roger to plant mission settlements, and a school was established at Havana for the instruction of Indian converts and the training of missionaries.

**23. The Pope and the Spanish Settlers.**—Pope St. Pius V.

in 1569 addressed a brief to the viceroy, Melendez, commending the missions to his care, and urging him especially to check the vices and immoralities of the colonists, which had thus far rendered the labors of the priests fruitless. "This," said the pontiff, "is the key of this holy work, in which is included the whole essence of your charge."

**24. Jesuits on the Rappahannock.**—Several other at-

tempts to establish the faith on the North American con-



THE JESUIT TEACHER.

22. What can you say of St. Francis Borgia? Who were sent by him to Florida? What became of Father Martinez? What did Father Roger attempt? 23. State the substance of the Pope's brief to Melendez.



continent having failed, Father Segura, with four other Jesuits, a baptized Indian chief called Don Luis, and four Indian boys from the school at Havana, undertook in 1570 to found a mission on the Chesapeake, or Bay of St. Mary, far from any Spanish settlement. They built a chapel which they named Our Lady of Axacan, probably on the Rappahannock, below the present site of Fredericksburg, Virginia, and there spent a hard winter. Don Luis apostatized, and under his lead the Indians massacred the whole party except one of the boys (February, 1571). The Jesuits after this abandoned the Florida mission and transferred themselves to Mexico.

**25. The Franciscans in Florida.**—The Franciscans next attempted the conversion of the Indians. They had a convent at St. Augustine and a number of stations in the neighboring country, where they gathered the savages into villages and taught them the habits of civilization as well as the doctrines of the faith. In 1597 nearly all these stations were destroyed and the friars put to death by a rising of the Indians. Other Franciscans arrived, however, four years later, and Florida was soon erected into the Franciscan province of St. Helena, so named from the convent at St. Augustine.

**26.** In a short time the Franciscans had twenty convents or residences in the vast region which then went by the name of Florida; and gradually they established settlements of Christian Indians far inland, which flourished for nearly a hundred years. They were greatly strengthened in 1693 by the founding of Pensacola, where the Spaniards made a fortified settlement and dedicated it with great solemnity to the Blessed Virgin.

---

24. Who attempted to establish a mission on the Chesapeake? State the circumstances and the result. 25. What efforts were made by the Franciscans? Did the Franciscans persevere? 26. With what result?





**27. Catholic Missions Destroyed by the English and the Indians.**—The Spanish missions in Florida and Georgia were at last almost wholly destroyed by the English, who attacked them with the help of their pagan Indian allies, the Alabamas, and carried off the converts to be sold as slaves. In 1705 the English and the Alabamas took St. Mark's, the chief settlement of the Appalachee mission, massacred eight hundred Indians and three friars, and carried off an immense number of slaves.

**28.** The missions lasted, however, until Florida was ceded to England in 1763; then the Franciscans left the colony with most of the Spanish settlers, and the Christian Indians, being expelled from their churches and mission-buildings, were driven into the forests, where they lost all trace of faith and civilization, and became the fierce tribe known as Seminoles, or "wanderers."

**29. Franciscans in New Mexico.**—In the meantime Spanish Franciscans had continued their missionary labors in New Mexico, where Santa Fé, the second permanent settlement in the United States, was founded by Don Antonio de Espejo (*es-pay'-ho*) in 1582. The Catholic missionaries had prosperous communities of industrious and educated Indians in New Mexico long before the Puritans established themselves in New England; they had penetrated into Texas as early as 1544; and they had attempted the conversion of California, where the Carmelites and Jesuits were also pioneers of the cross. The Spanish missions in all these regions lasted with some interruptions down to our day.

---

27. What fate befell those missions? How were the captives treated?  
 28. Why were the Florida missions discontinued? What became of the Christian Indians? 29. In what other region were the Franciscans at work? What can you say of Santa Fé? What was accomplished by these missions? Whence were they extended? What other religious orders were at work in this field? How long did these missions last?



## CHAPTER III.

THE FRENCH ADVENTURERS AND MISSIONARIES—SETTLEMENT OF CANADA  
—THE JESUITS IN MAINE AND NEW YORK—EXPLORATION OF THE  
MISSISSIPPI—MARQUETTE, JOLIET, LA SALLE.



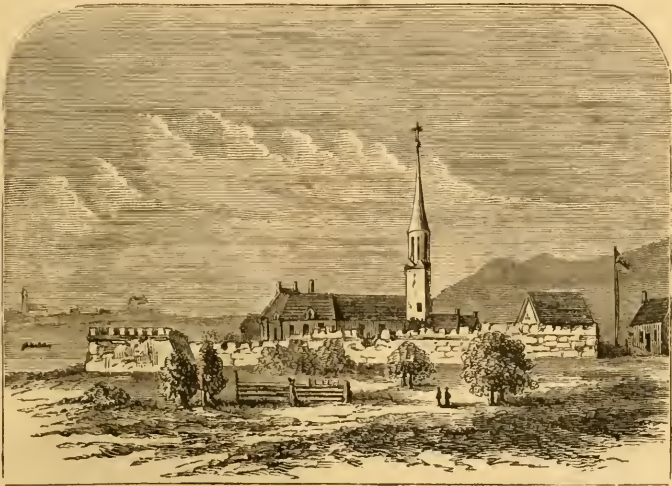
MARQUETTE SAILING DOWN THE MISSISSIPPI.

1. **The French in the North.**—While the Spaniards were exploring the southern part of the continent the French were making discoveries at the north. They visited Cape Breton and the mouth of the St. Lawrence at the beginning of the sixteenth century, and engaged in the cod-fishery off Newfoundland. In 1523 the French king, Francis I., sent

1. What part of the continent was explored by the Spanish? What were the French doing in the meantime? Describe their progress. Where were the cod-fisheries? Whom did Francis I. send out?



out an expedition under the Florentine Verrazzani (*ver-rat-tzah'-ne*), which examined the coast from North Carolina to Maine in search of a passage to the Indies, and probably entered Narraganset and New York bays. To Verrazzani belongs the credit of recognizing that America was not a part of the Indies but a new world, and that the globe was much larger than Columbus had imagined.



PRESENT STATE OF THE OLD JESUIT MISSION STATION, NEAR MONTREAL.

**2. Cartier in Canada.**—All the most important of the French enterprises in America were associated with the Catholic missions. James Cartier (*kar-te-ay'*) was sent out by the king of France in 1534, and in consequence of his favorable report of Newfoundland a second expedition under his command was despatched in 1535, with the double purpose of establishing a trading colony and converting the Indians.

What did he accomplish? For what is he entitled to credit? 2. What is said of the important French enterprises? Give the result of Cartier's first expedition. Give the objects of the second expedition.



Before embarking at St. Malo, Cartier, who was a man of much religious feeling, caused all his men to assemble in the cathedral, where, after receiving communion, they entered the sanctuary and the bishop solemnly blessed them.

3. On this voyage Cartier ascended the St. Lawrence River as far as Hochelaga, the present site of Montreal, and built a small fort near Stadacona, where Quebec now stands. Francis de la Roque (*deh-lah-roke*), lord of Roberval, in Picardy, having obtained a charter from the French crown covering all this territory, despatched Cartier with a third expedition in 1541, and followed in person, with three ships, the next year. None of these attempts at colonization, however, were successful. Roberval perished on his way to Canada again in 1549.

#### 4. Huguenots; Convicts.—

The next attempt of the French was the unfortunate expedition of the Huguenots under Ribault to Florida, of which the story has already been given. The Marquis de la Roche (*rōsh*), who succeeded to Roberval's patent, took a colony of forty convicts to Sable Island, near the coast of Nova Scotia, in 1598, but most of them died miserably and the rest were taken off a few years later.



CHAMPLAIN.

5. **Voyage of Champlain.**—Samuel Champlain, a pious and enthusiastic French Catholic, established a colony at Port Royal, in Acadia (*Nova Scotia*), in 1605, in company

---

What ceremonies were performed before embarkation? 3. What did he accomplish? Give an account of his third expedition. The result of these expeditions? 4. What is said of the Sable Island Colony?



with the Sieur de Monts. The latter was a Protestant, but it was provided in the royal patent authorizing the enterprise that the savages should be taught the Catholic faith. The object of the venture was fishing and fur-trading, and De Monts obtained exclusive rights over all the territory between the fortieth and fifty-fourth parallels (from New Jersey to Labrador). Two years afterwards the colony was abandoned, but in 1610 it was reoccupied and made a central station for the Jesuit missions among the Indians.

#### 6. Missionary Settlements in Nova Scotia and Maine.—



THE DEAD JESUIT.

The person to whom this missionary scheme of settlement within the present limits of the New England States was principally indebted was the Marchioness de Guercheville, a devout French lady, to whom De Monts had ceded his patent, and to whom the French king afterwards granted all New France; in this designation the French embraced the whole territory which now forms the United States.

7. A mission settlement was made at her cost at Mount Desert on the coast of Maine, but it was soon broken up by the English, who claimed an

exclusive right to all this territory, and accordingly sent an expedition from Virginia under Captain Argall to drive the

---

5. Where did Champlain found a colony? Why did he associate himself with De Monts? Why was Port Royal reoccupied? 6. Describe the limits of New France. 7. Describe the mission on Mount Desert.



French away. Argall destroyed all the French settlements on this part of the coast, killed one of the Jesuits and carried off two others as prisoners. They suffered a long captivity before they finally made their way to Europe.

**8. Explorations by Champlain and the Jesuits.**—Further north the French settlements prospered. Champlain explored part of New York, and discovered the lake which bears his name, 1609. The Jesuits, who were very successful in the Canada mission, made many fruitful excursions among the Indians of Maine, New York, Ohio, Michigan, Illinois, and Wisconsin, exploring the interior of the country and founding Christian villages.

**9. The Jesuits in New York.**—The French made friends of the Huron and Algonquin tribes in Canada, but, together with their Indian allies, they were involved in bloody wars with the fierce Iroquois, or Five Nations, of New York, in the course of which many of the Jesuits suffered martyrdom. Among the most celebrated of this heroic company were Father Isaac Jogues, who, after the most horrible tortures, was killed at Canghnawaga, New York, in 1646, and Fathers Lalemant and Brébeuf, who were fastened to stakes and slowly hacked to pieces with indescribable cruelties at the mission of St. Ignatius in 1649.



FATHER BRÉBEUF.

**10.** A few weeks before his death, Father Jogues discovered Lake George, and named it Lake of the Blessed

---

8. What did Champlain accomplish? In what were the Jesuits successful? 9. What led to the martyrdom of many Jesuits? Name a few of the sufferers. 10. What did Father Jogues discover?



Sacrament, because the day was the feast of Corpus Christi. The Hurons were finally destroyed or dispersed by the Iroquois, and by this catastrophe the thriving Jesuit missions in New York were broken up. The indefatigable priests, however, soon resumed their labors, and began the still more difficult and dangerous task of converting the savage Iroquois.

**11. Marquette on the Mississippi.**—In 1673 the Jesuit Father Marquette (*ket'*), who had been for several years a missionary among the fugitive Hurons on Lake Michigan, succeeded in reaching the Mississippi by crossing Wisconsin. His object was to open the way for further missionary efforts. He was accompanied by Louis Joliet (*zhole'-e-ay*), a fur-trader commissioned by the governor of Canada to seek a passage by this route to the South Sea, as the river, of which earlier missionaries had given some report, was supposed to empty into the Gulf of California.

**12.** Marquette and Joliet floated down the Mississippi in bark canoes as far as the mouth of the Arkansas, and on their discoveries the French established their claims to the great West. Afterwards, under the orders of Frontenac, governor of Canada, La Salle explored the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. In 1684 he attempted to found a colony at the mouth of the great river, but he was killed in a revolt of his men, and the expedition ended in disaster.

---

What became of the Hurons? What task did the Jesuits next attempt? 11. What is said of Father Marquette? What was Joliet commissioned to seek? 12. On what did the French base their claims to the great West? What did La Salle accomplish? What was his fate?



## CHAPTER IV.

FIRST ENGLISH SETTLEMENTS—SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT AND WALTER RALEIGH—THE ENGLISH IN VIRGINIA—EARLY VOYAGES TO NEW ENGLAND—THE DUTCH IN NEW YORK.

**1. Early English Voyages.**—Although the English claimed the northern part of this continent in right of Cabot's discovery (1497), it was nearly eighty years before they made any serious attempt to explore it. Meanwhile, however, in common with other nations, they often visited the Newfoundland Fishing Banks. An expedition in which Cardinal Wolsey seems to have had some interest reached Newfoundland in 1527, and another landed there in 1536, but neither accomplished any valuable result.

**2. Search for a Northwest Passage.**—In the latter part of the sixteenth century the spirit of maritime adventure from which England has derived so much honor and advantage became aroused. Under the influence of Sir Humphrey Gilbert and other enterprising gentlemen the search for a Northwest passage to the Indies was taken up with great ardor. In the hope of finding a way by sea from Europe to Asia, by sailing westward around the northern coast of America (a problem which engaged the attention of British explorers during the next three hundred years, and was only settled in our own day by the Arctic discoveries of McClure and Sir John Franklin), Martin Frobisher made three voyages between 1576 and 1578, gave his name to the strait which leads into Hudson's Bay, and brought home shiploads of "black ore and pretty stones," which he wrongly supposed to contain gold. John Davis made three voyages in search

- 
1. On what were England's claims based? Did they take immediate possession? What valuable territory seemed to be common property?
  2. How did the search for the Northwest passage affect enterprise?





of the Northwest route to India (1585-87), and discovered the strait called by his name which opens into Baffin's Bay.

**3. The English on the Pacific.**—Sir Francis Drake in the meantime had reached the Pacific by the Strait of Magellan (1578), pillaged the Spanish settlements in Peru and Chili, taken possession of California in the name of Queen Elizabeth, and, after a vain attempt to find a northern passage to the Atlantic, had returned to England by the Cape of Good Hope, thus circumnavigating the globe—a feat which no one except the Portuguese Magellan had performed before.

**4. Sir Humphrey Gilbert.**—The first Englishman to undertake the colonization of the American continent was Sir Humphrey Gilbert. The Spaniards had been established in the South for a hundred years, and the French had made several attempts to settle in Canada, when Gilbert obtained a charter from Queen Elizabeth for the discovery and occupation of countries lying between Florida and New France. His half-brother, Walter Raleigh (*raw'-li*), one of the most gallant, accomplished, and influential of Elizabeth's courtiers, was associated with him in the enterprise, and bore a large share of the cost.

**5.** In 1583 Gilbert sailed with five ships and two hundred and sixty men, among whom were a number of mechanics. He took possession of Newfoundland, where he encountered fishing and trading vessels of various nations, and then proceeded southward; but one of his ships had deserted, another had been sent home with the sick and discontented, a third was wrecked, the colonists were mutinous, and Sir Humphrey, after collecting a quantity of worthless mineral which he supposed to be silver, embarked for home with the remnant of the expedition. The

---

Name the early English navigators. 3. Describe Drake's Pacific voyage. 4. What did Gilbert attempt? What had been done previously by other nations? 5. Describe Gilbert's attempt at settlement.



vessel in which he sailed foundered on the voyage, and all on board perished.

**6. Sir Walter Raleigh.**—Raleigh now obtained a patent for himself, and in 1584 sent out two ships, commanded by Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, to fix upon a place for a settlement. They sailed along the coast of North Carolina, entered Pamlico Sound, landed on one of the low, sandy islands which separate the sound from the ocean, and visited Roanoke Island, where the Indians received them with great kindness. It was midsummer; the country seemed to them wonderfully beautiful and fertile; and they carried home a most alluring report of it. Raleigh received, in acknowledgment of his enterprise, the honor of knighthood and a grant of certain trading monopolies, and, in compliment to the “*virgin queen*,” he called the new land Virginia.



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

**7. The First English Colony.**—The next spring (April, 1585) Raleigh sent out a larger expedition to form a permanent colony. There were seven ships, under command of Sir Richard Grenville, and the settlers numbered about one hundred, with Ralph Lane for governor. Sailing from Plymouth, they first visited the Canaries and the West Indies, capturing some Spanish vessels, and after a three months' voyage they reached Roanoke Island. There they laid the

---

6. Describe the first expedition under Raleigh's patent. What territory was visited? How was Raleigh rewarded for his enterprise? 7. Describe the Roanoke Island colony. Who was appointed governor?



foundations of a town, Grenville returning to England with a promise to send them fresh supplies.

8. Repaying the hospitality of the natives with base outrages, they were soon involved in war; they went off in search of gold, which they did not find; they neglected to raise corn; and before long they were reduced to feed on sassafras leaves and dogs' flesh. The next year Sir Francis Drake, having pillaged and burned St. Augustine during a cruise against the Spaniards, visited Roanoke and found the settlers so discontented that they all gladly accepted his offer of a passage to England.

9. They carried tobacco with them, and Raleigh made smoking fashionable in England, though the Portuguese had introduced the plant into Portugal and France nearly thirty years before. Shortly after the departure of the colonists from Roanoke, Grenville arrived with supplies, only to find the island deserted. He left fifteen men to hold possession, and then returned to England.

10. **The City of Raleigh.**—In 1587 Sir Walter Raleigh sent out from Plymouth a new colony of one hundred and fifty men and women, with John White for governor, and gave them a charter for the establishment of "the City of Raleigh." Again Roanoke Island was found deserted, and the fate of the fifteen men left there by Grenville was never ascertained. White landed his party and returned to England to ask for further help.

11. The English nation, however, was at this time putting forth all its resources to resist the threatened invasion by the Spanish Armada; no ships could be spared for America; it was three years before White could return to his post; and when he arrived there (1590) the third colony

---

8. How did the settlers conduct themselves? The result? How did Drake assist them? 9. What did they carry to England? What did Grenville find on his arrival? 10. Describe the third colony.



had disappeared like the second. Sir Walter never ceased his anxiety to discover what had become of them; but on the accession of James I. in 1603 he was accused of high treason and committed to the Tower, his grants were forfeited, and attempts to settle Virginia were dropped.

**12. Bartholomew Gosnold.**—In 1602 a new direction was given to adventure in America by the voyage of Bartholomew Gosnold. This adventurous captain was sent out by the Earl of Southampton with twenty colonists, who proposed to settle in the northern part of Virginia, that name being then applied to the whole coast from the southern extremity of what is now North Carolina to the eastern boundary of Maine. Gosnold, instead of following the track of the earlier English voyagers, far to the south by the way of the Canaries and the West Indies, took a short and direct northern route and so fell upon the coast of Massachusetts.

**13.** He discovered and named Cape Cod, entered Buzard's Bay, and began a settlement on Cuttyhunk which he called Elizabeth Island, a name now given to the whole group of which this little island forms a part. Being ill-provided with stores, the colonists determined to return with the ship that brought them; but Gosnold took home so good a report of the country, and so valuable a cargo of sassafras (then prized as a medicine) and of furs, that other expeditions were soon fitted out for trade or discovery in the same region.

**14.** Finally, an association was formed by a number of rich men of London, Bristol, and Plymouth to continue the adventure. Letters-patent issued by King James I. in 1606 granted to Sir George Somers, Richard Hakluyt, Edward Maria Wingfield, and others all the territory on the

---

11. Were any of Raleigh's attempts successful? Why were his grants forfeited? 12. What is said of Gosnold? 13. What did he discover? Why did the colonists return? Why were other expeditions fitted out?



coast from latitude  $34^{\circ}$  to latitude  $45^{\circ}$ —that is, from Cape Fear to the Bay of Fundy—bordering on the Spanish possessions at one extremity and the French at the other. There were to be two companies, one having charge of the northern colony, the other of the southern. But their grants overlapped each other.

15. To the northern, called the Plymouth Company, because most of the proprietors lived in Plymouth (England), was assigned all the territory north of latitude  $38^{\circ}$ , while the jurisdiction of the London Company covered everything south of latitude  $41^{\circ}$ ; thus the coasts of Long Island, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland were left open to both. Each colony was to be governed by a resident council of thirteen members appointed by the king, with power to choose one of their own number for president. Their laws were to be subject to revision by the king or his council in England, and the religion was to be that of the Protestant Establishment.

16. **Claims of the European Powers.**—Thus there were three great nations whose claims in North America were more or less in conflict. None of them had any idea of the vast extent of the land which they assumed to own, or placed any precise boundaries to the territory over which they asserted a right. When the settlements increased quarrels frequently broke out in consequence of these rival pretensions.

17. The Spaniards confined their explorations to the south, but claimed the whole continent north of them. Mexico and the country thereabouts, including part of the present territory of the United States, they called New Spain; to all the rest of the country they gave the general

---

14. What grant was made by James I.? How was it divided? 15. Describe the territory of each company. How was each colony to be governed? 16. What nations claimed territory in America?



name of Florida. The French at the north held Canada and part of the Northern States ; they claimed everything south of them, and called the whole New France. The English settlements were midway between the French and Spanish, and they claimed everything from New England and Carolina westward to the Pacific, naming it all Virginia.



HENRY HUDSON

18. — **The Dutch.** — A fourth power now appeared. Captain Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the service of the Muscovy Company, of London, had made voyages in 1607 and 1608 in search of a northern or northeastern route to India. In 1609 he was engaged by the Dutch East India Company to renew the attempt. He sailed from Amsterdam in a vessel called the *Half-Moon*,

to look for a passage around the northern coasts of Europe, but, being stopped by the ice, he turned westward to try the American side.

19. After coasting from Maine to the Chesapeake he entered the Bay of New York, September 3, two months after the French had first seen Lake Champlain. Hudson discovered the river which now bears his name, and ascended beyond the present site of Albany. The next year (1610) he made another voyage in the service of the Muscovy Com-

17. What did the Spaniards claim? The French? The English?  
18. Who was Henry Hudson? What was he in search of? Describe his voyage in the *Half-Moon*. 19. Describe his last voyage.



pany, and while looking for a northwest passage he discovered Hudson's Bay. On the way home his crew mutinied and sent him adrift with eight others in an open boat. Nothing more was ever heard of him.



THE HALF-MOON ASCENDING THE HUDSON RIVER.

20. On the strength of Hudson's discoveries the Dutch claimed the coast from New Jersey to the Bay of Fundy, and gave it the name of New Netherland. They immediately began a fur trade with the Indians on the Hudson, then called the Mauritius (*maw-rish'-y-us*) River, and in 1613 built a temporary fort on Manhattan Island, the site

---

What became of Hudson? 20. What did the Dutch claim? What use did they make of Hudson's discovery? When and where did they build a fort? When and where did they make a permanent settlement?



of the city of New York ; but their first permanent settlement was Fort Nassau, near Albany, built in 1614.



## CHAPTER V.

### SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA—CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH—POCAHONTAS—THE FIRST COLONIAL ASSEMBLY.

**1. The London Company.**—The earliest attempts at colonization under the new English patent were made by the Plymouth Company, but the expeditions which they sent out in 1606, 1607, and 1608 failed, and it was reserved for the London Company of Virginia to establish the first permanent English settlement in the New World.

**2.** In December, 1606, the London Company despatched a fleet of three small vessels, commanded by Captain Christopher Newport, and carrying one hundred and five colonists. Twenty of the settlers were mechanics, and the rest were soldiers, servants, and idle gentlemen ; there were no women among them. Gosnold, Wingfield, Hunt (a minister of the Church of England), Percy (a brother of the Earl of Northumberland), and John Smith, an Englishman who had distinguished himself by some remarkable adventures in the wars against the Turks, were the most important members of the party.

**3.** They took the long route by the West Indies, and made a voyage of nearly four months. April 26, 1607, they entered Chesapeake Bay, and named Cape Charles and Cape

---

1. What did the Plymouth Company attempt? The result? What is said of the London Company? 2. Describe the first colony sent out by them? Name the leading men. 3. What route was taken?





Henry in honor of the sons of the king. May 13 they chose the site of their settlement on King's (afterward called James) River, and began the

building of Jamestown, naming both the stream and the town after King James I. This was the third permanent settlement by Europeans in the United States, and the first by Englishmen.



#### 4. The Jamestown Colony.

— Sealed instructions from the company, opened after their arrival, appointed Gosnold, Smith, Wingfield, Newport, Ratcliffe, Martin, and

Kendall members of the council, and they elected Wingfield president. Newport was directed to explore the river in search of a passage to the South Sea (for the company never gave up this idea), and before returning to England with the ships he accordingly ascended the James as far as the falls, where Richmond now stands.

5. **Captain John Smith.**—The settlers quarrelled from the first. Wingfield was soon deposed and succeeded by Ratcliffe, but affairs were not improved by the change, and Captain John Smith became by common consent the real leader of the party. He suppressed mutinies, compelled the idle to work, kept off attacks by the savages, and saved the colony from starvation by inducing the Indians to supply them with corn.

6. On one of his expeditions he was captured by the

---

When and where did the colonists land? Describe their movements.  
4. How was the colony governed? Why did Newport explore the James? 5. What is said of Smith? How did he conduct affairs?



savages. Showing them a pocket-compass, he so much excited their wonder at the motion of the needle that they treated him as a superior being. Their amazement was increased when they found that a letter, which they allowed him to send to Jamestown, could "talk," and was quickly answered by the arrival of articles he had sent for.

**7. Pocahontas.**—The savages led Captain Smith from village to village, and at last brought him to the powerful chief, Powhatan, near the site of Jamestown. Powhatan ordered that he should be killed, but when the club was raised to beat out his brains the chief's daughter, Pocahontas, a girl of ten or twelve years, threw herself on the captive's neck and saved his life. Such, at least, is the common story, but recent historians throw doubt upon it.

**8.** Reaching Jamestown after seven weeks' absence, Smith found the colony in great misery. Only forty men were left, and, though Newport returned twice in 1608 with other emigrants, they were mostly vagabond gentlemen like the first. The whole company gave themselves up to gold-hunting, and loaded the ships with useless earth, which they supposed to contain the precious metal. A fourth and still larger party, sent out in 1609, was still worse than the first, second, and third.

**9.** The raising of food was neglected, and a famine was only alleviated by the generosity of Pocahontas, who often brought food to the settlement in her canoe. On one occasion she averted a general massacre of the whites by bringing them information at night of an intended attack. The ungrateful colonists, after Smith had left the country, made her a prisoner and demanded a ransom. Powhatan was too indignant even to answer them. In captivity she was bap-

---

6. Relate the story of his captivity. 7. How was he saved from death? 8. What effect had his absence on the welfare of the colony? Describe the early colonists. 9. Give the story of Pocahontas.



tized, took the name of Rebecca, and married John Rolfe, one of the colonists, who went with her to England and presented her at court. She died suddenly as she was about to return to America, leaving a son, who became the ancestor of an honorable Virginia family.

**10.** Smith was regularly elected president in 1608, and affairs began to mend, but, being injured by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, he went to England in 1609 for surgical aid, and never returned. His departure was nearly fatal to the settlement. He left four hundred and ninety colonists, and in six months only sixty remained alive.

**11. Lord Delaware.**—In June, 1610, the survivors abandoned Jamestown, and, having constructed some small vessels, were on their way to Newfoundland, hoping to be taken care of by English fishermen there, when they met a fleet in the James River coming to their aid. It carried abundant supplies and a large party of settlers, led by Lord Delaware (De la Warr), who, under a new charter granted to the London Company, had been appointed governor of Virginia for life. The deserting colonists and the new arrivals returned to the settlement together with great rejoicing.

**12.** From this time Jamestown prospered. The lands had been held in community, but each man now received and cultivated a share for himself; industry was encouraged; valuable crops of tobacco were sent home to England; new settlements were commenced on the James. Powhatan, after the marriage of his daughter, became a steady friend of the whites; and before long respectable young women were sent out as wives for the planters. Under Governor Yeardley an important change was made in the form of administration. A representative assembly was sum-

---

What became of Pocahontas? 10. Why did Smith leave the colony? The consequences? Who was Lord Delaware? 12. What is said of his administration? What is said of Powhatan? Of Gov. Yeardley?



moned (1619), the first legislature ever elected in America; and thus was laid the foundation for that popular form of government which soon prevailed throughout all the colonies.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### VIRGINIA CONTINUED—POLITICAL DEVELOPMENT—CHARACTER OF THE COLONY.

**1. The First American Constitution.**—In 1621 the London Company granted to the Virginia colony a written constitution, the first ever established in America. The authority was confided to a Governor and Council appointed by the company, and an Assembly consisting of the Council and a House of Burgesses elected by the people. Laws enacted by the Assembly required the assent of the governor and of the company in England. Nobody as yet held the idea that the people were capable of ruling themselves. The orders of the company, however, had to be ratified by the colonists.

**2. Indian Hostilities.**—After the death of Powhatan the savages, led by Opeacanough, the brother of that chief, determined upon the destruction of all the English. They made their plans secretly, and on the 22d of March, 1622, they suddenly attacked the scattered plantations, and massacred three hundred and fifty persons. A converted Indian revealed the plot to a planter on the James River, who hurried by night to give warning at James-

---

1. What was granted to the Virginia colony in 1621? To whom was authority confided? What check was placed upon the assembly? On the Company? 2. Describe the first Indian massacre. Give the date.



town. Thus that place and some of the other settlements were saved, but there was no time to send word to the more distant farms.

3. In a few days the number of settlements was reduced from eighty to eight. The colonists gathered in fortified towns, and a bloody Indian war began, in which the savages suffered severely, but the English also were greatly reduced. Another massacre, in which three hundred persons perished, took place April 18, 1644. Opecanough was made prisoner two years later, and died in captivity, and the red men were gradually driven back from the coast, and left the fertile lands of that region to the white colonists.

4. **Political Changes.**—There had long been disagreements between King James I., who was jealous of his authority, and the London Company, which, in asserting its rights over the colony, was also contending for political liberties. In 1624, after an unsuccessful attempt to induce the colonists to surrender their privileges, James cancelled the charter and the company was dissolved. Virginia was now a royal province, but for several years there was no change in its local government.

5. King Charles I. allowed the colonists in practice to rule themselves. They levied their own taxes, and, as the crown was too much occupied with other things to pay attention to them, they became almost an independent state. They remained faithful to Charles during the civil war, and after the triumph of the Parliament and the execution of the king a great many of the royalist party emigrated to Virginia.

6. Under the rule of the Parliament the colonists greatly extended their political liberties, and secured the

---

How was Jamestown saved? 3. How did the settlers act? What occurred in 1644? How were the savages punished? Why was the London Company dissolved? 5. Describe the province under Charles I.



right of electing their own governor; but after the restoration of Charles II. an aristocratic party got control of the colonial legislature, restricted the privilege of voting to the landowners, kept the Assembly in power without regard to the term for which it had been elected, imposed severe taxes, and paid every member of the Assembly two hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco a day, which, according to the present value of money, would be worth about forty-five dollars.

**7. Navigation Laws.**—The dissatisfaction of the settlers was increased by oppressive navigation laws passed by the English Parliament in 1660 and 1663, which forbade them to buy or sell in any country except England, or export their produce in any except English vessels. These unjust and unwise laws, enacted for the benefit of avaricious English merchants, gave a severe blow to the industry of all the American colonies by raising the price of everything they needed to buy, and lowering the price of everything they had to sell.

**8. Bacon's Rebellion.**—The Virginians were ready for revolt when an Indian war broke out on the border of Maryland (1675). The colonists armed themselves for defence under the command of a popular young planter named Nathaniel Bacon; but the governor, Sir William Berkeley, distrusted Bacon, declared him a rebel, and collected a military force to oppose him.

9. This was a signal for insurrection. Bacon first punished the Indians, and then marched against Jamestown, which he burned to the ground (Sept., 1676), but in the midst of his success he died of fever, and his followers were soon overcome. Gov. Berkeley treated the insurgents with

---

6. What is said of the colonists under Parliament? How did the restoration affect them? 7. What laws increased their dissatisfaction? Describe the navigation laws. 8. Describe Bacon's rebellion.



the most cruel severity, causing twenty-two to be hanged. Soon afterward, to the great joy of the Virginians, he returned to England, where he died in disgrace. "The old fool," said King Charles II., "has taken away more lives in that naked country than I did here for the murder of my father."

**10.** Without regard to the rights of the colonists, Charles had granted to Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington (1673) the whole of Virginia for the period of thirty-one years. Culpepper came out as governor in 1680, and during his short stay he loaded the colony with fresh burdens, in order to enrich himself. Under the next governor, Lord Howard of Effingham (1683), the misery of the people was redoubled, and poverty and discontent became almost universal.

**11. Character of the Settlers.**—A large proportion of the first settlers of Virginia were men of good family, attracted to the new world by the desire to make money and to enjoy personal freedom. Many of them secured patents for plantations of their own, instead of attempting to improve the lands in common, and brought out laborers at their private expense. Thus large estates were founded, and a strong aristocratic element was infused into society.

**12.** A great deal of the work was done by white convicts from England, sold into servitude for a term of years as a punishment for felonies or political offences. Prisoners of the Scottish and civil wars were thus sold by the English Government, just as Cromwell sold Irish Catholics into slavery in the West Indies. At the end of their term of service these convicts (many of whom were not criminals but political victims of tyranny) became the equals of the other colonists. Young women and children were kid-

---

9. How was Berkeley received in England? 10. To whom did Charles grant Virginia? What is said of Culpepper? Of Howard? 11. Describe the early settlers. 12. Who served as laborers in Virginia?



napped in England and sold to the planters. The first women sent out as wives for the settlers were also sold.

13. In 1619 a cargo of Africans was brought to Virginia by a Dutch vessel. This was the origin of negro slavery in the English colonies of America, but for many years the number of slaves was very small. The first colony to establish slavery by law was Massachusetts, and the Puritans of Boston engaged in the slave trade as soon as they had any commerce at all.

14. The farms of Virginia were far apart. The houses were rude buildings of one story. There were no villages except the capital, Jamestown, and that place contained only eighteen houses. The legislature met in an ale-house. A royal order prohibited printing-presses in any part of the province. "I thank God," said Gov. Berkeley, "there are no free schools nor printing, and I hope we shall not have any these hundred years." As early as 1619, however, an estate on the James River, with a number of servants to cultivate it, had been set apart for the endowment of a college for whites and Indians. The settlers who took charge of it were massacred by the savages, and the institution was not started till 1693. This was the origin of William and Mary College at Williamsburg, Va.

15. The search for gold had been abandoned, and the cultivation of tobacco became almost the only pursuit of the planters, so that there was sometimes a lack of food. Tobacco was used instead of money, and the prices of articles were fixed at so many pounds of the leaf instead of so many pence. As the price of tobacco was violently disturbed by the navigation laws and other causes, this system produced great mischief.

---

13. What is said of slavery? Who engaged in the slave trade? 14. Describe the social condition of the Virginians. What provisions were made for education? 15. What is said of the cultivation of tobacco?





**16. Religion.**—The Protestant Church of England was established by law; attendance at the service was made compulsory; Protestants of other denominations were fined or expelled; “novelties” in religion were forbidden; all “popish priests” were to be sent out of the colony within five days after their arrival; and Lord Baltimore, who visited Jamestown on a tour of observation, was promptly ordered away because he was a Catholic.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND—THE PLYMOUTH COMPANY—THE PURITANS—THE MASSACHUSETTS COMPANY.

**1. Maine.**—Capt. George Weymouth visited the coast of Maine in 1605 and carried off five Indians by force. In 1607 the North Virginia, or Plymouth, Company, on the strength of a favorable report by Weymouth, sent out one hundred and twenty persons and two ships, commanded by Sir George Popham and Raleigh Gilbert, the son of Sir Humphrey. They made a settlement near the mouth of the Kennebec, on that part of its broad estuary then called the Sagadahoc, but it was abandoned the next year. Sir George Popham died in Maine. His nephew, Sir Francis, continued to send out expeditions at his private cost, but they accomplished nothing of importance.

**2.** The destruction of the French missionary settlement at Mount Desert by the English Captain Argall (see p. 35)

---

16. What was the established religion? How were Catholics treated? 1. Describe Weymouth's voyage. To what did it lead? Describe the Kennebec settlement. Who sent out several expeditions? The result.



occurred in 1613. One of the four Jesuit missionaries was killed. Two were carried prisoners to Jamestown, and only reached France after many dangers and long captivity. The fourth was turned adrift with a few companions to find his way to Port Royal in a small bark, and was rescued by French fishermen.

### 3. Captain John Smith in New England.—Capt. John



MAP OF NEW ENGLAND.

Smith made a successful fishing and fur-trading voyage from England to Maine in 1614, and drew a map of the coasts. At his suggestion the name of New England was given to this region by Prince Charles, afterwards King Charles I. Hunt, the captain of one of Smith's two vessels, carried off twenty-seven Indians and sold them as slaves

2. Describe the treatment of the Mount Desert missionaries. 3. What did Smith accomplish? What name did he suggest for the region? What is said of Captain Hunt? What became of the Indians?



in Spain, where some of them were ransomed by a pious confraternity and sent home.

**4. The Plymouth Company.**—Sir Ferdinando Gorges, Governor of Plymouth, England, and a member of the Northern Company, was one of the most active promoters of expeditions to New England at this period, and it was principally through his agency that King James I. was induced to grant a new and more favorable patent in 1620, incorporating forty persons as the Council for New England, or the Plymouth Company, and giving them exclusive right to the territory from lat. 40° to lat. 48°, or from the middle of New Jersey to St. John's, Newfoundland. Their title to this immense domain was absolute. They had sole power to make laws and appoint officers.

**5. The Puritans.**—The first permanent settlement, however, within the limits of their grant was made without their help or consent by a company of English Puritans, who thus became the fathers of New England. The Protestant Church of England, having rebelled against the authority of the Holy See, persecuted with almost equal severity the other Protestant sects and the Catholics. The name of Puritans was given to a party of Protestants who refused to follow the established form of worship, because they said it retained too many of the ceremonies of Rome. At first they agreed in most particulars with the doctrines of the government church, though after a while their beliefs were greatly changed.

**6.** Many of the Puritans fled to Holland in order to avoid the tyranny of the crown. In 1608 a number of Puritans from Nottinghamshire, making their escape from England with difficulty and loss, settled in Amsterdam.

---

4. Who was Gorges? What changes were made in the Plymouth Company? Locate the new grant. 5. Who were the Puritans? Why so named? Describe their movements. 6. Where did they settle?



and thence, with their pastor, John Robinson, removed to Leyden. Not liking their hard life in a foreign country, they turned their thoughts towards Virginia. In 1617 they sent a deputation to England to apply for a patent. They offered to assent to the doctrines of the established church, to honor the bishops as civil officers, and to reject all power or authority in any ecclesiastical body that was not derived from the king, although they would not adopt the established form of worship.

7. King James I. was willing to connive at their settling in America, though he would not promise them liberty in religion. The Virginia Company, after many delays, gave them a patent (1619), of which, however, no use was made. They had some fruitless negotiations, also, with the Dutch for permission to settle in New Netherland. At length, in 1620, a portion of the Pilgrims, as they are now called, formed a joint-stock partnership with certain London merchants for the establishment of a trading, fishing, and planting company; the merchants to furnish the money, the labor of every adult emigrant to be considered equivalent to one share of £10, and all the profits to be divided at the end of seven years.

8. They sailed from Delft Haven in July, in a small vessel called the *Speedwell*, and at Southampton the greater part of them went aboard a larger ship, the *Mayflower*. The *Speedwell* proved unseaworthy and put back, and it was not until September 6, 1620, two months before the organization of the Council for New England, that the *Mayflower* alone sailed from Plymouth with one hundred and two Pilgrims, men, women, and children, led by Elder William Brewster.

---

Why did they desire to settle in America? What overtures were made to secure a patent? 7. Describe the conduct of James I. What partnership was entered into? 8. What is said of the *Speedwell*?



9. **Landing of the Pilgrims.**—When they put to sea they had not determined upon what part of the coast to land, and they had no plan of government. On the 11th of November they cast anchor in what is now the harbor of Provincetown, on Cape Cod, Massachusetts. Before landing they drew up



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

a written agreement “covenanting and combining themselves together into a civil body politic,” and chose John Carver as governor.

10. Exploring parties examined the sandy peninsula and the opposite shore of the mainland, and on December 11 (old style, or December 21 new style) they chose for their home the site of what is now the town of Plymouth, Mas-

---

9. Where did the pilgrims intend to land? Where did they anchor? What remarkable agreement did they make before landing? Who was chosen governor? 10. What place did they choose for their home?



sachusetts. The 22d of December is wrongly observed as the anniversary of the landing ; but it was not until December 25 (old style) that the passengers disembarked on a rock still shown at Plymouth, and began the first house for their common use. It was nearly three months before shelter was ready for all, and meanwhile many of them lived on the ship. They named the settlement New Plymouth.

**11. New Plymouth.**—Like nearly all the first adventurers in America, they were ill-provided for life in the wilderness. They had little to eat except scanty and irregular supplies of fish, and nothing to drink except water. At one time their store of corn was so small that, being divided, it gave only five kernels to each person. About half the emigrants perished during the winter. Governor Carver died in the spring, and William Bradford was elected his successor. Miles Standish, who had served as a soldier in the Low Countries, was entrusted with the military defence.

**12.** Fortunately, the first Indians whom the colonists encountered were well disposed. In the spring the settlement was visited by a friendly savage named Samoset, who had learned a few words of English from fishermen on the coast of Maine, and by another Indian called Squanto, one of those whom Weymouth had taken to England. These two men brought to the settlement the powerful chief Massasoit, whose home was at Pokanoket, now Warren, Rhode Island, and later two of the colonists were deputed to traverse the forests with an Indian guide and return the chief's visit. The Pilgrims made a treaty of friendship and alliance with Massasoit. When Canonicus, the chief of the Narragansets, sent them a bundle of arrows tied with the skin of a rattlesnake as a message of enmity, Bradford

---

When did they land ? What name was given to the settlement ? 11. What is said of their sufferings during the winter ? 12. Describe their intercourse with the Indians. Who visited them ? The result ?



stuffed the skin with powder and ball, and sent it back as a defiance. Canonius thereupon treated for peace.

13. In the summer the colony revived; food became abundant; and in November (1621) the ship *Fortune* arrived, bringing a reinforcement of thirty-five persons and a patent for the colony, being the first grant issued by the new Council for New England. In the autumn of 1622 a day was appointed to render thanks for a fruitful harvest, and this is the earliest mention of the New England festival of Thanksgiving.

14. A party of emigrants who came out in 1622, finding the stern and sour manners of the Puritans distasteful, left New Plymouth and settled at Wessagusset (now Weymouth, near Boston), where their bad conduct soon provoked a conspiracy of the Indians to massacre all the whites. Winslow, one of the leading Puritans, cured Massasoit about this time of a dangerous illness, and the



MILES STANDISH.

grateful chief disclosed the plot in good season. Captain Standish thereupon marched to Wessagusset with eight men, roused the colonists, killed three Indian chiefs, and so terrified the savages that for a long time there was no more

---

What is said of the Narragansets? 13. What good fortune befell the colony in 1621? Give the origin of the festival of Thanksgiving. 14. Describe the Wessagusset colony. What did Capt. Standish accomplish?



trouble with them. The Wessagusset settlement, however, was broken up.

**15. Disputes in the Colony.**—The new Plymouth people were soon vexed by internal dissensions. Although they had left England on account of religious persecution, they had no idea of granting to others the liberty of worship which they claimed for themselves. A preacher named Lyford was arrested for holding service according to the forms of the



CUTTING DOWN THE MAY POLE.

Church of England, and, together with one Oldham, was banished from the colony.

**16.** The result of these troubles was a quarrel among the London merchants who were partners with the Pilgrims

15. What troubles arose in the Plymouth colony? Why was Lyford arrested? Who were banished? 16. Give the result of these troubles. On what terms was the joint-stock partnership dissolved?





in the joint-stock enterprise. The company was dissolved; the colonists bought out the rights of the other shareholders for about \$9,000, divided the property among themselves, and became an almost independent community.

17. Lyford and Oldham established themselves at Nantasket (now Hull); other stations were soon formed at Cape Ann, Naumkeag (Salem), and all along the coast of Massachusetts Bay. A colony of roystering adventurers, led by Thomas Morton (1625), set up a tall May-pole in the midst of their settlement at Mount Wollaston, known as Mare Mount, or Merry Mount (Quincy, near Boston), and so shocked the Puritans by their disorderly behavior that an expedition from New Plymouth dispersed the establishment and cut down the pole. Morton was shipped to England.

18. **The Massachusetts Company.**—The original Plymouth colony never attracted more than a handful of settlers, but a new establishment was soon made close alongside of it which prospered rapidly. In 1628 the Council for New England granted to John Endicott and five associates the territory between the Charles and Merrimac rivers (that is, from Boston to the New Hampshire line), and the next year a royal charter was obtained for the colony in the name of the Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England.

19. A few months later the company transferred the governing power from London to the colony itself by choosing officers from those stockholders who proposed to emigrate, while those who remained in England kept only a partial control of the trade. After this important change a great number of emigrants came out, many of them being persons of education and means; nearly all were members of the popular party in politics, and more or less hostile to the established church in religion.

---

17. Where were new settlements made? Describe the settlers at Merry Mount. 18. Describe the grant to Endicott and others. 19. What important change was made in the government? The result?



20. The limits of the Plymouth colony were fixed between the Charles River and Narraganset Bay, so that the two colonies divided Massachusetts Bay between them, the present site of Boston being on the north side of the boundary line. The Pilgrims, however, did not obtain the king's sanction to their charter, and they continued to govern themselves by the covenant signed in the cabin of the *Mayflower*.

21. The first parties of emigrants under the charter of Massachusetts Bay settled at Naumkeag, to which the name of Salem was now given. Endicott was already there as governor. Charlestown was founded by an offshoot from this body. In 1630 about one thousand settlers came out with John Winthrop as governor, and a part of them founded Boston, naming it in honor of the town of Boston, in Lincolnshire, to which many of them belonged.

22. **State and Church.**—Most of the new-comers were Puritans, like the settlers of New Plymouth, and they founded their civil government upon their church. No man was to be a citizen and voter unless he had been admitted to membership in some one of the congregations of the colony. Membership was not easily granted, and not more than a fourth part of the adult population ever obtained it. The magistrates had authority in both civil and religious concerns, and the elders of the churches were consulted on all important temporal affairs.

23. Any settler who made malicious remarks about the magistracy or the church was to be punished with the loss of his ears. Baptism was a privilege confined to church members and their children. Marriage was celebrated by the magistrates instead of the church, and the civil authorities had power to grant divorces in such cases as they saw

---

20. How was Massachusetts divided? How was the Plymouth colony governed? 21. When was Boston founded? 22. How were church and state combined? 23. How were baptism and marriage regarded?



fit. Amusements were forbidden. Gayety was looked upon as wicked. The observance of any of the holidays of the Catholic or English Church was called "idolatrous," and it was reckoned a sin to eat mince-pie on Christmas Day.

**24. Intolerance.**—The Puritans were equally intolerant of those who conformed to the observances of the established English church and those who frankly rejected its doctrines. They sent back to England those who wished to preserve the English liturgy, and those whom they considered "secret papists" or otherwise "unfit to inhabit" the colony. Quakers were persecuted with especial severity, and all of that sect who ventured into the colony were barbarously used. Four were hanged; but as harsh measures failed to prevent their coming the laws against them were finally repealed.

**25. Jesuits** were forbidden to enter the colony, and if they came a second time after being expelled they were to be punished with death. It used to be the practice of the Puritans, up to the time of the Revolution, to show their hatred of the Catholic Church by publicly burning an effigy of the Pope. Soon after taking command of the troops before Boston, General Washington issued an order severely condemning this "ridiculous and childish custom."

**26. Roger Williams.**—A young preacher named Roger Williams, who came out in 1631, was obliged to leave Boston on account of his theological views, especially for denying the authority of the magistrates in matters of religion. Banished likewise from Salem, he fled to the wilderness in midwinter, in order to escape being transported to England, and found refuge and kind treatment with Massasoit.

**27.** After suffering many hardships he founded the town

---

What is said of Catholic holidays? 24. Describe the intolerance of the Puritans. 25. How were Catholics treated? What practice was condemned by Washington? 26. Why was Roger Williams banished?

of Providence (1636), and set up the first congregation of Baptists in America. The colony composed of his followers was governed at first as a simple democracy, everything being



ROGER WILLIAMS.

decided by the votes of the majority; but in 1643 Williams obtained a charter in England. This was the origin of the State of Rhode Island. Williams professed the principle of toleration in religion, but the laws of Rhode Island, as of nearly all the colonies, contained provisions against the Catholics.

and teaching that all believers are inspired by the Holy Ghost, was banished (1637), together with several who shared her opinions, and her adherents were required to surrender all the arms in their possession, for fear they “might upon some revelation make a sudden insurrection.” Finding refuge at first near Roger Williams in Rhode Island, the exiles afterwards removed to the protection of the Dutch, in what is now Westchester County, New York, in order to get further away from the Puri-

27. What is said of the settlement of Rhode Island? When was Rhode Island founded? Were Catholics tolerated there? 28. Who was Mrs. Hutchinson? Describe her teachings. Where did she seek refuge?



tans. Mrs. Hutchinson and her family were there murdered by the Indians.

**29. Spirit of Independence.**—Thus the Puritans practised in the New World the same intolerance from which they suffered in the Old. Fear of the established church, however, helped to keep alive among them a love of self-government, and the spirit of political independence was continually strengthened by the arrival of new emigrants who had belonged to the popular party in the struggle between the king and Parliament in England. They provided for their military defence; they voted £600 to fortify the settlements on Massachusetts Bay when the crown attempted to take away their charter and govern them by a royal commission; and they refused to use the English flag because there was a cross in it, Endicott going so far as to cut that symbol out with his sword.

**30.** Fanatical and tyrannical in their laws and customs, the people of New England were nevertheless industrious and self-reliant. They practised various trades, built ships, opened schools in every town, founded Harvard College in 1638, and set up a printing-press in 1639, which was the first in the United States, though not the first in America, the earliest books printed on this continent having been issued by the Spaniards in Mexico.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

### NEW HAMPSHIRE—MAINE—CONNECTICUT.

**1. New Hampshire and Maine.**—The first settlements in New Hampshire followed very soon after the landing of the

29. What did the Puritans practise in the New World? What kept alive the spirit of independence? How did they provide for their defence? For education? 30. For what were the Puritans distinguished?



Pilgrims at New Plymouth. Sir Ferdinando Gorges and John Mason obtained from the Council of New England, in 1622, a grant of territory between the Merrimac and the Kennebec, which they named Laconia. They organized a partnership of merchants called the Company of Laconia, and sent out a colony of fishermen, who founded Portsmouth and Dover (1623). Exeter was founded in 1629 by the Rev. Mr. Wheelwright, one of the exiled followers of Mrs. Hutchinson.

2. Afterwards Mason and Gorges divided their grant, Mason taking all west of the Piscataqua and naming it New Hampshire, while Gorges took the eastern share and called it New Somerset. The name of Maine was first given to this region in 1635, when the Council of New England, or Plymouth Company, surrendered its charter to the crown, and the lands were divided among the members.

3. The New Hampshire settlements soon submitted to the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, who claimed that they were situated within her boundaries. They remained subject to this more flourishing colony until 1680, when New Hampshire became a royal province.

4. In the territory belonging to Gorges (Maine) settlements were carried all along the coast, but they were small and scattered, and for a long time there were no towns. Massachusetts set up a claim to these settlements, and after a long conflict secured her authority over them, which lasted till 1820.

5. As Gorges wished to erect a barrier of Scotch Presbyterianism between his domain and the French Catholic settlements of the extreme eastern coast, a patent for the territory beyond the St. Croix (the present boundary be-

- 
1. Give an account of the settlement of New Hampshire. Who founded Portsmouth? 2. How was the grant divided? What occurred in 1635? 3. What is said of the New Hampshire settlements? 4. Of Maine?



tween Maine and the British possessions) was given in 1621 to Sir William Alexander, Earl of Stirling. None of this country belonged to the English, for it was all included in the French province of Acadia (New Brunswick and Nova Scotia).

6. War breaking out between France and England a few years later, Lord Stirling took the opportunity to get possession of this domain, but it was given up to France by the treaty of peace. The boundaries, however, were ill defined, and for many years there were quarrels between the French and English settlers.

7. **Catholic Missions in Maine.**—The first white settlers in Maine, as we have seen, were the French missionaries at Mount Desert. They did not abandon the field after the destruction of this post. The Capuchins had already a convent on the Penobscot and a hospice on the Kennebec when the Jesuit Father Gabriel Drullettes founded a mission among the Abenakis, near the present site of Augusta, in 1646.

8. The Abenakis had heard of the Catholic religion from an Indian who had been converted by the Jesuits in Canada, and they had sent two of their chiefs to Quebec to ask for "black-gowns" to instruct the tribe. The mission among the Abenakis was so fruitful that almost the whole people became Catholics, and retained their faith under all trials. Of the many devoted priests who labored among them after the departure of Father Drullettes, the most distinguished was Father Sebastian Rasles, who was finally killed by the English in the midst of his flock.

9. **Connecticut.**—The Housatonic and Connecticut rivers were discovered by a Dutch navigator, Adrian Block (1614), the year after the first occupation of Manhattan Island, and

---

5. Why was a patent granted to the Earl of Stirling? To whom did the territory belong? 6. How did the English get possession? The result? 7. Describe the Catholic missions in Maine. Their success.



the Dutch soon began a trade with the Indians on the shores of Long Island Sound. In 1633, having purchased land from the natives, they built Fort Good Hope on the Connecticut, near the present site of Hartford. The English, however, claimed all this country, and the Pilgrims of New Plymouth immediately sent a party of settlers under Captain Holmes to establish themselves on the Connecticut a mile and a half above the Dutch fort. The Dutch commanded them to begone, but they paid no attention to the order.

10. Two years later a large party of Puritans from Newtown and Dorchester, in the colony of Massachusetts Bay, removed to the neighborhood of the Plymouth trading-post on the Connecticut River, finding their way across the country by the compass and driving their cattle before them.

11. In the meantime certain persons in England—Lord Say, Lord Brooke, John Hampden, John Pym, and others—had obtained a grant as lords proprietors of all the coast one hundred and twenty miles west from Narraganset Bay, embracing the whole of Connecticut and more than half of Rhode Island. John Winthrop the younger (son of the governor of Massachusetts), Hugh Peters, and Henry Vane were appointed commissioners of the lords proprietors, and sent a party by water from Boston to build a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River. The fort was named Saybrook, in honor of two of the proprietors.

12. The settlers up the river nearly died of starvation during the first winter, but the next summer (1636) a larger party, under their preacher, Thomas Hooker, made their way through the wilderness, and the little colony revived. The emigrants from Newtown founded Hartford; the Dorchester

---

9. Who discovered Connecticut? Who disputed the claims of the Dutch? The result? 10. Describe the Puritan settlement on the Connecticut. 11. Describe the settlement of Saybrook. 12. Of Hartford.





people settled at Windsor; Wethersfield was planted soon afterwards; and in 1639 these three towns met in convention in Hartford and adopted a written constitution.

13. New Haven was founded in 1638 by a party of Non-conformists under the Rev. John Davenport. They had recently emigrated from England to Boston, but, not liking the religious peculiarities of the Puritans of the Massachusetts colony, they determined to establish a community of their own. They admitted none but members of the church to share in the government, resolved to have no legislation except what they could find in the Bible, and were even stricter than the other New England colonists. Their strange rules have been the objects of ridicule under the name of the Blue Laws; but the account generally given of those laws is greatly exaggerated.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE DUTCH SETTLEMENTS—SWEDES ON THE DELAWARE—SEIZURE OF NEW NETHERLAND BY THE ENGLISH—NEW JERSEY.

1. **Dutch Settlements.**—While the Puritans were establishing themselves in New England, the Dutch settlements (New Netherland) on and near the Hudson River were slowly increasing. The Dutch kept up a friendly intercourse with the Indians, and applied themselves with great industry to the trade in furs and skins. The merchants engaged in the enterprise were incorporated by the name of the Dutch West India Company (1621) with powers

---

What towns adopted a written constitution in 1639? 13. When was New Haven founded? Describe the founders. Their government. Their rules. 1. What is said of the Dutch in New Netherland?



of government, and in 1623 thirty families of Walloons, or Protestants from the Belgian and Flemish provinces, were sent out to make a permanent colony. Some settled at Fort Orange, where Albany now stands (Fort Nassau, built near this place in 1614, had been abandoned); others removed to the Delaware and Connecticut Rivers; and others laid the foundation of Brooklyn (1625).

2. Governor Peter Minuit (*min'-u-it*) in 1626 bought the whole of Manhattan Island of the Indians for \$24, and built Fort Amsterdam on the present site of the Battery. Around this post grew up the city of New York. The settlement was called New Amsterdam, and was made the capital of the colony. This was six years after the landing of the Pilgrims and four years before the founding of Boston.

3. To encourage the formation of trading and farming settlements the company granted extraordinary privileges to any of its members who would take out colonies of fifty or more persons at their own expense. Under this regulation villages were planted all along the Hudson. The proprietors were known as "patroons," or patrons, and governed their territories like feudal lords—a system which led to disputes and conflicts lasting for several generations.

4. **The Swedes.**—In consequence of dissensions between the patroons and the company Minuit was recalled. He thereupon entered the service of Sweden, and in 1638 sailed with a colony of Swedes to the Delaware River, where he built a fort near the present site of Wilmington, Delaware, and another on an island just below what is now Philadelphia. A Dutch settlement had been made in the

---

What is said of the Dutch West India Co.? Of the Walloons? Where did they settle? 2. By whom was Manhattan Island purchased? 3. How did the Company encourage settlements? The result?



southern part of Delaware several years earlier, but the Indians destroyed it.

5. The second governor of New Netherland was Wouter van Twiller, and he was succeeded by William Kieft, under whom in 1643 a barbarous attack was made by the colonists upon the Indians at Hoboken, and one hundred and twenty savages were massacred in the night. This led to a terrible Indian war, which lasted more than two years. Kieft was recalled, and replaced by Peter Stuyvesant (*sti'-ve-sant*), a brave and able but arbitrary man, who kept peace with the savages, and in 1665 compelled the Swedes on the Delaware to submit to the Dutch authority. Thus New Sweden was annexed to New Netherland.



PETER STUYVESANT.

6. **The English in New York.**—The Dutch settlers, occupying territory claimed by the English on both sides of them, were continually involved in disputes with their neighbors, especially those of Connecticut. Their troubles were increased by English families who, having settled in and near New Amsterdam, began to demand popular forms of government and to fill many of the Dutch with the same political ideas which prevailed in New England. In December, 1663, deputies chosen by each village in New Netherland assembled at New Amsterdam without the

4. What led to the settlement of Delaware by the Swedes? 5. What occurred under Kieft's rule? What did his successor accomplish?  
6. With whom did the Dutch quarrel? What increased the trouble?



governor's consent, and a revolution seemed to be at hand when the Dutch authority was suddenly overthrown by other means.

7. The English king, Charles II., gave to his brother, the Duke of York (afterwards James II.), the whole territory from the Connecticut to the Delaware, and James sent out a fleet under Col. Nicolls to take possession of the gift. The ships arrived in August, 1664, and summoned the colonists to surrender. Stuyvesant wished to resist, but the Dutch inhabitants would not fight and the English declared for their countrymen. New Netherland accordingly passed peaceably into English possession, and in honor of the duke the name of New York was given to the town and province. The other settlements on the Hudson and the various Dutch villages in New Jersey and Delaware promptly capitulated.

8. Nine years afterwards, when the people, still less pleased with their new rulers than with the old, were again on the point of rebellion, a Dutch fleet entered the Bay of New York and easily regained possession of the town. It was restored to England, however, at the end of the war then going on between that country and Holland.

9. **Character of the Colony.**—At the time of the surrender to Nicolls in 1664 the province contained 10,000 inhabitants scattered far and wide along the Hudson and Delaware Rivers, on Long Island and in New Jersey, and New Amsterdam had a population of about 1,500. The Dutch settlers had emigrated merely for the purpose of making money, and without any reference to politics or creed.

10. According to law, no religion except that of the

---

How did the internal disputes culminate? 7. What grant did the Duke of York receive? What occurred in 1664? How did Stuyvesant act? The result? 8. Did the people like the change?



Reformed Dutch Church was to be tolerated, but the law was not strictly enforced, and many other Protestant sects were admitted into the colony. There were even a few Catholics in New Amsterdam. Father Jogues and Father Bressani, the Jesuit missionaries, after suffering unheard-of tortures at the hands of the Mohawks, were ransomed by the Dutch at Fort Orange (Albany), and kindly entertained by Governor Kieft at New Amsterdam. Father Jogues relates that he heard the confessions of two Catholics whom he found at Fort Amsterdam in 1643. The only denominations, however, which were allowed to celebrate worship in public were the Reformed Dutch, the Swedish Lutherans, and the Church of England.

**11. New Jersey.**—The Duke of York conveyed the territory between the Hudson and Delaware Rivers to Lord Berkeley (brother of the governor of Virginia) and Sir George Carteret (1664), and it was named New Jersey after the Island of Jersey, in the English Channel, of which Carteret had been governor. Elizabethtown, settled the same year by Englishmen from Long Island, was named in honor of Lady Carteret. The Dutch had several small trading stations in this territory at an earlier date, and Quakers, having bought the rights of Lord Berkeley, came soon afterwards. In 1676 a division was made, the Quakers taking West Jersey and Carteret retaining East Jersey, which became Puritan.

---

How did the English lose and regain control of the province? 9. What was the population in 1664? What is said of the Dutch settlers? 10. What is said of religious toleration in New Netherland? How were two Jesuit missionaries treated? Name them. Where did Father Jogues find Catholics? What denominations had privilege to worship in public? 11. To whom was New Jersey granted? When and by whom was Elizabethtown settled? Who bought Berkeley's rights? What division was made in 1676? What did Carteret retain?



## CHAPTER X.

## THE CATHOLIC COLONY OF MARYLAND—LORD BALTIMORE—FREEDOM OF WORSHIP DESTROYED BY THE PROTESTANTS.

1. **Lord Baltimore.**—The first colony established in America on the principles of freedom and self-government in politics and equal treatment for all in religion was the Catholic colony of Maryland. Sir George Calvert, a gentleman of Yorkshire, a Secretary of State under James I., and one of the original members of the London Company of Virginia, resigned his offices when the Puritan party became violent in England, and declared himself a Catholic. James seems to have respected his courage, for soon afterwards he was created Lord Baltimore.

2. Calvert had previously established a colony in Newfoundland just after the landing of the Pilgrims at New Plymouth, and offered a refuge there to Catholics and other persecuted persons. In search of a milder climate and a more generous soil, he visited Jamestown, but he was turned away on account of his religion. Finally, in 1632, he obtained from Charles I. a grant of unoccupied land north of the Potomac, and named it Maryland in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria, and to this territory he resolved to transplant at his own cost a large colony of Catholics and such other persons as chose to join them.

3. The patent was prepared by his own hand, but he died before it received the royal signature, and it was issued to his son, Cecil Calvert, second Lord Baltimore. The proprietor was created absolute lord of the province, and empowered to make all necessary laws, but he stipu-

---

1. For what is the Maryland colony distinguished? Who was Sir George Calvert? 2. Where had he established a colony? Why did he visit Jamestown? What did he get from the king? For what object?



lated of his own accord that no laws should be valid without the consent of the freemen of the colony or their representatives in assembly.

4. When a dispute soon arose between the colonists and the proprietor as to which should have the right of originating laws, Lord Baltimore magnanimously surrendered his claims, and reserved only the privilege of a veto. No other patent up to this time had given the people of a colony any share in legislating for their



CECIL CALVERT, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE.

own interests. The right of taxation, which the crown persistently claimed in other cases, was given up to the settlers themselves. Nothing was said in the patent about religious toleration, perhaps because a proposal to leave all denominations free would have provoked too much opposition in England.

5. In a prospectus inviting people to join the enterprise Lord Baltimore, besides setting forth the richness of the country and the advantages of the expected trade, declared that his "first and most important design, which also ought to be the aim of the rest," was "not to think so much of planting fruits and trees in a land so fruitful as of sowing the seeds of religion and piety—surely a design worthy of Christians, worthy of angels, worthy of Englishmen."

---

3. To whom was the patent issued? Why? What power was given to the proprietor? By the proprietor to the people? 4. What right was surrendered? How did the patent differ from all previous ones?

6. **Departure of the Colony.**—About twenty Catholic gentlemen joined him, and these, with servants and laborers, two Jesuit priests, Father Andrew White and Father John Altham (sometimes called John Gravener), and two lay brothers, John Knowles and Thomas Gervase, made a party of nearly three hundred. Lord Baltimore was



THE LANDING OF THE MARYLAND CATHOLICS.

detained in England and committed the expedition to his younger brother, Leonard Calvert, as governor, with Jerome Hawley and Thomas Cornwallis as his councillors.

7. They sailed from Cowes, in the Isle of Wight, with the ship *Ark* and the pinnace *Dove*, committing them to the protection of God, the Blessed Virgin, St. Ignatius, and

5. State Lord Baltimore's "first and most important design." 6. Of whom was the first colony composed? Who had charge of the colony? 7. From what port did they sail? Under whose protection?





the guardian angels of Maryland. Following the long route by the West Indies, they sighted Virginia after a stormy voyage of three months. They sailed up Chesapeake Bay, and on the Feast of the Annunciation, March 25, 1634, they landed on a fair island (Blackstone's Island, now nearly washed away), which they called St. Clement's. Mass was celebrated, and then with great solemnity they set up a large cross and recited a litany.

8. **St. Mary's.**—After spending two days in exploring



PRESENT APPEARANCE OF ST. MARY'S.

the Potomac and making friends of the natives, Calvert chose a place for his settlement on a little stream which flows into the Potomac on the north side, near its mouth,

What route was taken? How long did the voyage last? Where did they land? What name was given to the island? How did they commemorate their landing? 8. What place was chosen for settlement?



where there was already an Indian village. He bought of the savages their whole village, wigwams and all, and thirty miles of land, paying in axes, hatchets, rakes, and cloth. The colonists occupied the Indian huts till they could build houses, and one of the best of them they used as a chapel. They gave the town the name of St. Mary's.

9. The settlement prospered. A crop of maize was gathered the first summer, and the Indians taught the colonists how to prepare it for food and how to trap game. Before winter all were comfortably sheltered. A church was soon erected on the high bank of the river. The Jesuits, joined by others of their order, devoted themselves to the spiritual wants of the settlers and the conversion of the Indians; in six months St. Mary's made more progress than Virginia had made in six years; good order, morality, and industry prevailed; and in less than a year after their landing the colonists met in general assembly to make laws for themselves.

10. Although the founders were Catholics, and the Catholic faith was recognized by law as the established religion of the colony, there were some Protestants—servants and laborers—in the first party that came out, and others followed them from England, many becoming converted after their arrival. The policy of Lord Baltimore, as well as of the colonists themselves, was not to interfere with anybody's creed.

11. A refuge was offered at St. Mary's to all Protestants who fled from the Protestant intolerance either of Puritanism in Massachusetts or of the Church of England in Virginia, and after a few years a formal act

---

Describe the purchase from the Indians. What was the town named? 9. Describe the progress of the settlement. 10. What was the established religion? What policy was pursued towards Protestants?



of toleration was passed, by which all Christians were to be protected against molestation on account of their religion. There never was any departure from this rule as long as Maryland remained Catholic, and it was a rule that prevailed nowhere else. We shall see that, as a consequence of this generosity, the Catholics became the victims of Protestant persecution in their own colony, and the freedom which they had established was destroyed.

**12. Troubles with Virginia.**—At the time of Calvert's arrival a trader named Clayborne was established on Kent Island, in Chesapeake Bay, within the limits of the Maryland grant. Clayborne refused to acknowledge the authority of Calvert, and, being sustained by the Virginians, who always regarded the Maryland colony with hostility, he maintained an open warfare with the government at St. Mary's. A number of Puritans, expelled from Virginia, had accepted the hospitality of the Maryland Catholics, and now turned against their protectors, allying themselves with the partisans of Clayborne, and obliging Calvert to flee from the province (1644). Two years later the governor came back with a body of troops and re-established his authority.

**13. Puritans and Catholics.**—It was three years after this (1649) that the Catholic Assembly of Maryland passed the act of toleration which earned for the colony the name of "land of the sanctuary." Protestants were admitted to office on equal terms with Catholics, and, some time after the death of Leonard Calvert, Lord Baltimore appointed Stone, a Protestant, as governor. The greater part of the Puritans had established themselves at Providence, near the present site of Annapolis, and a separate

---

11. To whom did St. Mary's offer a refuge? What act was passed? Its object? Its consequences? 12. What led to Clayborne's rebellion? The result? 13. Why was Maryland called "land of the sanctuary"?



county, called Anne Arundel, was organized for them in 1650. As they increased in numbers Charles County was also formed for them. They were always turbulent and insubordinate.

14. After the execution of Charles I. and the establishment of the Commonwealth, the Parliament sent out commissioners to look after "the plantations within Chesapeake Bay" (1652), which had acknowledged Charles II. One of these commissioners was Clayborne, the old enemy of the colony. With the aid of the Puritans Governor Stone was deposed and imprisoned (1655), several of the adherents of Lord Baltimore were hanged, Clayborne was reinstated at Kent Island, and a new government was set up, one of whose first acts was to exclude all "papists and prelatists" from the benefits of the statute of toleration, and to declare that no Catholic should sit in the Assembly or vote for members of it.

15. For three years the province remained in a state of civil war. One government was established at St. Mary's under the authority of Lord Baltimore's patent, and another at Providence under the authority of the Puritan commissioners. The rights of the proprietor were restored on the accession of Charles II., and Lord Baltimore's brother, Philip Calvert, became governor. The act of toleration was now revived in its full extent, and the colony remained at peace until the ascendancy of Protestantism was secured in England by the revolution which dethroned James II. and set up William and Mary.

16. The year after that event (1689) a Puritan named Coode raised an insurrection in Maryland, and, spreading a lying report that the Catholics had made a league with

---

14. What course did Parliament pursue toward Maryland? Why? Who sided with the commissioners? What followed? How were the Catholics treated? 15. How did the Restoration affect the colony?



the Indians to massacre the Protestants, he organized an "Association in arms for the defence of the Protestant religion," marched upon St. Mary's, captured the fort of St. Inigoe (St. Ignatius), and called a convention, which declared the authority of Lord Baltimore forfeited.

17. Two years later the king revoked the grant to the proprietor and made Maryland a royal province. The capital was removed from St. Mary's to Annapolis. The Church of England was made the established religion of the colony; the Catholics were disfranchised; and thus the founders of Maryland were violently and ungratefully deprived of the privileges they had been the first to grant to other people.

18. In 1715 Benedict Charles Calvert, the fourth Lord Baltimore, being a Protestant, recovered the proprietary rights, and they remained in the family until the Revolution. No justice, however, was shown to the Catholics. In 1704 an "Act to prevent the increase of popery in the province" made it an offence to say Mass except in private houses, to exercise any other function of the priesthood, or attempt to make converts. Catholics were forbidden to teach. They were taxed twice as much as Protestants. After a while they were forbidden to approach within one hundred yards of the state-house. Most of the oppressive penal statutes continued in force until 1774. The Jesuit missions, however, survived all persecutions and became the foundation of the American Church.

---

16. What occurred in 1690? What report did Coode spread? Describe the progress of the insurrection. By whom was the authority of Lord Baltimore declared forfeited? 17. What action did the king take? What became the established religion? Of what were Catholics deprived? 18. What occurred in 1715? Did this better the condition of the Catholics? Describe the act of 1704. How long did these penal laws continue in force? Did the Jesuits abandon the mission?



## CHAPTER XI.

THE INDIANS IN NEW ENGLAND—THE PEQUOD WAR—THE UNITED COLONIES—KING PHILIP'S WAR.

1. **The New England Settlers and the Indians.**—The settlers of New England took little interest in attempts to christianize the Indians, though they succeeded for a time in keeping the friendship of most of the tribes, and one of the first Boston preachers, the Rev. John Eliot, devoted a long life to missionary enterprises among the savages, and won great influence over them.

2. The powerful and warlike confederacy of the Pequods, whose chief seat was on the Pequod (now the Thames) River, Connecticut, was on bad terms with the whites, and, after a succession of raids and murders, endeavored to concert with the Narragansets a general massacre of the colonists. This plot was defeated by the influence of Roger Williams over the Narragansets. The whites now determined upon a war, and secured the help of the Narragansets and Mohegans.

3. An expedition accordingly gathered on Narraganset Bay, consisting of twenty men from the Massachusetts colony under Captain Underhill, ninety from the Connecticut towns under Captain John Mason, sixty Mohegan Indians led by their chief, Uncas, and two hundred Narragansets under Miantonomoh (*mi-an-to-no-mo*), the nephew of Canonicus.

4. After a march of two days (May, 1637) the allied force came upon one of the principal Pequod strongholds, a village surrounded by a fortification of trees and brush-

---

1. Did the Puritans attempt to christianize the Indians? What is said of Rev. John Eliot? 2. What is said of the Pequods? Why did the whites determine upon war? 3. Describe the preparations.



wood. The Pequods were surprised in their sleep, but they fought bravely, until Mason, crying out, "We must burn them," thrust a firebrand into one of the wigwams, setting the whole village in flames. The attack now became a massacre, the whites keeping up the fight within the fort, while their Indian allies struck down those who attempted to escape.

5. A fortnight later, more troops having arrived from Boston, the remnant of the Pequods were pursued to the swamps in which they had taken refuge, and their ruin was completed; eight or nine hundred were killed or taken; the captives were sold into slavery. Sas'sacus, the head sachem, fled to the Mohawks, who put him to death; and the confederacy was entirely broken up.

6. **The United Colonies.**—For better protection against Indian attacks, and for the advancement of their interests in general, a confederation of "The United Colonies of New England" was formed in 1643 by delegates from Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, who met at Boston with the General Court of Massachusetts. Commissioners from each colony were to meet alternately at Boston, Plymouth, Hartford, and New Haven. The commissioners must be church members; they chose their own president; they had charge of Indian affairs and war. Massachusetts, being by far the most powerful colony, took precedence over the others. The settlements of Rhode Island and Maine were not admitted to this league. The confederacy was important as the first step towards union, but it was dissolved after some years without accomplishing what was expected of it.

7. **King Philip's War.**—An attempt was made to revive

---

4. Describe the attack. 5. What happened a fortnight later? 6. Why did the New England colonies unite? Which colonies were represented? Excluded? Describe the plan. What was accomplished?



the union in 1675, when a new and more terrible Indian war broke out. The Whampano'ags, or Pokano'kets, on the east side of Narraganset Bay, were now ruled by the nephew and successor of Massasoit, Pometacom, known to the colonists as King Philip. Jealous of the continual encroachments of the whites, and incensed by the hanging of some of his men on a charge of murder, he attacked the nearest settlements and killed several of the inhabitants (June, 1675).

8. A body of Massachusetts volunteers pursued him through the swamps and forests, but he escaped into the interior of Massachusetts, where the Nipmuc tribe had likewise taken arms against the whites. In a short time there was a general rising of the Indians all over New England, and they were more dangerous now than ever before because the colonists had supplied many of them with arms.

9. Brookfield, Northfield, and Deerfield were burned, and at Deerfield Captain Lathrop and eighty men were killed in an ambuscade. Small parties of troops on the march were cut off and destroyed. The people of the outlying settlements abandoned their homes and fled to the larger towns. A thousand men, half to be mounted dragoons, were levied at the joint expense of the confederated colonies, and a second thousand were voted for a special expedition against the Narragansets, who had given aid and shelter to the hostile tribes.

10. In December, 1675, thirteen companies of troops from Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut, the whole commanded by Josiah Winslow, Governor of Plymouth, attacked the Narragansets in one of their ancient strong-

---

7. What occurred in 1675? Who was King Philip? Why did he attack the settlers? 8. Who pursued him? Who joined him? What made the Indians powerful? 9. Describe the progress of the war.





holds, in what is now the town of South Kingston, Rhode Island. The fort was built on a rising ground in the midst of a swamp, and surrounded by a palisade and a close hedge fifteen or sixteen feet thick. The only approach was by a narrow entrance defended by a tree thrown across it, and with a blockhouse of logs in front and another on the flank.

11. As the colonists advanced they were met by a severe fire and many of them fell; but after two hours' fighting they forced the entrance and set fire to the wigwams. The horrors of the Pequod massacre were renewed. Numbers of the Indians perished in the flames, and the colonists themselves lost in the "Swamp Fight," in killed and wounded, about two hundred and forty men.

12. The exasperated Narragansets revenged themselves upon the settlements, and the war became more dreadful than ever. Warwick was burned, Providence was partly destroyed, the whole colony of Plymouth was overrun, attacks were made simultaneously in all quarters. In March, 1676, Captain Pierce, with fifty colonists and some friendly Indians, while trying to cover the Plymouth towns, fell into an ambush and was cut off. In April Captain Wadsworth and fifty men were surprised and killed while marching to the relief of Sudbury. In May Captain Turner, returning from a slaughter of Indians on the Connecticut, was entrapped and slain with thirty-eight men.

13. At Hadley, Mass., the savages made a sudden descent upon the settlement while the people were at church. In the midst of the confusion an old man with a long beard, whom nobody knew, rallied the terrified colonists

---

10. Who attacked the Narragansets? 11. Describe the "Swamp Fight." 12. How did the Narragansets revenge themselves? What settlements suffered? What is said of Captain Pierce? Wadsworth? Turner?



and took command of the defence. As soon as the Indians had been beaten off he disappeared, leaving many of the settlers under the impression that they had been saved by an angel. He was General William Goffe, one of the regicides, or Puritan judges who condemned King Charles I. to death. After the restoration of the Stuarts he fled to America with his father-in-law, Whalley, and was hunted from town to town and from forest to cave, with a price set on his head. For the last fifteen years of his life he was concealed at Hadley.

14. The war lasted more than a year. The General Court of Massachusetts regarded it as a punishment for the sins and extravagances of the people, and among other offences they mentioned pride, profanity, cheating, the wearing of long hair by the men, and toleration of the Quakers. The persecution of the Quakers was renewed, and still more effectual measures of defence were taken by calling out troops, placing garrisons in the towns, and collecting bands of Mohegans and other friendly Indians.

15. **Death of King Philip.**—Philip, after long evading the English by the rapidity of his movements, returned to his own stronghold, Mount Hope, or Pokanoket, where he was supported by his relative, Witamo, the female sachem of Pocasset. On the 1st of August, 1676, the camp was surprised by Major Church with a body of English and Indian volunteers. Philip escaped; his wife and son were captured; the boy was sold as a slave in Bermuda; more than a hundred of the Whampanoags and most of the followers of Witamo were killed; Witamo herself was drowned in trying to get away, and her head was cut off and set up on a pole in Taunton. A few days later Philip,

---

13. What occurred at Hadley? Who was General Goffe? 14. How long did the war last? How was it regarded? The effect on the Quakers? 15. Where was King Philip's stronghold? Who attacked him?



being attacked again by Church, was killed by one of his own people who had deserted; his head was carried in triumph to Plymouth, and one of his hands was given to the man who had shot him.

16. In this disastrous war the colonists lost six hundred men in battle, besides many persons massacred in the settlements. Twelve or thirteen towns were entirely ruined and others were partly burned. The losses in money were about a million dollars. On the other hand, the power of the savages was for ever broken. More than two thousand were killed or captured, and most of the captives were either hanged or reduced to slavery. From this time the tribes in New England fast dwindled away.



## CHAPTER XII.

### THE CAROLINAS—GEORGIA—GEN. OGLETHORPE.

1. **Settlement of Carolina.**—Between the English settlements of Virginia and the Spanish posts in Florida lay a vast tract which both nations claimed and neither had thus far colonized. In 1663, just before the grant of New York to the Duke of York, Charles II. erected this vacant territory (North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, and part of Florida) into the province of Carolina, and gave it to eight proprietors: Clarendon (the prime minister), Gen. Monk (Duke of Albemarle), Lord Ashley Cooper (afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury), Lord Berkeley

---

What became of King Philip? 16. What did the colonists suffer in this war? How did it affect the savages? What became of the captives? 1. Who claimed Carolina? To whom was it granted?



and Sir George Carteret (proprietors of New Jersey the next year), Sir William Berkeley (governor of Virginia), Lord Craven, and Sir John Colleton.

2. The Spanish missionaries had already penetrated into this region and made numerous converts among the savages. The Franciscans had towns of Christian Indians all along the Flint River in Southwestern Georgia, and stations also in the eastern part of the State, which lasted until the English destroyed them. Attempts had been made to form white settlements by the French under Ribault, the English under Raleigh, the Virginians, and the New Englanders, all of which failed.

3. The history of the colonization of the Carolinas dates from 1664, when plantations in what is now North Carolina were organized under the Clarendon grant as the Albemarle County Colony. A number of settlers from Barbadoes established themselves near the mouth of Cape Fear River, the present site of Wilmington, and, with some New-Englanders already there, formed the Clarendon Colony. They soon engaged in the exportation of boards, shingles, and staves, which is still one of the chief industries of that region of pine-woods.

4. A scheme of government for the province of Carolina was drawn up, at the request of the Earl of Shaftesbury, by the famous English philosopher, John Locke. It was a complicated plan which provided for a feudal nobility and other aristocratic institutions, the subjection of the people to the lords proprietors, and the establishment of the Church of England. Although nominally in force for more than twenty years, many of its regulations were never carried into effect. It produced quarrels about

---

Name the proprietors. 2. What is said of the Spanish missionaries? By whom had settlements been attempted? 3. Describe the Albemarle County Colony. The Clarendon colony. 4. What is said of John Locke?



rent and taxes between the settlers and the proprietors, and generally the people managed to retain the power of governing themselves.

5. Finally, after a long period of misrule and disorder, in the course of which there was more than once an open insurrection in North Carolina, the rights of the proprietors were purchased by Parliament and the whole province was subjected to the crown (1729).

6. **South Carolina.**—The settlements in what is now South Carolina were known under the Clarendon grant as the Carteret Colony. The emigrants established themselves first on the Ashley River (1670), whence they removed after a few years to a better situation at the junction of the Ashley and Cooper, and so founded the city of Charleston. Their original village, called Old Charleston, has entirely disappeared. Slaves were introduced from Barbadoes in 1671, and South Carolina was from the beginning essentially a colony of planters employing negro slaves.

7. Emigrants came at an early period from New York, Holland, Scotland, and the North of Ireland (Presbyterians). In 1686 and 1687 a large number of Huguenots (French Calvinists) arrived, but the other settlers looked upon them with jealousy, and for more than ten years refused them the privileges of citizenship.

8. Like their brethren in North Carolina, the people of the southern colony were in frequent revolt against the proprietors. In 1690 they banished Governor Colleton. They then submitted for a while to Governor Sothel, one of the proprietors, who had just been expelled from North Carolina, but after two years he was impeached. The next governor, Ludwell, was likewise driven out.

---

Was the plan successful? 5. What change was made in 1729? 6. When and where was South Carolina settled? What is said of slavery? 7. Describe the early settlers. 8. What troubles arose?



The rule of the proprietors was finally overthrown by a popular movement in 1719, ten years before their rights were extinguished by purchase. It was after this purchase that the settlements under the Clarendon grant became known as North Carolina and South Carolina.

**9. Georgia.**—It was seventy years after the grant to Clarendon and his associates before any attempt was made to settle that part of the province of Carolina now included in the States of Georgia and Alabama. The rights of the proprietors by that time had been extinguished, and North and South Carolina had been erected into separate provinces.

**10.** The settlement of Georgia was due at last to the efforts of General Oglethorpe, a distinguished English officer and a member of the House of Commons, who, having taken a great interest in the reform of prisons, and especially in improving the condition of those who were confined for debt, formed the design of establishing a community in America where discharged prisoners and other unfortunate persons might begin a new life. It was also his intention to interpose a military barrier between the Spaniards of Florida and the weak colonies of South Carolina.

**11.** In furtherance of the scheme George II. granted a charter (1732) covering all that part of the old province of Carolina south of the Savannah River. Subscriptions were taken all over the kingdom to defray the expense. Trustees were appointed to govern the colony; and in November, 1732, Gen. Oglethorpe sailed with 135 persons, soon followed by 150 more sent out by the trustees, 40 Jews equipped by the efforts of some of their brethren,

---

What happened in 1719? 9. When were settlements in Georgia attempted? 10. What did Oglethorpe desire to establish? 11. Who granted the territory? How were funds obtained?



and 78 German Protestants. Savannah was founded in May, 1733. A party of Moravians came over the next year, and some Scotch Highlanders settled on the Altamaha. A free exercise of religion was guaranteed to all "except papists." The name Georgia was given to the colony in honor of the king.

12. The English colonists were not well chosen for life in the wilderness, and the laws established by the trustees were unwise. Industry was not properly encouraged, and the settlers were greatly burdened by the obligation to perform military service. As the Spaniards in Florida threatened to attack the plantations, Gen. Oglethorpe brought over 600 soldiers from England, and also added to his forces a large body of friendly Indians.

13. In 1740, fearing an invasion by the Spaniards, he resolved to strike them first, and consequently marched against St. Augustine with 2,000 men. The want of cannon and the approach of the sickly season obliged him to abandon the siege and return to Savannah. Two years later the Spaniards retaliated by an expedition into Georgia, but after many disasters they were driven off.

14. Oglethorpe returned to England in 1743, and the colony was ruled after that by a governor and council for nearly ten years. It then became a royal province. Like the other southern colonies, it depended chiefly upon the labor of negro slaves. Alabama was not separated from Georgia till after the Revolution.

---

Describe the first colonists. When was Savannah founded? Who came over in 1734? Who were guaranteed a free exercise of religion? 12. Did the colony prosper? What is said of the Spaniards? 13. What occurred in 1740? The result? Describe the movements of the Spaniards. 14. What became of Oglethorpe? How was the colony ruled afterward? What change was made in the government? By whom was the labor performed? When was Alabama separated from Georgia?



## CHAPTER XIII.

## THE QUAKERS—WILLIAM PENN—SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.

1. **Quakers in America.**—Members of the sect of Quakers, or Society of Friends, appeared in Boston as early as 1656, and soon showed themselves in other colonies. They met everywhere the severest treatment, and the laws of Massachusetts provided that they should be whipped at the cart's tail from town to town, branded with the letter R (rogue), and hanged if they still returned; but in spite of persecution they continued to come, and in 1673 George Fox, the founder of the denomination, visited this country and preached in many of the settlements.

2. Soon afterwards the western half of New Jersey was sold by Lord Berkeley to the Quakers, and they found security by settling a colony of their own (1675). Later they bought East Jersey also. But in the meantime William Penn, one of the most distinguished converts to the sect, a man of wealth and family, and son of a famous English admiral, obtained from King Charles II., in payment of an old debt due from the crown to the Penn family, a charter for a colony west of the Delaware, to which was given the name of Pennsylvania (1681).

3. Penn wished to call it Sylvania, or "land of forests," but against his protests the king insisted that "Penn" should be added to this name. The present State of Delaware, then known as "the Territories," and belonging to New York, was added to his domain in 1682. The charter was copied from that of Maryland. Lands were sold to

---

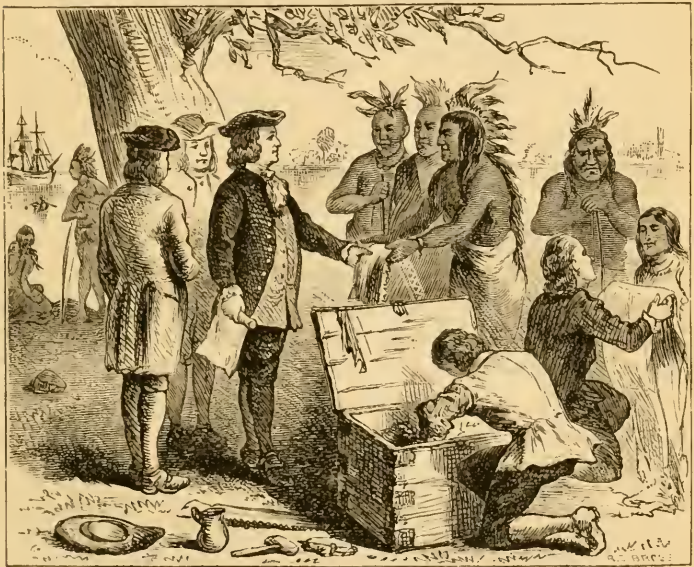
1. When did the Quakers arrive in Boston? How were they received? The effect? 2. What territory was bought by them? What grant was made in 1681? 3. Why was the colony named Pennsylvania?





settlers at about ten cents an acre, subject to an annual rent of about a quarter of a cent an acre.

**4. Settlement of Pennsylvania.**—The first party of emigrants sailed in 1681. Penn followed them in 1682; in the course of the first year no fewer than twenty-three ship-loads arrived, and in two years the population amounted to 7,000, including the settlers who were already on the ground when the new colony was organized. A few weeks after his arrival Penn held a conference



THE PENN TREATY.

with a large assembly of the Indians, under an elm-tree at Shackamaxon, in what is now Kensington, Philadelphia, and formed with them a treaty of friendship. This

---

How was Penn's domain increased? What is said of the charter? How were lands sold? 4. When was the first settlement made? How did the population increase? Describe Penn's treaty with the Indians?



treaty was never broken, and the kindly intercourse between the Quakers and the savages was rarely disturbed.

5. The same year Penn founded the city of Philadelphia, whose name signifies "brotherly love," and summoned a legislative assembly, whose first session was held at Chester. Before his return to England (1684) he established a representative government and a code of laws. The first emigrants were mostly Quakers, including some from Germany and Holland, but toleration was promised to all Christians. This pledge does not appear to have been regarded as applying to Catholics, yet they were not molested; a number of Irish Catholics were among the early arrivals, and Mass was celebrated in Philadelphia in 1686.

6. Penn was involved in political troubles in England; his province was taken from him; and for two years (1692-94) Pennsylvania was ruled by the royal governor of New York. Then the rights of the proprietor were restored. He made a second visit to America, and at the demand of the people, who wished for greater political privileges, he granted a new charter. In 1779 the State of Pennsylvania bought all the rights of Penn's heirs for about \$500,000.

---

Did the savages keep this treaty? 5. What was done in the same year? When did Penn return to England? What did he summon before his return? What is said of the first emigrants? What is said of toleration? Were Catholics included? Were there any Catholics in Pennsylvania? When was Mass celebrated in Philadelphia? 6. Why was the Province taken from Penn? Were his rights restored? What is said of his second visit to America? What occurred in 1779?



## CHAPTER XIV.

THE COLONISTS AND THE KING—TROUBLES IN NEW YORK—THE “NEGRO PLOT”—SALEM WITCHCRAFT.

1. **The Colonies and the Crown.**—Charles II. in the latter part of his life wished to destroy the liberties of the American colonies and take their government into his own hands. He died (1685) before he could carry this scheme into effect, but his brother, James II., immediately undertook to execute the project, and required all the New England colonies to surrender their charters.

2. Sir Edmund Andros, who had previously been governor of New York, arrived in Boston at the end of 1686 with the title of Governor-General of New England. New York and the Jerseys were soon added to his jurisdiction. The first important act of his administration which provoked the resentment of the Puritans was the publication of the royal Declaration of Indulgence, which granted toleration to Quakers, Baptists, Episcopalians, and other Protestant sects, as well as to Catholics. Thus religious tyranny in New England received its death-blow from a Catholic king.

3. Andros, however, was a bad ruler. He issued the most tyrannical orders, interfered with private rights, imposed oppressive taxes, exceeded his authority in many ways, and made himself generally hated.

4. **The Charter Oak.**—All the New England colonies except Connecticut were forced to give up their charters at his command. As Connecticut refused, he marched to Hartford in November, 1687, with sixty soldiers, to seize the document by force. He entered the hall where the

---

1. What did Charles II. wish to accomplish? What course did James II. pursue? 2. Of what was Andros made governor? What was his first important act? 3. Give the character of Andros.



Assembly was in session in the evening. The charter was brought out and laid on the table, but when Andros was about to take it the lights were suddenly put out and the document disappeared. It had been carried away by the colonists and hidden in a hollow tree, and Andros never found it. The tree, known as the Charter Oak, was carefully preserved for nearly two hundred years. It was blown down in 1856.



HIDING THE CHARTER.

**5. Andros deposed.**—The people of New England were about to rebel against the bad government of Andros when news arrived (April, 1689) of the expulsion of James from the throne and the acces-

sion of William and Mary. The people of Boston immediately imprisoned Andros with about fifty of his partisans, and sent them to England for trial. The government never came to any decision in the case, but some years later Andros was made governor of Virginia.

**6.** The colonies now resumed their charters by their own authority, and for some time King William was too busy with troubles at home to pay much attention to them. He was by no means disposed, however, to concede any liberties to the Americans. To the bills of rights which the provincial assemblies hastened to enact, he returned decided and repeated negatives. He sent over some of the

4. Relate the story of the Charter Oak. 5. What was the result of Andros's bad government? What occurred in England? What became of Andros? 6. How were the colonies governed in William's reign?



same tyrannical governors who had been employed by James, and others who were no better.

7. Persecuting laws, relaxed in favor of Protestant sects, now became more severe against Catholics. The colonies were also made to suffer by despotic restrictions upon their trade, made for the benefit of English merchants. In 1692 King William caused the colonies of Massachusetts Bay and Plymouth, with the settlements in Maine and New Brunswick, to be consolidated under the old name of the Massachusetts Bay Colony, and greatly abridged their liberties. Sir William Phipps was appointed governor by the crown.

8. **New York.**—The Duke of York had allowed the people of New York in 1683 to meet in assembly, at the call of the governor—Thomas Dongan, a Catholic—and enact a code of fundamental laws known as the “Charter of Liberties,” which claimed for the people the right to rule and tax themselves, to vote, and to practise any form of the Christian religion without molestation. This was the first legislative assembly of New York. As soon as he became king, however, James began to exercise the same arbitrary authority in New York which he asserted in New England.

9. **Leisler's Rebellion.**—When James was dethroned, Jacob Leisler, a rich German citizen of New York and captain in the militia, put himself at the head of a fanatical party of the lower class of the people, and took possession of the fort and the public money “for the preservation of the Protestant religion” (June, 1689). The royal lieutenant-governor, Nicholson, who was the deputy of Andros, fled to England, and Leisler constituted himself a military ruler, leading an expedition against Albany to compel the

---

Were the colonists benefited by the expulsion of James? 7. How were Catholics treated? What change was made in the government of Massachusetts? 8. What privileges were conferred by Governor Dongan. 9. Give an account of Leisler's Rebellion,



northern settlements to recognize his authority, and taking part vigorously in the hostilities against the French and Indians.

10. The cause of this insurrection was in great part a bigoted hatred of Catholics. The most absurd stories were circulated about plots of the "papists" to cut the throats of the inhabitants, and the revolt began with the refusal of Leisler to pay his taxes, on the ground that the collector was a Catholic. There were three Jesuit priests in New York at this time, and for a little while they even had a Latin school in the city. This school was on what was known as King's Farm, near the present site of Trinity Church. Leisler's anti-Catholic outbreak occurred at the same time as the similar Protestant insurrection under Coode in Maryland.

11. King William appointed Colonel Henry Sloughter governor of New York, and on his arrival, in March, 1691, Leisler and his son-in-law and secretary, Milbourne, were arrested, tried for high treason, and hanged. His death exasperated party spirit, and the feud between the enemies and friends of Leisler continued to disturb the politics of New York for many years.

12. **Religious Affairs.**—The accession of William established in the colonies the policy of complete toleration for all Protestant sects and exclusion of Catholics. The New York Assembly of 1691 repealed the Charter of Liberties, and enacted a Bill of Rights which excluded Catholics from the privileges it conferred upon others. An act of 1700, passed by the exertions of the governor, Lord Bellamont, declared that every priest found in the province should be liable to perpetual imprisonment. If he broke jail and

---

10. What was the cause of this rebellion? When did a similar outbreak occur? 11. What did Governor Sloughter do? 12. What kind of toleration was established by William? What was done in 1691?



were retaken he should suffer death. The penalty for harboring a priest was a fine of £200 and three days in the pillory. In 1701 Catholics were declared incapable of voting or holding office.

13. The anti-Catholic feeling reached its height in 1741, when the city of New York was thrown into a panic by rumors of a conspiracy of the negroes to burn the houses and massacre the inhabitants. A full pardon and a large reward in money being offered to all who would confess, the terrified slaves began to tell the most extraordinary and horrible stories, and the excitement was soon increased by a foolish letter from Governor Oglethorpe, of Georgia, declaring that Jesuits in the interest of the Spaniards were hidden in all the towns.

14. The cry of a "popish plot" was now raised, and a schoolmaster named John Ury was arrested on suspicion of being a priest. Denounced by one of the purchased witnesses, a low woman of infamous character, as an accomplice in the imaginary conspiracy, he was hanged, August 29, 1741, after a mock trial. It is not certainly known whether he was a priest or not. Eighteen negroes were hanged, eleven were burned at the stake, and fifty were transported to the West Indies.

15. **Salem Witchcraft.**—A delusion of another kind was raging in Massachusetts about the time of Leisler's insurrection in New York. The Puritans of New England believed in witches from the first, and made witchcraft punishable with death. Six or eight persons supposed to be witches were executed between 1648 and 1655. Trials and condemnations took place from time to time at Boston, Charlestown, and Hartford. In 1688 the fear of witches

---

Describe the act of 1700. What privileges were the Catholics deprived of? 13. What took place in 1741? 14. Give an account of John Ury. 15. Give an account of the Salem witchcraft delusion.



became a popular excitement and led to the greatest excesses.

16. The panic began in the family of John Goodwin, a citizen of Boston, whose children pretended to have been bewitched by an old Irishwoman. The case was investigated by the Rev. Cotton Mather and other ministers; the old woman was found to be a Roman Catholic who spoke Irish and could not say the Lord's prayer except in Latin, and she was adjudged a witch and hanged. Cotton Mather preached against witchcraft, and, like his father, Increase Mather, president of Harvard College, wrote books on the subject which greatly increased the delusion.

17. In 1692 the disorder appeared at Salem, where the daughter and niece of the Rev. Mr. Parris accused two friendless old women, and a squaw named Tituba, of bewitching them. All three were sent to prison. On the word of children and the malicious accusations of enemies a number of women and a few men were thrown into jail; a town committee was formed to search for witches, and a special court was organized at Salem for the trial of the accused.

18. Witnesses swore that they were tormented by the spectres of the supposed witches and wizards, and were thrown into spasms by a mere glance from their evil eye. Soon, under the impulse of fear or frenzy and the frantic denunciations of Mather from the pulpit, some of the accused tried to save their lives by confessing that they had ridden through the air on broom-sticks, and had meetings with the devil, and they gave the names of some of their neighbors whom they pretended to have seen at these gatherings.

---

16. Give the origin of the panic. What ministers took an active part against witchcraft? 17. What occurred at Salem? 18. What did persons testify to? What confessions were made?





19. In one year twenty persons had been executed, eight were under sentence of death, one hundred and fifty were in prison, and many of the suspected had fled the country. A reaction now set in. The prisoners were released, and some of the judges and ministers acknowledged that they had been deluded.

---

19. How many persons suffered by the delusion? How did the excitement end? What did the judges and ministers acknowledge.

# PART SECOND.

---

## COLONIAL WARS.

---

### CHAPTER XV.

#### FRENCH AND ENGLISH RIVALRIES—ENTERPRISES OF THE FRENCH— KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

1. **French Settlements.**—We have seen that the French from Canada penetrated into what is now the State of New York some years before the Dutch established themselves on Manhattan Island, and that Jesuit missionaries planted villages of Christian Indians along the shores of the great lakes and the valley of the Mississippi. The English settlers during this period made no attempt to explore the interior, and supposed the continent to be quite narrow.

2. It was about the time of the settlement of Massachusetts Bay that the Jesuit Fathers, who had already been laboring for many years among the Algonquins and Hurons of Canada and New York, began to push their explorations westward with a new zeal and enterprise, accompanying, and often leading, the Canadian fur-traders on their long journeys, and establishing kindly intercourse with many of the tribes.

3. "It is certain," says Father Charlevoix, the historian of New France, "that a peculiar unction attached to this

---

1. Give a brief statement of the progress of the Jesuit missionaries. Describe the progress of the English settlers. 2. What were the Jesuit Fathers doing about the time of the settlement of Massachusetts Bay?



savage mission, giving it a preference over many others far more brilliant and more fruitful. The Lord, who never allows himself to be outdone, communicates himself without measure to those who sacrifice themselves without reserve; who, dead to all, detached entirely from themselves and the world, possess their souls in unalterable peace, perfectly established in that child-like spirituality which Jesus Christ has recommended to his disciples as that which ought to be the most marked trait of their character. Such is the portrait drawn of the missionaries of New France by those who knew them best. I myself knew some of them in my youth, and I found them such as I have painted them, bending under the labor of a long apostleship, with bodies exhausted by fatigue and broken by age, but still preserving all the vigor of the apostolic spirit."

4. Jogues, Daniel, Lalemant, Brébeuf, Garnier, Chabanel, and others (including some Recollects) were martyred. Allouez made known the copper-mines of Lake Superior. Dablon and Marquette founded Sault Ste. Marie, the first white settlement in the Northwestern States. Marquette, accompanied by the trader Joliet, first reached the upper waters of the Mississippi, the priest seeking a new field for missionary enterprise, and the fur-trader being commanded by the governor of Canada to look for a route to the South Sea. The French trader and adventurer, La Salle, under orders of the Canadian governor, Frontenac, explored the Mississippi to its mouth, and took possession of the country in the name of the king of France. It was then (1682) that this region received the name of Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV.

5. **English Jealousy.**—The English settlements thus be-

---

3. What does Father Charlevoix say of the Canadian mission? 4. Name the Jesuits who suffered martyrdom. Name the important places discovered by the missionaries. What is said of La Salle?



came enclosed by a line of French colonies and outposts, extending from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia up the valley of the St. Lawrence, through the region of the great lakes, and down the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. It seemed doubtful at that time whether the whole continent was not destined to become French rather than English, and the strength of the French was greatly increased by the fact that through the influence of the missionaries and their own prudent policy they had made many of the Indian tribes their fast friends and allies.

6. The English settlers looked upon their French neighbors with jealousy and alarm. In New York especially, where the French priests had established so many villages of Indian converts, the bad feeling was very strong, and the English governor, Dongan, although a Catholic himself, tried to detach the savages from their missionaries (promising to send them English Jesuits instead); he furnished arms to the warlike Iroquois, and encouraged them to attack the French, with whom they were never long at peace. In the course of the hostilities thus begun the missions were broken up, many of the converts removing into Canada, and the French settlers suffered severely.

7. **King William's War.**—These Indian troubles had lasted several years when King James II. was dethroned (1688), and as the French king espoused his cause war broke out between France and England. The colonies were at once involved in the quarrel, and fighting between them lasted for seven and a half years. This is known as King William's War.

8. Both the French and English colonies made use of Indian allies, and the warfare was marked by the most bar-

---

5. By what were the English settlements surrounded? What nation seemed destined to gain the mastery in America? 6. What did Governor Dongan attempt? 7. What was the cause of King William's War?



barous excesses. French traders incited the Indians of Maine and New Hampshire to attack the English towns. Dover was burned (June, 1689), and fifty persons were killed or carried off. Casco was saved by the arrival of Church with two hundred and fifty men from Massachusetts. All the settlements further east were ravaged and broken up.

9. Count Frontenac despatched three war parties of French and Indians from Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec. The first, after a three weeks' march on snowshoes, fell upon Schenectady in the dead of night (February 8, 1690), massacred sixty persons, and carried off twenty-seven prisoners. The second surprised Salmon Falls, New Hampshire, killed most of the men, and made fifty-four prisoners; and then, in conjunction with the third party, captured Casco.

10. The English Government took no pains to protect the colonists, and they were left to conduct the war in their own way. Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New York united in fitting out an expedition against Montreal, and placed it under command of Fitz-John Winthrop, son of the governor of Connecticut. The attack, led by Schuyler with a party of Mohawks, was repulsed by Frontenac.

11. Meanwhile Massachusetts had sent a fleet commanded by Sir William Phipps to ravage the coasts of Acadia. After plundering Port Royal and other French settlements, Phipps, with additional vessels and about two thousand men, sailed up the St. Lawrence to surprise Quebec. But Frontenac, having beaten off the attempt upon Montreal, reached Quebec before him, and the enterprise failed.

12. **Treatment of Prisoners.**—Col. Church was more successful in a campaign against the Indians of Maine, where

---

8. What followed the use of Indian allies? What settlements were attacked? 9. What war parties were planned by Frontenac? 10. Did England send assistance? 11. Describe the colonial expeditions.



he put some of his prisoners to death for the sake of example, not even sparing women and children. The Indians retaliated, but as a rule they carried their prisoners to Canada and sold them to the French as servants. The women and children suffered horribly on the long march, often made in the dead of winter, though they were kindly treated when they reached Canada.

**13.** All the settlements were in constant dread of an Indian attack; some of them were wholly abandoned. The houses were put in a state of defence. The men took their muskets with them when they went to work in the fields, and the women learned to load and fire.

**14. Story of Mrs. Dustin.**—When the Indians attacked Haverhill, near Boston, in the winter of 1697, they took prisoner Mrs. Hannah Dustin, with her baby a week old, and started for Canada. As the child proved troublesome they dashed out its brains against a tree. Mrs. Dustin, with her nurse and a white boy, was assigned to an Indian family consisting of two men, three women, and seven children. One night during the journey she roused the nurse and boy while the Indians were asleep, and with their assistance killed all the savages, except the two youngest, with their own hatchets, took their scalps as a proof of her exploit, and made her way back to Haverhill, a journey of more than a hundred miles through the forest.

**15.** A treaty of peace between France and England in 1697 put an end to the war in the colonies. Both parties had suffered severely, and neither had gained any real advantage.

---

12. What treatment did prisoners receive? 13. How did the feeling of insecurity show itself? 14. When was Haverhill attacked? Relate the story of Mrs. Dustin. 15. When was peace made?



## CHAPTER XVI.

## .QUEEN ANNE'S WAR—INDIANS IN THE CAROLINAS—FATHER RASLES.

1. **Queen Anne's War.**—After the death of James II., his son, known as the Pretender, was acknowledged by the French court as king of England. This, with other causes, led to a renewal of the war between the French and English (1702), and the colonists were again involved. As Spain was now in alliance with France, the English settlers found themselves opposed not only by the French in the north and west but by the Spaniards of Florida in the south. William was succeeded by Queen Anne just before the beginning of hostilities, and the war is consequently known as Queen Anne's War.

2. During the five years of peace the French had continued to make settlements in the west. They had founded Mobile, Detroit, and numerous villages on the Mississippi, and the idea of a great French-American empire inflamed their ambition. In New York they had obliged the powerful Five Nations to make peace with them. In the east, having recovered all the places taken from them by the English in the last war, they had established new missions and increased their influence over the Indians.

3. The first operations of Queen Anne's War were directed against the Spaniards of Florida. St. Augustine was captured by an expedition from South Carolina under Governor James Moore (September, 1702), but was hastily abandoned on the approach of two Spanish men-of-war from Havana. Three years later Moore, at the head of fifty whites and one thousand pagan Indians, fell upon the Christian Indian

---

1. What led to Queen Anne's war? How did it affect the English colonies? 2. What progress was made by the French during the term of peace? 3. Give the events of the war on the southern border.



settlements of Middle Florida, where the Appalachees, under the instruction of Spanish missionaries, had been partly civilized and become herdsmen and farmers. The villages were burned, the churches pillaged and destroyed, the missions entirely broken up, and the converts, to the number of two thousand, were forcibly removed to Georgia.

**4. The Deerfield Massacre.**—The alliance between the French and the Five Nations prevented the war from extending to New York, but in New England there was severe suffering. Deerfield, Massachusetts, which was then a frontier village surrounded by a palisade, was surprised in the night by a force of Canadians and savages (March, 1704). The snow-drifts were so high that the palisade was easily crossed; the village was burned; forty-seven of the inhabitants were killed, and more than one hundred were carried into captivity.

**5.** Haverhill, hardly recovered from the massacre of 1697, was pillaged and burned a second time, forty or fifty of the colonists being killed. The whole border was filled with alarm. The colonial authorities offered a price for Indian prisoners or scalps, and the English settlers learned to fight in the savage fashion.

**6.** Getting little help from England, the colonists were unable to carry out any important expeditions for several years. They repulsed, however, a French and Spanish attack upon Charleston, S. C. (1706), capturing a French frigate and a number of men; and they ravaged the settlements of Acadia, failing, however, to take the fort at Port Royal.

**7. Port Royal taken.**—Another attack upon Port Royal, supported by ships of war, resulted in the surrender of the

---

What happened to the missionary settlements? 4. Why did New York escape the horrors of war? Describe the Deerfield massacre. 5. What were the authorities compelled to do? 6. What occurred in 1706?





garrison (1710) and the plunder of the unfortunate Acadians, who were threatened with expulsion from their homes "unless they would turn Protestants." The name of Port Royal was changed after this to Annapolis, in honor of the queen.

**8. Expedition against Canada.**—At last, in 1711, a fleet of fifteen ships of war and forty transports, with five veteran regiments of Marlborough's army, arrived at Boston to co-operate with the colonists in an attempt to conquer Canada. New York, Massachusetts, and Pennsylvania raised large sums of money, besides a strong body of troops, and the fleet, carrying seven thousand soldiers, sailed for Quebec under the command of Admiral Sir Howenden Walker and the British General Hill, while fifteen hundred colonial soldiers and eight hundred warriors of the Five Nations, who had been persuaded to take arms against the French, assembled at Albany for an attack upon Montreal.

**9.** A part of the fleet was wrecked in the St. Lawrence and 1,000 men perished. Disheartened by this disaster, Admiral Walker abandoned the expedition and sailed at once for England. The advance of the land forces was thereupon cut short, all the more readily because New York was then excited by rumors of a conspiracy of the slaves and the prospect of a war with the Five Nations.

**10. End of the War.**—England had been more fortunate in the European campaigns, however, than in America, and a treaty of peace was signed at Utrecht in 1713. By this instrument the English acquired Newfoundland and Acadia, and the latter province was thenceforth known by the name of Nova Scotia. The eastern Indians were also induced to

---

7. What occurred at Port Royal? 8. What was attempted in 1711? Describe the preparations against Quebec and Montreal. 9. The result? 10. When did the war end? What territory was gained by England?



make peace. Of the many settlements on the western half of the coast of Maine only three now remained, and about one-third of the inhabitants had been killed.

**11. Other Indian Troubles.**—The settlers in North Carolina had meanwhile been involved in hostilities caused by their encroachments upon the Indian lands. For two years (1711–1713) they carried on a devastating war with the Tuscaroras, driving that tribe at last out of the country. The fugitives retired to Western New York, and were admitted into the confederacy of the Five Nations, often known after this as the Six Nations.

**12.** Soon afterwards South Carolina found herself at war with the Yamassees, Catawbas, Cherokees, and Creeks, who ravaged the outlying settlements and obliged the planters to seek refuge in Charleston (1715). The Yamassees were finally driven into Florida, and the other tribes, in the course of a year or two, made peace.

**13.** On the eastern frontier, in what is now the State of Maine, disputes arose with the French on the subject of boundaries, and with the Indians, who bitterly resented the occupation of their lands by the English settlers. Wrongs on one side led to retaliation on the other, and the savages and the colonists were soon at war.

**14.** A large proportion of the Abenakis of this region had long been Christians, and flourishing missions with churches and other buildings were maintained by French priests on the Penobscot and the Kennebec. The most famous of these missionaries was the Jesuit father Sebastian Rasles (*rahl*), who had been settled at Norridgewock, on the Kennebec, for nearly thirty years.

**15. Father Rasles.**—The Indians were devoted to this

---

What is said of the Maine settlements? 11. Why did the southern Indians become hostile? 12. What occurred in South Carolina? 13. On the eastern frontier? 14. What is said of the Abenakis?



holy man, and the attempts of the Massachusetts people to make them dismiss him and take a preacher in his place were repulsed with indignation. He became an object of intense hatred to the English settlers, who accused him of exciting the hostility of the Indians and keeping alive French influence in the disputed territory.

16. In 1705 a party of New-Englanders had burned the church and village at Norridgewock, but they were rebuilt. In 1722 an expedition was secretly sent out from Boston by Governor Shute for the purpose of seizing Father Rasles. Norridgewock was attacked and plundered, and all the papers and other property of the good priest were carried off, including the manuscript of his celebrated Abenaki dictionary, which is still preserved at Harvard College. Father Rasles made his escape to the woods, where he nearly perished in the snow.

17. The Indians avenged this outrage by still fiercer hostilities. In August, 1724, another expedition of New-Englanders, aided by Mohawk warriors, surprised Norridgewock and poured a volley of musketry into the village. Father Rasles, knowing that he was the principal object of the attack, went forth to meet the assailants, hoping by the sacrifice of his own life to secure the escape of his converts. He was shot down at the foot of the mission cross, and the victors, after hacking his body to pieces, rifled the altar, profaned the Host and the sacred vessels, and burned the church. Thirty of the Indians were killed and the rest took flight.

18. The Abenakis returned after the English had disappeared, and buried the martyr among the ruins of the church, on the spot where the altar had been. The village

15. Who was Father Rasles? How was he regarded by the Indians? By the English? 16. What attempts upon his life were made by them? 17. How were these outrages avenged? Describe his death.



was abandoned, and many of the Catholic Indians removed to Canada. The English, far from being relieved by the



MURDER OF FATHER RASLES.

missionary's death, were exposed to greater cruelties than ever now that his influence no longer restrained the excesses of the savages.



## CHAPTER XVII.

THE FRENCH IN THE MISSISSIPPI VALLEY—WAR WITH THE SPANIARDS  
—KING GEORGE'S WAR—CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG.

**1. Progress of the Colonies.**—Many years of peace followed, during which the English colonies increased rapidly

18. By whom was he buried? What became of the Christian Indians? How did his death affect the English? 1. What progress was made by the English during the peace following Queen Anne's war?



in population, and in spite of quarrels and jealousies among themselves and the selfish and oppressive policy of the home government, which only valued them as a source of revenue to English merchants and courtiers, they advanced in material prosperity. The democratic spirit was fostered by the injustice and neglect of the crown, and there were constant disputes between the settlers and the royal governors.

2. Two years after the close of Queen Anne's War the population of the English colonies was about 450,000, and that of Canada was not more than 25,000. Yet the French still pursued their scheme of building up a great power in the West. They controlled the valuable fur-trade of the whole Mississippi valley, and their adventurous traders, traversing the wilderness from Quebec to Lake Superior, and following the mighty river to the Gulf of Mexico, made that long route of more than 2,000 miles a channel of commerce for Canada.

3. At the mouth of the St. Lawrence the French, on their expulsion from Acadia, crossed to the island of Cape Breton and built the strong fortress of Louisburg, which was so formidable as to be called the Gibraltar of America. At Niagara they had a fort commanding the communication between Lakes Ontario and Erie; at Detroit, since 1701, they had controlled the channel to the great upper lakes. Natchez was founded in 1716. Two years later Governor Bienville began the building of New Orleans, to which the capital of Louisiana was soon removed from Mobile.

4. The Mississippi Company was organized in France for the purpose of colonizing the French possessions in

---

What tended to hinder their progress? How was a democratic spirit fostered? 2. What was the population of the colonies? What did the French still pursue? 3. What places were occupied by them?



America (1717). John Law, a Scotch financier who had settled in Paris, was the originator of the scheme, and under his management an extraordinary fever of speculation broke out; the shares of the company rose to forty times their original price; fortunes were made and lost in a day; and the issue of enormous sums of paper money led to boundless extravagance. Some few colonists were sent to Louisiana, but the excitement was little better than gambling; it did no real good to America, and it was followed by a crash which involved the whole French nation in distress. Law became a fugitive and died in great poverty.

5. Meanwhile the French missionaries continued their conquests in the wilderness of the Mississippi, and the whole region was formally divided among them, the Jesuits taking the upper part and the Capuchins the lower.

6. **Indian Wars.**—In 1729 the Natchez Indians suddenly fell upon the French settlers at Natchez, massacred all the men except two, and made the women prisoners. Two hundred persons perished in this catastrophe, including the Jesuit Fathers Du Poisson and Souel. The French, in retaliation, almost entirely destroyed the Natchez nation, and afterwards, aided by the Choctaws, marched against the Chickasaws of Alabama, who had also become hostile.

7. This enterprise was not successful. The Chickasaws received help from the English, and after two hard campaigns, in the second of which the Jesuit Father Senat was burned at the stake, both sides were glad to make peace.

8. **Spanish Wars.**—The Canadians had advanced into New York, and, to the great indignation of the English, had occupied Crown Point on Lake Champlain (1731). For

---

4. Give the history of the Mississippi Company. What was the result?  
5. What were the missionaries doing meanwhile? 6. Give an account of the trouble with the Natchez Indians. 7. With the Chickasaws.



a while, however, the attention of the English settlers was diverted from these rivalries by the outbreak of hostilities with Spain (1740). A British fleet was sent to attack the Spaniards in the West Indies, and the colonists were required to furnish men and money for the expedition, besides assailing the Spaniards in Florida. The operations of these campaigns were not important, but they cost the colonists a great many lives.

9. When the Quakers of Pennsylvania were asked to do their share in the enterprise, they declared that conscience would not allow them to bear arms or vote money for a war; but they appropriated £4,000 "for the king's use," and preferred not to know what his majesty meant to do with it.

10. **King George's War.**—In 1744 France declared war against England, and immediately began hostilities against the settlements and fishing fleets on the coast of Nova Scotia. As this happened in the reign of George II., the campaign which followed is known as King George's War.

11. The colonists of New England resolved not to wait for the uncertain aid of the home government, but to carry on the war by their own means. Massachusetts proposed an attack upon the fortress of Louisburg, and furnished most of the men and ships needed for the expedition. Connecticut, New Hampshire, New York, and New Jersey contributed; the Quakers of Pennsylvania raised money to buy provisions; the animosity of the Puritans against French Catholics was excited; and a Methodist chaplain who accompanied the troops was provided with a hatchet to hew down the images in the "popish" chapels.

12. **Capture of Louisburg.**—Aided by four British ships

---

8. What post in New York was occupied by the French? Describe the English movement against the Spaniards. 9. How did the Quakers act? 10. Where did hostilities begin in King George's War? 11. What did the colonists resolve to do? What animosity was excited?



from the West Indies, the colonists, 3,250 strong, and commanded by William Pepperell, of Maine, compelled Louisburg to surrender after a siege of six weeks (June 17, 1745). They now meditated the conquest of Canada, and Massachusetts proposed to the British government to raise a colonial army. But the ministry took alarm at "the independence it might create in those provinces," if they were allowed to muster so strong a force, and decided that the colonists should only be allowed to menace Montreal, while a British fleet and army ascended the St. Lawrence to attack Quebec.

13. The colonies instantly raised about 8,000 men, at a cost of over \$1,000,000, and the army began its march. But the British expedition did not arrive. On the contrary, a French fleet of 40 ships sailed to recover Louisburg, while the Canadians and Indians harassed the frontier and menaced Nova Scotia. The French squadron, however, was shattered by a storm, a terrible fever broke out on board, the admiral died, the vice-admiral committed suicide, and the remnant of the expedition, dispersed by a second storm, returned to France.

14. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1648) put an end to the war, restoring Louisburg to the French and giving them also the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, off the coast of Newfoundland. The colonies received from Parliament an indemnity for their expenses during the war.

---

12. Give an account of the capture of Louisburg? What did the colonists propose to do? What course did the ministry decide upon?  
 13. What preparations were made by the colonists? What was the result? Describe the movements of the French. Give an account of the fleet. 14. What treaty put an end to King George's war? State the terms of the treaty. The date. What is said of the colonial expenses.





## CHAPTER XVIII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR — GEORGE WASHINGTON — BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

1. **Rivalries with the French.**—The previous hostilities between the French and English colonies had originated in the quarrels of the mother-countries; but very soon after the close of King George's War a new and much more severe struggle began with the settlers themselves, and lasted until the supremacy of the English immigrants on this continent was finally established.

2. Up to the middle of the last century the English had not attempted to settle or explore the regions lying beyond the Blue Ridge and Alleghany Mountains, but in 1749 the crown granted to an association of London merchants and Virginia land speculators, called the Ohio Company, a tract of 500,000 acres on the east bank of the Ohio, in what is now West Virginia and Pennsylvania, with exclusive privileges of traffic with the Indians. Agents were at once sent to examine the country and make treaties with the savages, and they penetrated almost to the present site of Cincinnati.

3. The French regarded this as an encroachment upon their territory. Besides inciting the Indians to resist the English claims, they strengthened the fort at Niagara, built another at Presque Isle (*presk-eel*), now Erie, established posts at Le Bœuf (*luh buff*) and Venango (now Waterford and Franklin, in the oil region of Northwestern Pennsylvania), seized English traders and confiscated their goods.

4. Orders were hereupon sent from England to the

---

1. Where did the last four wars originate? What caused the next struggle? 2. What had been the limits of the English settlements? What is said of the Ohio Co.? 3. What did the French do?



governors of Virginia and Pennsylvania to expel the French by force whenever they were found within the limits of those provinces. Virginia was then under the authority of the lieutenant-governor, Robert Dinwiddie, a man of ability and enterprise. He at once obtained leave of the Indians to build a fort at the spot where the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers unite to form the Ohio, and in the meantime he sent a messenger to the nearest French post to demand the release of the captured traders and indemnity for their losses, and at the same time to inquire into the purposes and strength of the French occupation. The agent selected for this mission was a young surveyor named George Washington (1753).

**5. Washington.**—Washington was at this time not quite twenty-two years old. He was born in Westmoreland County, Virginia, February 22, 1732. His family was honorable and wealthy, and his ancestors for three generations had lived in Virginia, where Sir John Washington, the great-grandfather of George, was an officer in some of the Indian campaigns. George inherited from his father, who died when the boy was twelve years old, an estate on the Rappahannock, near Fredericksburg, and he lived there with his mother.

**6.** It is related that as a lad he wished to enter the British navy; a warrant as midshipman was obtained for him, and his clothes were packed to go on board ship, when the entreaties of his mother induced him to remain at home. But for this change the history of America might have been very different.

**7.** He had not many opportunities for education, but he was diligent and studious, and became a fair scholar. He

---

4. What orders were sent from England? Who was acting governor of Virginia? What course did he pursue? 5. Give an account of Washington's family. 6. Of his wish to enter the British navy.



was always distinguished for a love of truth and justice, high sense of honor, good judgment, and dignified manners. He was skilled in athletic exercises, strong, enduring, and a bold and graceful horseman.

8. Having a thorough knowledge of surveying, he was employed to make a survey of an immense and unexplored domain belonging to Lord Fairfax in the Shenandoah valley—a difficult and dangerous work, in which he passed three years. At the age of nineteen he received an important command in the militia, with the rank of major.

9. His elder brother, Lawrence Washington, was one of the members of the Ohio Company, and George was early interested in the schemes of that association. For many reasons he was a most fit person to carry Gov. Dinwiddie's message to the French, and when the appointment was offered to him, after it had been refused by several others, he promptly accepted.

10. **Washington's Mission to the French.**—He set out at the end of October, 1753, with only a guide and two or three attendants, and after a hard and dangerous journey of more than five hundred miles, mostly through an unknown wilderness infested by hostile savages, he reached the French post at Le Bœuf. The French commander, St. Pierre, received him politely, and promised to transmit the governor's demands and remonstrances to Montreal, but the officers of the post made no secret of the intention of their government to occupy the country permanently.

11. The return to Virginia was made still more perilous by the increasing severity of the winter and the hostility of the Indians. A part of the journey was made by canoe. At Venango, finding that their lives were in danger from the

---

7. What is said of his education? Name traits in his character.  
8. What service did he perform for Lord Fairfax? 9. What appointment was offered to him? 10. Give an account of the journey.



savages, Washington and his guide took to the woods on foot, with their packs on their shoulders and their guns in their hands. A treacherous Indian led them off the track and attempted to kill them. They seized him, and the guide would have put him to death, but Washington saved him and let him go.

12. They found the Alleghany River half frozen, and the mid-channel filled with tossing cakes of ice. With no tools



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE ALLEGHANY.

but "one poor hatchet" they built a raft after a whole day's labor, and were nearly drowned in trying to cross. Washington was hurled into the deep and rapid stream, but succeeded in reaching an island, where he and his companion passed the night. Their

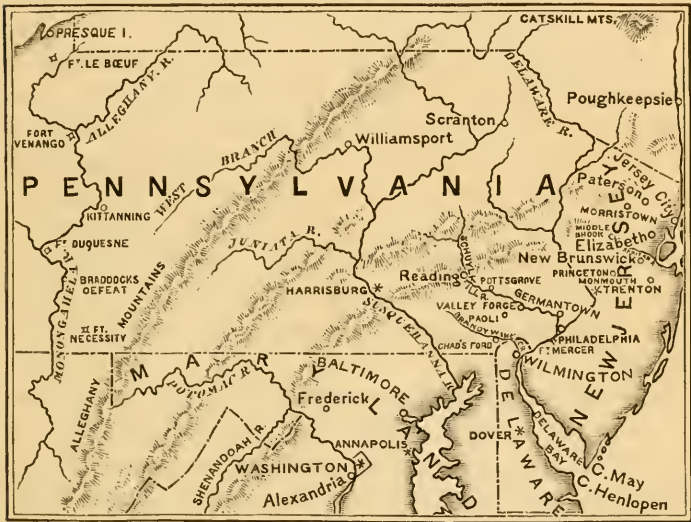
clothes froze to their bodies. By morning fortunately the whole river was frozen over, and they were able to continue the journey.

13. Washington's journal was published in London and regarded as a document of great importance. In Virginia his report made the purposes of the French so clear that there was a general preparation for war, and the Assembly, which had been on bad terms with Gov. Dinwiddie, suspended the quarrel and voted the supplies he asked for.

14. Beginning of the French and Indian War.—Wash-

11. What is said of the return to Virginia? 12. Describe the crossing of the Alleghany. 13. What is said of Washington's journal and report? Of the trouble between the assembly and governor,

ington recommended the establishment of a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, where Pittsburg now stands, and Dinwiddie sent a small body of men to build it, while preparations were made for a larger expedition, in which the other colonies were urged to take part. Of the regiment raised in Virginia Fry was appointed colonel and Washington lieutenant-colonel.



PENNSYLVANIA.

15. They marched from Alexandria together with some troops from New York and South Carolina. On the way they learned that the French had seized the unfinished fort, completed it for themselves, and called it Fort Du Quesne (*du kane*) after the governor of Canada. An advance party under Washington surprised a detachment of the French at

14. What did Washington recommend? What action was taken by Dinwiddie? Name two officers of the Virginia regiment. Locate the French posts. 15. What did the French succeed in doing?



a place called the Great Meadows, and defeated them, the commanding officer, Jumonville, being killed (May, 1754).

16. Col. Fry having died, the command devolved upon Washington. He built a stockade at the Great Meadows, which he called Fort Necessity, and here he was soon attacked by a greatly superior force. After a day's fighting he was compelled to give up the fort, retiring with all his arms and baggage to the Upper Potomac, where he built Fort Cumberland.

17. Thus began the war which was destined, after lasting eight years, to put a stop to the French schemes of aggrandizement in the New World. There had been no formal declaration of hostilities between France and England, but the British Government did not long hesitate to assist the colonists. The ministry advised them to unite for the general defence, and in June, 1754, delegates from New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland met at Albany for that purpose.

18. **An Attempt at Confederation.**—On the 4th of July the delegates adopted a scheme of confederation. It was not put in force, the colonial Assemblies all refusing to favor it because it gave too much power to the crown, while the royal government disapproved of it because it gave too much power to the colonies. Out of it, however, grew many years later the Federal Constitution. The plan was drawn up by Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania.

19. **Benjamin Franklin.**—This distinguished man, who had so great a part in the struggle for American indepen-

---

Give an account of the first bloodshed. 16. Where did Washington intrench himself? Describe the capture of Fort Necessity. 17. What did the English ministry advise? What followed? 18. What was adopted at Albany? What objections were made to the plan?



dence, was at this time forty-eight years old. He was the son of a soap and candle maker, and was born in Boston, Jan. 17, 1706. It is a curious fact that his family and Washington's came from the same part of Northamptonshire, England, having lived within a few miles of each other.

20. Without much schooling Franklin had contrived to give himself a good education, and, having been bound apprentice to his elder brother, James, who was the printer and editor of one of the earliest newspapers in Boston—the *New England Courant*—he used to write essays for the paper in a disguised hand, and drop them into the letter-box secretly. James Franklin published them without suspecting the authorship, and they attracted a great deal of attention.

21. James Franklin having been arrested on account of the political character of his journal (for there was no freedom of the press at that time), the *Courant* was published for some time by Benjamin. The brothers quarrelled, however, and Benjamin, at the age of seventeen, ran away from Boston, went first to New York, and thence made his way almost penniless to Philadelphia.

22. There he obtained employment in a printing office; he also worked for a year and a half at the printing trade in England; and after returning to Philadelphia he founded the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, and became a man of note in public affairs and a writer of ability, popularity, independence, and common sense. He established the celebrated "Poor Richard's Almanac," whose short proverbs and rules of frugality and prudence were copied all over America and Europe.

23. Applying himself to scientific studies, he made im-

---

19. Give a brief account of Franklin's early life. 20. Of his education and occupation. 21. Of the troubles that caused him to leave Boston. 22. Of his occupation in Pennsylvania. Of his success.



portant discoveries in electricity and invented the lightning-rod. The fact that lightning and electricity are the same, which had been suspected by other philosophers, was clearly proved by his famous experiment with a kite, by means of which he drew down electricity from a thunder-cloud.

24. He was a zealous advocate of the popular side in the political controversies of the time; he held numerous public offices, and at the outbreak of the French and Indian War was deputy postmaster-general for America.



## CHAPTER XIX.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR CONTINUED—BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT—EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS.

1. **Braddock's Expedition.**—Having resolved to form a considerable army in the colonies, the British Government sent out General Braddock as commander-in-chief, and furnished him with two regiments of regulars, while the provincial Assemblies voted to raise seven or eight thousand men and contribute large sums of money.

2. After a consultation with the colonial governors at Alexandria, Braddock formed a plan of campaign. The provincials were to operate against the French in the north and east, and he undertook to lead an expedition against Fort Du Quesne.

3. Braddock marched from Alexandria with his regulars and some Virginians, having in all about 2,200 men. Washington went with him as aide-de-camp, and his know-

---

23. What discovery was made by Franklin? 24. What political side did he support? What office did he hold? 1. What preparations were made? 2. What plan of campaign was decided upon?





ledge of the country and of the character and mode of fighting of the enemy would have been of the greatest service to the expedition, if Braddock had not held the provincials in too much contempt to listen to his advice.

4. The march was much delayed by the want of wagons and horses, which were not obtained until Franklin offered to collect them on his own responsibility among the farmers of Pennsylvania. It was nearly three months before Braddock, with his advance division of 1,300 men, reached a narrow road through the woods between two ravines, a few miles from Fort Du Quesne. Washington, who expected an Indian ambuscade in some such place, advised the general to throw forward the Virginia rangers to scour the woods in front and on the flanks, but Braddock believed that nothing could stand against disciplined British troops, and angrily refused.

5. The army entered the woods with drums beating and colors flying (July 9, 1755), when suddenly an invisible enemy opened a murderous fire. There were about two hundred French and six hundred Indians concealed among the trees and the high grass.

6. For a short time the British stood firm, firing at random wherever they saw the smoke of the rifles or heard the savage yells; but at last, after sixty of their officers had been killed or disabled, and more than half the men shot down, they fell into a panic. Braddock himself, who was a man of great bravery, was mortally wounded. The despised provincials, of whom Washington had taken the command, held their ground firmly, and enabled the defeated regulars to carry off the wounded and fall back to the

---

3. What is said of Braddock and Washington? 4. Give an account of Braddock's march. 5. Of the ambush. 6. Of the scene that followed. What happened to Braddock? What troops saved the regulars?



camp of the rear division, though with the loss of all their baggage and cannon.

7. “Throughout this disastrous day,” says Irving, “Washington distinguished himself by his courage and presence of mind. He was in every part of the field, a conspicuous mark for the murderous rifle. Two horses were shot under him; four bullets passed through his coat. His escape without a wound was almost miraculous.”

8. Braddock, shot through the lungs, lingered four days, and died on the 13th. The remnant of the army, destroying all its stores not needed for immediate use, retired to Philadelphia, and the attempt upon Fort Du Quesne was abandoned. This left the frontier exposed to Indian attacks, and a force was raised to defend it, and placed under Washington’s command.

9. **Operations in the North.**—In the meantime Gov. Shirley, of Massachusetts, who became commander-in-chief on the death of Braddock, marched from Albany with an expedition intended to reduce Fort Niagara, but accomplished nothing.

10. Gen. William Johnson, superintendent of the Indians of New York, was appointed to attack Crown Point. He defeated the French general Dieskau (*dee-es-ko*) in the battle of Lake George (Sept. 5, 1755), changing the name of the lake at this time from *St. Sacrament*, given it more than one hundred years before by Father Jogues, to that which it now bears in honor of the king. Dieskau was mortally wounded and taken prisoner. Johnson built Fort William Henry, at the head of the lake, but he could not reach Crown Point, and he even allowed the French to fortify Ticonderoga.

---

7. What does Irving say of Washington? 8. Describe the retreat. The consequences to the settlers on the frontier. 9. Give an account of Shirley’s expedition. 10. Of the expedition against Crown Point.



**11. Banishment of the Acadians.**—The expedition to the east was commanded by John Winslow of Massachusetts and Col. Monckton of the regulars, and was directed against the French on the Bay of Fundy. The military posts were easily overcome (June, 1755), and capitulated on condition that the inhabitants should not be disturbed. The people of the country, remnants and descendants of the Acadians of forty years back, and known as “French neutrals,” had always remained French in language and sympathies and Catholics in religion. The English were unwilling to bear the expense of establishing garrisons to keep them in order, and were afraid that if they ordered them to quit the country they would reinforce the French in Canada and Cape Breton. In consultation with two of the British naval commanders, the lieutenant-governor and chief-justice of the province thereupon devised a most cruel and villainous deed.

**12.** In spite of the solemn engagements of the capitulation, it was determined to transport the Acadians to the British provinces, and scatter them far and wide. “The Acadians,” says the historian Hildreth, “had preserved all the gay simplicity of ancient French rural manners. Never was there a people more attached to their homes, or who had more reasons for being so. They lived in rustic plenty, surrounded by herds of cattle and sheep, and drawing abundant crops from the rich levels, fine sediment deposited by the tides on the borders of the basins, and which their industry had diked in from the sea.”

**13.** The ruthless design against them was kept a profound secret. “Assembled under various false pretences

---

11. What expedition was fitted out in Massachusetts? On what terms did the French surrender? What did the English fear? 12. What plan was decided upon? What does Hildreth say of the Acadians?



in their parish churches, they were surrounded with troops, made prisoners, and hurried on board the ships assigned for their transportation. Wives separated from their husbands in the confusion of embarking, and children from their parents, were carried off to distant colonies, never



EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS.

again to see each other." Their lands and cattle were confiscated to the crown, their crops destroyed, the houses and barns burned with all their contents.

14. Every British colony received some of these destitute and heart-broken people, and most of them died in exile and despair. More than a thousand were carried to Massachusetts, where they were not even allowed to console

13. How were the inhabitants entrapped? What was done with them? Were family ties respected? What became of their lands and cattle? Their crops and houses? 14. Where were the Acadians landed?



themselves by the celebration of Mass. Four hundred who were sent to Georgia built rude boats, and tried to make their way northward along the coast to the French colonies; but few succeeded. The miserable story of the expulsion of the Acadians is the groundwork of Longfellow's poem of "Evangeline."



## CHAPTER XX.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR CONCLUDED—CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG—  
CONQUEST OF CANADA—MONTCALM AND WOLFE—CONSPIRACY OF  
PONTIAC.

1. **Campaign of 1756.**—In May, 1756, England formally declared war against France. General Abercrombie, with several regiments of regulars, was sent out to America, and the gallant and able Marquis of Montcalm became the French commander in place of Dieskau. The British plan was to send 10,000 men against Crown Point, 6,000 against Niagara, 3,000 against Fort Du Quesne, and 2,000 across Maine in the direction of Quebec.

2. Operations were delayed while they waited for the arrival of the Earl of Loudon, who had been appointed commander-in-chief, and meanwhile Montcalm, crossing Lake Ontario from Fort Frontenac (now Kingston, in Canada), demolished the English forts at Oswego, and carried off a large number of prisoners, guns, stores, and boats (August 14, 1756). This filled the colonies with alarm and put a stop to all the contemplated expeditions. Washington in the meantime had been actively employed in Virginia col-

What is said of those who were sent to Georgia? 1. When was war declared? Describe the British plan? 2. Why were operations delayed? Describe the capture of Oswego. The effect on the English?



lecting a force for the protection of the frontiers against the Indians, and reducing the raw and insubordinate levies to discipline.

**3. Campaign of 1757.**—Lord Loudon at last arrived, with extraordinary powers. He was not only to be commander-in-chief of the armies, but governor of Virginia, with precedence over the governors of all the other provinces, the purpose of the crown being to place the colonies under one supreme military rule. He quartered his soldiers on the citizens, and carried matters with so high a hand that he was involved in perpetual quarrels with the people he was expected to defend. The only offensive movement which he attempted during the summer of 1757 was an expedition against Louisburg. He sailed from New York with a large body of regulars, and was joined at Halifax by a British fleet, but, finding the French stronger than he had supposed, he returned to New York without striking a blow.

**4.** The activity of Montcalm contrasted strongly with the imbecility of Loudon. No sooner had the British troops been drawn aside for the futile attack upon Louisburg than the French commander collected eight thousand men, and overpowered the English garrison at Fort William Henry (August, 1757), allowing the troops to march out with the honors of war and retire to Fort Edward. On their retreat the disarmed soldiers were attacked by Montcalm's Indian allies, and many of them were massacred in spite of all the efforts of the French officers to save them. The fort was destroyed and was never rebuilt. This disaster created a panic in the colonies, and twenty thousand militia were called to arms, but Montcalm retired to Canada, and the campaign ended.

---

How was Washington occupied in 1756? 3. Who arrived in 1757? What is said of him? Name his only offensive movement. The result. 4. Describe the capture of Fort William Henry. What followed?



5. Thus, after four years' hostilities, better generalship still gave the French the advantage, although their colonies counted hardly 100,000 inhabitants, while the English had 1,500,000. Not only had the British commanders been incompetent, but their arrogant treatment of the provincials had been a cause of discord and disgust, and the arbitrary conduct of the home government towards the provinces had greatly increased the universal discontent. Military operations had also been obstructed by the refusal of the regulars to recognize rank in the provincial service.

6. **Change of Policy at Home.**—In the summer of 1757 a great change began in the aspect of affairs. The celebrated statesman William Pitt, afterwards created Earl of Chatham, was called to the ministry with functions which gave him control of the military operations of England and made him virtually prime minister. He recalled the Earl of Loudon, of whom Franklin said that he was “entirely made up of indecision,” gave the command to Abercrombie in his place, sent twelve thousand British troops to America, fitted out a powerful fleet under Admiral Boscawen, and made such spirited proposals to the colonists that they raised even more than the twenty thousand men he asked of them, and taxed themselves heavily to furnish supplies. At the beginning of 1758 Abercrombie found himself at the head of fifty thousand men.

7. **Capture of Louisburg.**—The first operations of the energetic campaign now begun were directed against Cape Breton, where Admiral Boscawen, with forty ships and a land force of fourteen thousand men commanded by Major-General Amherst, with Brigadier-General Wolfe as his lieutenant, arrived at the beginning of June. Louisburg was

---

5. Why were the French at first successful? What is said of the British commanders? Of the regulars? 6. What change was made in 1757? What measures did Pitt adopt? What was the result?

captured July 27, 1758, after a defence of seven weeks, and by this event the English became masters of the whole island and its dependencies and of the entire coast almost



NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK, AND VICINITY.

to the St. Lawrence. Five thousand prisoners and an immense quantity of stores fell into their hands.

**8. Other Operations of 1758.**—A second body of troops under Abercrombie himself was directed against Ticonderoga. It consisted of 7,000 regulars, 9,000 provincials, and a heavy train of artillery. The French numbered 4,000, and were under Montcalm. Descending Lake George in flat-boats, Amherst landed at its northern extremity, and, after repulsing a French scouting party, pushed on rapidly

7. Give an account of the capture of Louisburg? What were the consequences? 8. Who led the expedition against Ticonderoga? State the number of troops in each army. Give an account of the battle?





to Ticonderoga without waiting for his artillery, hoping to capture the fort before re-enforcements then on the way to Montcalm could reach him. He was defeated, however, after a bloody battle (July 8), and retired to the southern end of Lake George, whence he sent off an expedition under Col. Bradstreet, who captured Frontenac (August 27) with its garrison and shipping. Bradstreet suffered little in the engagement, but lost 500 men afterwards by camp-fever.

9. A third army, commanded by Gen. Forbes, was sent against Fort Du Quesne, but it made little progress until Washington, with his Virginians, was placed in the advance. He reached the fort at the end of November after a rapid march, and the French set it on fire at his approach and fled down the river in boats. The flames were extinguished, the damage was repaired, and the name of the post was changed to Fort Pitt in honor of the British statesman.

10. **The Conquest of Canada.**—Having deprived the French of three of their important fortresses, and also succeeded by treaties with the Indians in detaching many of their savage allies, Pitt planned the final conquest of Canada. The colonies, to whom he had promptly refunded the money advanced by them for the previous campaign, entered heartily into his projects, so that, unlike former ministers, he received an enthusiastic support both in America and England.

11. The campaign of 1759 was under the direction of Gen. Amherst, who had superseded Abercrombie. Amherst was to attack the French in northern New York, while Wolfe ascended the St. Lawrence to assail Quebec, and Gen. Prideaux led a force against Fort Niagara. Amherst captured Ticonderoga July 22, 1759, and pursued

---

9. Against what fort was Gen. Forbes sent? What progress was made? The result? 10. What plan did Pitt now form? How did he treat the colonists? 11. Describe the plan of campaign for 1759?



the French down Lake Champlain; but his boats were driven back by a storm, and he wintered at Crown Point and built a fort there. Prideaux, while besieging Fort Niagara, was killed by the bursting of a mortar, and the command devolved upon Gen. (now Sir) William Johnson, to whom the place finally surrendered, July 25, after a force of French and Indians attempting to relieve the garrison had been defeated in a severe battle.

12. The most important part of the campaign was Wolfe's expedition against Quebec. This brave and accomplished officer was only thirty-three years old, but already a distinguished soldier. He ascended the St. Lawrence with an army of 8,000 men, escorted by a fleet of more than forty vessels. Several men who became great in the military or naval service accompanied him as subordinates—among others Captain Jervis, afterwards the celebrated Admiral Earl of St. Vincent; James Cook, the famous navigator and explorer; Col. Barré, the Irish Member of Parliament who took the side of the colonists in the debates on the Stamp Act; and Carleton and Howe, who commanded the British forces during the Revolution.

13. The troops landed June 27 on the island of Orleans, which lies in the channel of the St. Lawrence just below Quebec. A few days later they formed two camps, one at Point Levi on the south side of the river opposite Quebec, the other on the lower side of the river Montmorenci, which flows into the St. Lawrence from the north, about nine miles below Quebec. The fleet protected both divisions. The French, whose number was about equal to that of the English, were entrenched along the St. Lawrence between Quebec and the Montmorenci. Montcalm's best defence

---

What did Amherst accomplish? What occurred at Niagara? 12. Describe the expedition against Quebec? What officers assisted Wolfe? 13. Where were the English stationed? What is said of the French?



was the strength of the city itself, which consisted of an upper town, occupying the top and slopes of a steep and high peninsula, enclosed by formidable fortifications, and a lower town, built on the narrow shore at the foot of this promontory. The elevation is called the Heights of Abraham, and the level summit in the rear of the city is known as the Plains of Abraham.

**14. Fall of Quebec.**—An assault by Monekton on the French left near the Montmorenci was defeated with heavy loss. Although the British batteries at Point Levi destroyed most of the lower town, the citadel and fortifications seemed to defy attack, and two months passed without important advantage to either side. Wolfe, sick with fever brought on by anxiety and exposure, now called a council of war at his bedside and unfolded a daring plan for scaling the Heights of Abraham and attacking the city in the rear. Reconnoitring the ground, he had discovered a narrow ravine in the steep bank above the city, with a winding path up which two men could hardly walk abreast. Not imagining that an enemy could approach by such a difficult pass, the French had only a small guard at the top; yet by this road Wolfe determined to lead his army to the heights.

**15.** The preparations were made with the greatest secrecy, and Wolfe left his sick-bed to attend to all the details in person and lead the attack. On the 12th of September the fleet, carrying about half the army, moved up the river, several miles above the ravine, and made a pretence of disembarking at several points. After night-fall the soldiers took to the boats, and with muffled oars dropped silently down the river with the falling tide. They reached the landing without being discovered,

---

Where are the Plains of Abraham? 14. Give an account of the progress of the siege. What plan did Wolfe unfold? What is said of the pass? 15. Describe the preparations for the attack. Give the date.

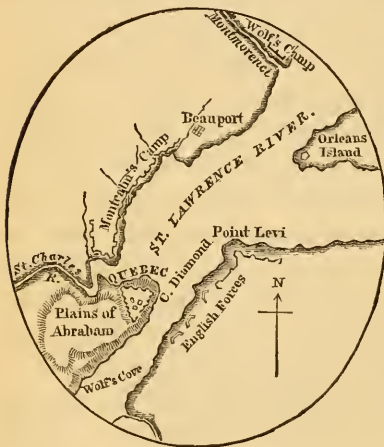


and the advance, led by Colonel (afterwards Sir William) Howe, clambered up the heights, supporting themselves by projecting rocks and branches of the trees. The surprised French pickets were easily dispersed, and Wolfe, with the main body of the attacking force, mounted safely by the path. Before daylight on the 13th the English were drawn up in order of battle on the plain.

16. Montcalm could hardly believe the news which was brought to him in his entrenchments below Quebec, but he hastened to bring up his troops, and soon faced his

enemy with all the men he could assemble. The two armies were about equal in number and in the ability of their commanders. The English were the better disciplined; the French had the advantage in artillery and position.

17. After an hour of cannonading, and an unsuccessful attempt by Montcalm to turn the left of the British and



QUEBEC.

force them into the river, the French made an impetuous charge upon the English line. The veteran troops of Monckton withstood the onset. At Wolfe's command they reserved their fire until the enemy was within forty yards, when they poured in a steady and murderous discharge of musketry. The French wavered. Montcalm, wounded

---

Who led the advance? What is said of the French pickets? 16. What did Montcalm think of the movement? What did he determine on? Compare the armies. 17. Describe Montcalm's movement.



early in the action, was present everywhere encouraging his men until, while attempting to rally a body of fugitive Canadians, he fell mortally wounded, and was carried off the field.

**18. Wolfe and Montcalm.**—On the other side Monckton, Barré, Carleton were all wounded, and Wolfe was shot twice while leading a charge. A third bullet pierced his breast. “Support me,” he said to an officer next him; “don’t let my brave fellows see me drop.” As he was carried to the rear he heard the cry, “They run, they run!” “Who run?” he asked. “The French,” was the answer; “they give way everywhere.” Wolfe roused himself enough to give an order for cutting off the retreat, and expired exclaiming, “Now, God be praised, I die happy!”

**19. Montcalm,** being told that he had only a few hours to survive, replied: “So much the better; I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec.” He pointed out to his officers how they might collect troops to renew the attack, and then to the commander of the garrison, who asked his advice about surrendering the city, he said: “To your keeping I commend the honor of France. As for me, I shall pass the night with God and prepare myself for death.” He wrote a letter recommending the French prisoners to the generosity of the victors, and died at five the next morning, having devoted his last hours to the care of his soul. A monument to commemorate the heroism of both Wolfe and Montcalm was afterwards erected on the battle-field, and another stands within the city.

**20.** Five days later (Sept. 18) Quebec surrendered. The contest was prolonged for some time yet, but Wolfe’s victory was the death-blow to the French power in America. In

---

Give the result of the action. 18. What officers were wounded? Repeat the last words of Wolfe. 19. Repeat the last words of Montcalm? His advice to his successor. How did he spend his last hours?



the following April a French army from Montreal, with six ships of war, came down the river and laid siege to Quebec, defeating the British commander, Murray, with severe loss; but the arrival of a fleet from England put an end to the siege. Gen. Amherst, who had been strangely inactive during Wolfe's brilliant campaign, now got slowly in motion, and in September, 1760, appeared before Montreal with 18,000 men. The French were too weak to resist, and Vaudreuil, the governor-general, surrendered not only the city but the whole of Western Canada, it being stipulated in the capitulation that the inhabitants should be protected in their property and religion.

**21. End of the War.**—This was the end of the war between the British and French colonies in North America, though peace was not restored between France and England till the signing of the Treaty of Paris, February, 1763. By this agreement, to which Spain and Portugal were also parties, the French surrendered all their possessions in North America. Everything east of the Mississippi River, except the town of New Orleans, was relinquished to England. New Orleans and that part of Louisiana beyond the Mississippi were ceded to Spain. In exchange for Havana, which had been captured by the British, Spain yielded Florida to England. In 1800 Spain restored Louisiana to France, and in 1803 Napoleon sold it to the United States.

**22. Indian Troubles.**—During the last years of the war the Cherokee Indians committed great ravages on the Southern frontiers. Expeditions against them by Gov. Littleton of South Carolina (1759), and by Col. Montgomery with a detachment from Amherst's army (1760), were only in part successful. They were at length subdued

---

20. When was Quebec surrendered? What were the consequences? What occurred in the following April? Describe Amherst's movement against Montreal. The result. What stipulation was made in the



by a force of regulars and provincials under Lieutenant-Colonel Grant (1761).

**23.** The Indians, who had been living on good terms with the French traders and settlers, were greatly displeased at the transfer of the western country to the English. A chief of the Ottawas named Pontiac formed a conspiracy of the western tribes to fall upon all the English frontier posts from Virginia to the lakes in May, 1763. In less than a fortnight nearly the whole of that region was in the possession of the savages; there was wide-spread massacre and pillage, and Pontiac himself besieged Detroit for five months. The siege having been raised by a large force of provincials, the tribes sued for peace. Pontiac retired to the Illinois country and made a stand there for some time longer, finally submitting in 1766.

---

capitulation? **21.** When was peace restored between France and England? What did France surrender? What was ceded to Spain? What did Spain give up? Why? Give the subsequent history of Louisiana. **22.** What is said of the Cherokee Indians? Who were sent against them? With what success? Who subdued them? **23.** What displeased the Indians on the western frontier? What followed? Who led the Indians? How successful were they? What place was besieged by Pontiac? The result? Where did Pontiac retire? When did he submit? How long did the French and Indian war last?

# PART THIRD.

---

## THE REVOLUTION.

---

### CHAPTER XXI.

CONDITION OF THE COLONIES—DAWN OF THE REVOLUTION—WRITS OF ASSISTANCE—THE STAMP ACT.

**1. The Thirteen Colonies.**—At the close of the French and Indian war there were thirteen English colonies in North America, not counting the possessions just won from France and Spain. In these thirteen colonies there were three different systems of government. Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut possessed charters from the crown. Maryland and Pennsylvania were “proprietary provinces”—that is, they were ruled by their proprietors under authority of the original grants. Virginia, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, the two Carolinas, and Georgia were royal provinces directly subject to the king. Delaware was included in Pennsylvania.

**2.** The population of the whole was a little less than 2,000,000, of whom 350,000 were negro slaves. Virginia was the most populous of the colonies, containing at that time more than 300,000 inhabitants. Massachusetts came second with 230,000; Pennsylvania had nearly as many; the Carolinas ranked fourth; and next in order were Mary-

---

1. How many English colonies were then in America? How many systems of government? Which colonies possessed charters? Which were proprietary provinces? Which were royal provinces? 2. What was the population of the whole? Which were the most populous?





land, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Georgia. In the South, however, a large proportion of the inhabitants were negroes. Massachusetts ranked first in white population, Pennsylvania second, Virginia third, Connecticut fourth.

3. Settlements were just beginning in Vermont. Irish and German immigrants were peopling whole counties in Pennsylvania, and turning towards South Carolina also. Adventurous settlers from the older colonies now crossed the mountains and occupied the lands claimed by the Six Nations on the headwaters of the Ohio. A few years later Tennessee was settled by people from North Carolina, and Daniel Boone laid the foundation of Kentucky. The whole West was a wilderness, almost unknown, the French settlements on the Mississippi being little more than trading posts. New Orleans had only 3,000 inhabitants.

4. The principal town was Boston, which had about 15,000 inhabitants. It was not growing fast. Philadelphia and New York were rapidly overtaking it, Philadelphia then having the lead. Newport was the rival of Boston in trade. Norfolk and Baltimore were also becoming important commercial towns.

5. During the French and Indian wars the colonies lost 30,000 soldiers and spent \$16,000,000, of which the home government refunded only \$5,000,000. They incurred very heavy debts, and many of them made large issues of paper money, which became greatly depreciated. Peace found them, therefore, depressed and exhausted.

6. **Restrictions on Trade.**—The policy of the home government was to make the colonies entirely dependent upon

---

3. What is said of the Irish and German immigrants? By whom was the land beyond the mountains occupied? 4. Name the principal towns. 5. What did the colonists lose in the French and Indian wars?



English merchants and manufacturers, and to prevent all competition in industries. As it was found that the Americans were learning how to make good hats out of American fur, the London hatters complained, and an Act of Parliament accordingly prohibited the transportation of hats from one plantation to another. When they began to manufacture iron for their own use, the British government ordered that "none in the plantations should manufacture iron wares of any kind whatsoever," and that mills, furnaces, etc., should be regarded as "nuisances." The Navigation Acts, already mentioned, made it unlawful for the colonies to trade with any country except England.

7. The colonists, especially in New England, remonstrated against these measures, and carried on an extensive contraband traffic with the West Indies and other places, which the British governors and ships of war were unable to break up. No open resistance, however, was made as yet, and the right of Parliament to regulate the trade of the plantations for the exclusive benefit of the mother country came to be looked upon as settled.

8. **Writs of Assistance.**—In 1761 the government attempted to enforce the tyrannical Acts of Trade by the issue of "writs of assistance," or general search-warrants, which authorized officers of the customs to break into any store or private house and hunt for goods which they even suspected had not paid duty. The most violent opposition was excited to these writs in Massachusetts, where they were first granted. The colonists declared their liberties to be in danger, obedience was refused, and the legality of the warrants was tested in the court at Boston.

9. Here James Otis, the advocate-general of the crown,

---

6. What was the policy of the home government? What restrictions were laid on trade? 7. What action did the colonists take? 8. What was attempted in 1761? What were "writs of assistance"?



refused to defend the writs, resigned his office, and appeared in behalf of the people. His eloquent and courageous speech made a profound impression. "Otis was a flame of fire," said John Adams; "he carried away all before him. American independence was then and there born. Every man of an immense, crowded audience appeared to me to go away, as I did, ready to take arms against the writs of assistance." A majority of the judges were inclined to decide against the writs, but the chief-justice, Hutchinson, persuaded them to defer judgment until they could communicate with England. The legality of the writs was finally upheld, but the officers did not venture to execute them.

10. The spirit of independence soon began to manifest itself also in New York, where a proposal to make the office of the judges entirely dependent upon the pleasure of the king was met by a refusal of the Assembly to grant any salary to judges so appointed. Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania were looked upon by the crown as insubordinate; and the colonies generally showed a disposition to assert their rights by breaking through the unjust restrictions of the Acts of Trade. The attempt to tax the colonies without their consent finally provoked an open resistance.

11. **The Stamp Act.**—The British government had long desired to raise a revenue from the colonies, but no ministry had ever dared to lay a direct tax upon them. Pitt, however, who respected the rights of the Americans, had now been driven from office, and King George III. surrounded himself with courtiers and ministers who had no politics except to carry out his arbitrary designs. Under the influence of the court party Parliament passed a resolution declaring that it had authority to tax the colonies, and in 1764

---

9. What is said of James Otis? 10. What proposal called forth the spirit of independence in New York? What provoked open resistance? 11. What led to the passage of the Stamp Act?



the prime minister, Grenville, brought forward the scheme of a stamp tax to carry this doctrine into effect.

12. The colonists took the ground that they could not lawfully be taxed by a parliament in which they were not represented—in other words, that “taxation without representation is tyranny.” Samuel Adams and James Otis in Massachusetts, Patrick Henry in Virginia, became leaders in the popular movement. Benjamin Franklin was sent to England to oppose the scheme in the name of Pennsylvania. Col. Barré made a speech against it in Parliament. The Stamp Act was nevertheless passed in March, 1765.

13. It declared that every document used in trade, as well as every legal paper, to be valid must have affixed to it a stamp, the lowest in value costing a shilling, and thence increasing in price according to the importance of the paper. A college diploma, for instance, was taxed £2, or \$10. Government agents were appointed to sell the stamps; violations of the act could be tried in any royal or admiralty court, however distant from the place of the alleged offence, and without a jury; and, as a precaution against resistance, the ministers were authorized to send as many troops as they saw proper to America, and oblige the colonies to supply them with “quarters, fuel, rum, and other necessaries.”

14. **Resistance of the Colonies.**—These acts caused a burst of indignation in America. The Virginia Assembly passed resolutions introduced by the brilliant young orator and patriot Patrick Henry, declaring that the General Assembly had exclusive right and power to lay taxes and impositions upon the inhabitants. His speech on the resolutions closed with a daring passage: “Cæsar,” he cried, “had his Brutus, Charles his Cromwell, and George the

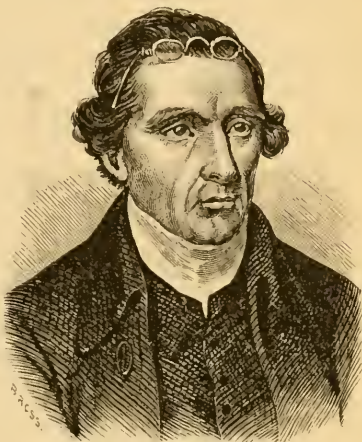
---

Who brought forward this measure? 12. What ground did the colonists take? Who led the popular movement? When was the act passed? 13. Describe the Stamp Act. 14. What is said of Patrick Henry?



Third"—“Treason, treason!” cried some of the delegates—“George the Third may profit by their examples. Sir, if this be treason, make the most of it.”

15. The resolutions of Virginia gave the signal for a general outcry. Massachusetts resolved that the courts should conduct their business without stamps, and invited all the colonies to send delegates to a congress in New York. Associations, called “Sons of Liberty,” were organized to resist the act and defend the rights of the people. Societies of young ladies, calling themselves “Daughters of Liberty,” met to spin yarn and encourage



PATRICK HENRY.

the colonists to persevere in their resolution of buying no British goods. Stamps were seized and destroyed, and the agents appointed to distribute them were so rudely used that they all resigned their offices.

16. The Congress met in New York in October, delegates from nine colonies being present. They drew up a declaration of rights, a memorial to Parliament, and a petition to the king, claiming that they could be taxed only by their own representatives. The colonial assemblies approved their proceedings, and thus was taken the first steps toward a federal union.

17. On the 1st of November, the day on which the

---

15. What did Massachusetts resolve? What were the colonies invited to do? What associations were formed? What became of the stamps? 16. What was done by the Congress that met in New York?



Stamp Act was to go into operation, the bells were tolled and the flags hung half-mast, as if for “the funeral of liberty.” The courts were closed ; business was suspended ; the houses of the British officials were attacked by mobs, and some of the obnoxious friends of the government were burned in effigy. So alarming were the popular demonstrations, and so great was the loss inflicted upon English merchants by the refusal of the colonists to buy any goods from them, that Parliament was obliged to repeal the hateful act.

18. Pitt, Burke, Barré, and others defended the colonists in Parliament, and Pitt declared that he rejoiced in their resistance ; “if they had submitted, they would have voluntarily become slaves.” Franklin was examined by a committee of the House of Commons, whom he assured that the colonists would never submit to taxes imposed by those who had no authority. The repeal, March 18, 1766, was celebrated with great rejoicings both in America and the English seaports.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

THE BOSTON MASSACRE—DESTRUCTION OF TEA—THE BOSTON PORT BILL—THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

**1. New Schemes of Taxation.**—In spite of the failure of the stamp duty the ministry persevered in the attempt to tax the colonies, and a year after the repeal of Grenville’s scheme a new act imposed duties on paper, tea, glass, etc.

---

17. What took place on the 1st of November ? Why did Parliament repeal the act ? 18. Who defended the colonies ? What did Franklin assert ? 1. What did the ministry still desire to do ?



(June, 1767), in reply to which the Americans renewed their pledge not to import any British merchandise.

2. A Mutiny Act, which empowered the ministry to quarter soldiers on the colonists, and the high-handed conduct of Parliament in forbidding the Assembly of New York to perform any legislative business because that body had resolved to disobey the Mutiny Act, increased the exasperation of the people. Massachusetts issued a circular letter to the other colonies, urging them to co-operate in efforts to obtain redress, and nearly all the assemblies passed resolutions denying the right of Parliament to tax them. The Assembly of Massachusetts, being commanded in the name of the king to rescind the circular letter, voted by a large majority not to do so.

3. **Popular Tumults.**—Commissioners of Customs appointed under the new acts arrived at Boston in May, 1768. The next month they seized a sloop belonging to John Hancock, a popular leader and rich merchant, who had refused to pay the tax. A riot followed, and the commissioners fled for safety to a fort in the harbor.

4. The government resolved to punish “the insolent town of Boston,” and at the request of the royal governor, Bernard, a body of soldiers under Gen. Gage was sent to occupy the place. The Assembly refused to find quarters for them, and some were accordingly posted in Faneuil Hall and the State-House, while others camped on the Common. At the same time Parliament recommended that the governor should be ordered to arrest the ringleaders in the riot and send them to England to be there tried for treason. Massachusetts had no Assembly at this time, the governor having dissolved the last House for insubordination; but

---

What new act was passed? 2. What was the object of the Mutiny Act? What did Massachusetts urge? 3. Who arrived in Boston in 1768? What was seized? The result? 4. How was Boston punished?



the Assembly of Virginia took up the matter, and denied the power of the crown to infringe in this dangerous way upon the liberty of the subject. The Virginia Burgesses were thereupon dissolved likewise.

**5. The Boston Massacre.**—The new Assembly which soon came together in Boston refused to transact any business while surrounded by an armed force. The soldiers and citizens had constant quarrels. At length, on March 5, 1770, a serious collision occurred between the troops and a mob, and the soldiers fired, killing three of the crowd and mortally wounding two others. The reports of this “Boston massacre,” as it was called, were greatly exaggerated and filled the country with excitement.

**6.** The people demanded the removal of the troops from the city, and the trial of the captain and eight men of the guard on a charge of murder. The royal officers were obliged to yield. Determined, however, to show the respect of the Americans for law and justice, two of the most distinguished of the popular leaders, John Adams and Josiah Quincy, defended the accused on the trial. Captain Preston and six of the privates were acquitted; the other two were found guilty of manslaughter and branded on the hand.

**7. The Tax on Tea.**—A change of ministry had now brought to the direction of affairs Lord North, a statesman who possessed many excellent personal qualities, but is chiefly remembered as the obedient servant of an obstinate king and the minister who lost America for the British crown. The firmness with which the colonists persevered in their non-importation policy had caused so much distress to British merchants that Lord North determined to remove all the duties except a tax of threepence a pound

---

What led to the dissolution of the Virginia Burgesses? 5. Give an account of the Boston Massacre. 6. What did the people demand? How were the offenders punished? 7. Why was the tea-tax retained?





on tea. This was retained at the express command of the king, who said that "there should always be one tax, at least, to keep up the right of taxing."

8. Lord North was ignorant enough to believe that the colonists would not object to this light tax, which was only one-quarter as much as the English at home paid on the same article, and would actually leave tea cheaper in America than in England. He did not understand that it was against "the right of taxing" that the Americans were contending.

9. The tea-tax, brought forward by the ministry on the day of the Boston massacre, only excited the colonies to a still more earnest declaration of the principle that "taxation without representation is tyranny." Besides pledging themselves to use no tea while the tax remained, they determined that none should be landed or sold; and in Philadelphia, Boston, and other places it was voted in public meeting that any one who aided in unloading or selling a cargo of tea was an enemy of his country.

10. **Destruction of the Tea in Boston Harbor.**—In the latter part of 1773 news came that three ships laden with tea were on their way to Boston. A meeting of 5,000 citizens resolved, on motion of Samuel Adams, to send the ships back. Governor Hutchinson refused to let the ships depart until the tea was landed. On the evening of December 18, while the citizens were assembled in mass meeting at Faneuil Hall, a band of fifty or sixty men, disguised as Indians, went on board the vessels, threw the tea into the water, and then quietly dispersed.

11. Other tea-ships, bound for Philadelphia and New York, were sent back without discharging their cargo.

---

8. What did Lord North believe? Against what were the Americans contending? 9. What was the effect of the tea-tax? On what did the colonies determine? 10. Why was the tea destroyed at Boston?



Small consignments of tea found on various vessels were seized and thrown overboard.

12. At the news of these proceedings Parliament ordered the port of Boston to be closed against all ships, and the capital to be transferred to Salem; nearly all the important privileges granted to the people by the Charter of Massachusetts were taken away; troops were quartered on the colonies at the people's expense; it was enacted that officers prosecuted for deeds done in the enforcement of these laws should not be tried except in England; and Gen. Gage, besides having command of the troops, was appointed governor of the colony.

13. **Popular Agitation.**—These laws, which were gross violations of the rights and charters of the colonies, aroused everywhere in America the deepest indignation. The people of Boston, reduced to distress by the stoppage of their trade, were regarded as martyrs of liberty, and contributions were made for their relief not only in the thirteen colonies but even in London and Quebec. In Boston itself, although meetings were held almost daily in Faneuil Hall and the Old South Church, at which the popular orators inflamed the spirit of resistance, the patriots were careful to avoid all disorderly and unconstitutional proceedings, and nothing was done which the British authorities could punish. The friends of the crown about this time became known as Tories, and the popular party as Whigs.

14. One measure passed by the Parliament in order to meet this crisis was eminently just. Deeming it important to prevent Canada from joining the rebellious colonies, a law known as the Quebec Statute was enacted, which

---

11. What was done with the tea at other places? 12. What did Parliament order? In what other ways were the colonists punished? 13. What is said of these laws? What did the patriots avoid?

—\*—

restored the French civil law, known as the "custom of Paris," and sanctioned throughout the province "the free exercise of the religion of the Church of Rome, and confirmed to the clergy of that church their accustomed dues and rights." Thus the same power which cruelly persecuted Catholics in Ireland was induced by political considerations to protect them in Canada.

15. The Quebec Statute extended not only to Canada proper, but to the whole region acquired from the French west of the Mississippi and north of the Ohio, including the present states of Ohio, Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, and Wisconsin. The colonies warmly protested against this concession of liberty of conscience, although somewhat later they found it expedient to adopt nearly the same policy, and to promote a closer union among themselves by juster treatment of their Catholic brethren. It was not until after the Revolution that discriminations against Catholics were gradually expunged from the laws.

16. Committees of correspondence had already been formed at the suggestion of Patrick Henry, Thomas Jefferson, Richard Henry Lee, and other Virginians, and the colonies took counsel together by this means for the common defence. In May, 1774, proposals were made by the Assemblies of several of the provinces for a General Congress of delegates. The scheme was taken up with great enthusiasm; and on September 5, 1774, an assembly of fifty-five delegates, representing all the colonies except Georgia, met in Philadelphia under the presidency of Peyton Randolph, of Virginia. This was the first, or, as it is often called, the "old," Continental Congress.

---

14. What just measure was passed by Parliament? 15. To what territory did the Quebec Statute extend? What action did the colonies take against this concession? 16. Why were committees of correspondence formed? What proposals were made in May, 1774? The result.



17. **The Old Continental Congress.**—Among the most distinguished of the members were Washington, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia; Samuel Adams and his second cousin John Adams, of Massachusetts; John Jay, Philip Livingston, and James Duane, of New York; Roger Sherman, of Connecticut; Edward Rut-



SAMUEL ADAMS.

ledge, John Rutledge, and Christopher Gadsden, of South Carolina. Patrick Henry, J. Rutledge, and Lee were the most eloquent orators: “but if you speak of solid information and sound judgment,” said Patrick Henry, “Washington was unquestionably the greatest man of them all.”

18. Impressed with the great importance of their proceedings, the delegates, when the Congress opened,

sat for some time in silence. The debate then began with a strong and brilliant speech from Patrick Henry, exposing the wrongs from which the colonies suffered. The sessions lasted seven weeks. A Declaration of Colonial Rights was agreed to, setting forth the claim of the people to participate in making their own laws and imposing their own taxes, and denying the right of the crown to send accused persons to England for trial, or to maintain a standing army among the colonists without their consent, or to forbid peaceable public meetings. A protest was made

---

17. Name the most distinguished members of the old Continental Congress? What is said of Patrick Henry? Of Washington? 18. Who began the debate? What was agreed to? What protest was made?



against eleven of the most tyrannical acts of Parliament passed since the accession of George III.

19. A petition to the king was prepared, as well as addresses to the people of Great Britain, of Canada, and of the colonies. An "American Association" was formed, the members of which pledged themselves not to trade with Great Britain or the West Indies, or with any province which refused to come into this agreement, and not to use tea or any British goods. Provision was then made for another Congress to meet in May, unless the grievances should meanwhile be redressed.

20. When the proceedings of the Congress were published in England, Pitt (who was now Lord Chatham) said: "For solidity of reason, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion under a complication of difficult circumstances, no nation or body of men can stand in preference to the General Congress at Philadelphia. The histories of Greece and Rome give us nothing equal to it, and all attempts to impose servitude upon such a mighty continental nation must be vain."

21. **The People take Arms.**—In the meantime the situation of affairs in Massachusetts became alarming. The people collected arms, enrolled themselves in companies, and prepared to turn out at a minute's notice, from which circumstance they were called "minute-men." Public speakers and writers boldly defended the right of the people to rebel against oppression. Royal officers were forced to resign. Gen. Gage began to fortify the narrow neck which connected Boston with the mainland, and to seize all the arms and ammunition he could find. He had about 4,000 troops, and he sent home a request for 20,000 more.

---

19. What petition was prepared? What association was formed? What provision was made for another Congress? 20. What did Pitt say of the proceedings? 21. Describe the condition of affairs in Mass.



22. Chatham, Burke, Fox, Barré, and other enlightened statesmen in Parliament urged the Government to recede from its wrong position, but the obstinacy of the king prevented any conciliation; it was resolved that America was in rebellion and must be subdued; and so the Revolution began.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### BEGINNING OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE—LEXINGTON—CONCORD— BUNKER HILL.

1. **The War Begins.**—In defiance of Gen. Gage a Provincial Congress had assembled in Massachusetts, under the presidency of John Hancock, first at Cambridge and afterward at Concord, and had taken measures to call out troops and collect military supplies. Learning that arms and ammunition had been stored at Concord, sixteen miles from Boston, Gage ordered 800 picked soldiers to proceed thither by night and destroy them.

2. The movements of the British were closely watched, and they had no sooner started than signals were given to all the surrounding country, and a young patriot named Paul Revere leaped upon his horse to rouse the minute-men along the road. Gage had sent guards to prevent any one from leaving the town, but Revere was too quick for them. The bells were rung; the minute-men turned out in the middle of the night; and when the British reached Lexington, half way between Boston and Concord,

---

22. What did several English statesmen urge? What prevented conciliation? What was resolved upon? 1. State what occurred in Massachusetts. What action was taken by Gage? 2. By the patriots?



at dawn on the 19th of April, 1775, sixty or seventy of the patriots were drawn up in arms to oppose them.

**3. Battle of Lexington.**—Major Pitcairn, who commanded the British advance, cried out, “Disperse, ye villains, ye rebels, disperse! Why don’t you lay down your arms and disperse?” As they stood motionless, he gave the order to fire. It was a slaughter rather than a battle. Eight of the patriots, including their captain, Jonas Parker, were killed and several wounded, and the British then proceeded to Concord.

**4. Battle of Concord.**—Here they destroyed an insignificant quantity of stores. At a bridge near the village they encountered 400 Americans, hastily collected from the neighboring towns, and were so warmly received that they began a hasty retreat. The patriots followed them. The whole country was in arms. A galling fire was poured upon the regulars from behind every fence and almost every tree. The retreat became a rout; and when the British were rescued at last by the arrival of Lord Percy with reinforcements, they had lost 273 men. They encamped for the night on Bunker Hill under cover of the ships of war in the river.

**5.** Up to this time no party in America had thought of a separation from the mother country, but now the colonies were aflame with the spirit of independence. In the course of one or two days the king’s army found itself besieged in Boston by an irregular and ill-furnished but large and determined body of men, who marched to the scene of action from all parts of New England. The Provincial Congress of Massachusetts came together under the presidency of Dr. Joseph Warren, voted to raise

---

3. Give an account of the battle of Lexington. 4. What took place at Concord? Describe the retreat. 5. How did Lexington and Concord affect the colonies? By what was the king’s army besieged?



13,000 men, and invited the other New England colonies to make up the army to 30,000.

6. Before the end of the month the Americans had 20,000 men in camp around Boston, and in the course of a few weeks the authority of the royal governors in all the colonies was at an end. In some places the management of affairs was taken by the provincial Assemblies, in others by provincial Congresses or Committees of Safety. Franklin was chairman of the Committee of Safety in Pennsylvania. In North Carolina the people of Mecklenburg County went so far as to assemble in convention at Charlotte (May 31) and adopt a formal declaration of independence. This movement, however, was not generally sustained.

7. **Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.**—The fortresses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point were considered important by the colonists, not only on account of their position on the frontier of Canada but because they contained a great quantity of stores. An expedition of Vermont volunteers, known as Green Mountain Boys, marched against them under command of Ethan Allen and Seth Warner. Allen surprised Ticonderoga at night (May 10, 1775), penetrating into the fort undiscovered with about eighty men, and rousing the British commander from bed with a summons to surrender. "In whose name?" asked the astonished officer. "In the name of Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was the reply. Warner captured Crown Point with equal ease, and by these two exploits the patriots obtained over two hundred cannon and a large supply of powder, of which they had great need.

8. Benedict Arnold, a captain in the forces before Bos-

---

What action was taken by the Provincial Congress of Mass. ? 6. What change took place throughout the colonies ? Give an account of the Mecklenburg declaration. 7. Describe the capture of Ticonderoga.





ton, served as a volunteer in Allen's expedition, and afterwards captured some stores at St. John's, on the Sorel River.

**9. The Second Congress.**—The second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, May 10, the day of the capture of Ticonderoga. Peyton Randolph was at first president, but John Hancock soon succeeded him in that position. Washington, Jefferson, Franklin, the Adamses, Patrick Henry, and R. H. Lee were members. The Congress was moderate and asked only for redress of grievances, not independence; but it took vigorous measures to carry on war; it formed a federal union, assumed the general authority of government, and authorized the issue of bills of credit.

**10. Battle of Bunker Hill.**—The British army in Boston soon received large re-enforcements led by Generals Howe, Burgoyne, and Henry Clinton, raising their total force to ten thousand disciplined regulars, besides a considerable fleet. The Americans comprised a number of independent commands under Generals Artemas Ward of Massachusetts, Israel Putnam of Connecticut, Nathanael Greene of Rhode Island, and others; General Ward being recognized as chief. The whole number of men was about sixteen thousand.

**11.** The Committee of Safety having resolved to make the blockade of Boston more complete by occupying the heights of Charlestown overlooking the city and harbor, Colonel Prescott, of Massachusetts, with twelve hundred men, was ordered (June 16) to march secretly from Cambridge and throw up entrenchments during the night on Bunker Hill. He understood his instructions to refer to Breed's Hill, an eminence a little nearer Boston, and there, accordingly, he began to fortify.

---

8. What did Arnold accomplish? 9. When did the second Continental Congress meet? What did it accomplish? 10. What was the strength of the British army in Boston? What is said of the Americans? 11. On what did the Committee of Safety resolve? The result.



12. The patriots worked all night with such silence that their operations were not discovered, and by daylight on the 17th they had already thrown up a redoubt and a breastwork about six feet high. They were first seen from the ships, which immediately opened fire, but the work went on until noon. By that time the British in Boston had completed their preparations for an assault, and the Americans, exhausted by a long march, a hard night's labor, and the want of food and water, laid down their shovels and picks and took their muskets.

13. Prescott was everywhere, encouraging his men. With him were Dr. Joseph Warren, one of the ablest of the patriot leaders, who held a commission as major-general, but refused to deprive Prescott of the command, and served with a musket as a volunteer; and Israel Putnam, a veteran



BOSTON AND VICINITY.

of the French and Indian wars, now fifty-seven years old, who had left his plough standing in the furrow at the news of the fight at Lexington, and in one day had galloped sixty-eight miles to join the patriots at Boston.

14. About three o'clock in the afternoon the assaulting party, three thousand picked regulars commanded by Generals Howe

and Pigot, having crossed the Charles River from Boston in boats, advanced up the hill under cover of a fire from

12. Give an account of the fortification of Breed's Hill. Of the movements of the British. 13. Name the American leaders. What is said of Putnam. 14. How large was the assaulting party?



the ships and batteries. The provincials stood firm. "Don't one of you fire," said Putnam, "till you see the whites of their eyes."

15. When the British were within a hundred yards of the works the Americans delivered their fire with the aim of practised marksmen. Before the quick and murderous volleys the veteran regiments of King George wavered, broke, and at last fell back in disorder to the landing-place. There they rallied, and soon moved forward again to the charge, only to be driven back as before by the steady fire of the colonists.

16. The officers exerted themselves to form their men a third time, but they were discouraged. At this moment the British General Clinton, who was watching the engagement from Boston, seeing two regiments on the beach in confusion, threw himself into a boat, crossed over, and succeeded in getting them into line. Four hundred marines landed from the ships. Thus re-enforced the beaten red-coats, after a long delay, moved once more up the hill, while the field of battle was half hidden by a thick smoke from the burning houses of Charlestown, which Gage had caused to be set on fire.

17. As before, the steady and well-aimed fire of the Americans, delivered at short range, checked the advance, but at this critical moment the ammunition of the colonists gave out. The British grenadiers sprang forward with the bayonet, and after a short and desperate struggle Prescott, finding himself nearly surrounded and exposed to an artillery fire in the rear, gave the order to retreat.

18. On the left of the American line, where the breast-work was unfinished, a slight defence had been constructed

---

What advice did Putnam give? 15. Describe the first and second attacks. 16. What efforts were made to rally the British? By whom were they re-enforced? 17. Describe the third attack. The result.



of fence-rails and loose hay ; and here Colonel Stark and others kept the British at bay until the redoubt was taken, when it became impossible to hold the position any longer. The provincials made good their retreat over Charlestown Neck.

19. At the beginning of the retreat the ardent Warren was killed. The Americans lost 449 in killed, wounded, and prisoners, while the British loss was over 1,000, or more than a third of the force engaged. The result of the battle was encouraging to the provincials, since it proved the ability of the raw militia to contend against disciplined regulars ; and the dear-bought victory, only won by the exhaustion of the Americans' powder, was so little satisfactory to the British government that General Gage was displaced from the command and succeeded by General Howe. This engagement, always known as the Battle of Bunker Hill, was the first real battle of the Revolutionary War. The affairs at Lexington and Concord were only skirmishes.



## CHAPTER XXIV.

WASHINGTON COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF—OPERATIONS IN CANADA—SIEGE OF BOSTON.

1. **The Continental Army.**—The Congress at Philadelphia had adopted the unorganized force before Boston as a “Continental Army,” and appointed George Washington commander-in-chief of all the troops to be raised for the defence of the colonies, voting him pay at the rate of \$500 a

---

18. Who commanded the left ? With what success ? 19. What was the loss on the American side ? What was the loss on the British side ? How was the result of the battle regarded ? By what name is the engagement known ? 1. State the origin of the “Continental Army.”



month. He accepted the appointment but refused the pay, declaring that he would take nothing but his actual expenses. Setting out immediately on horseback, he reached the camp at Cambridge on the 2d of July, 1775. The American force then consisted of about 14,000 men. Washington established himself with the centre at Cambridge, and gave the right wing at Roxbury to General Artemas Ward, who was second in rank, and the left at Prospect Hill, two miles from the battle-ground of Breed's Hill, to General Charles Lee. Boston was now regularly besieged, and Washington improved the time by bringing the disorderly force of provincials into some kind of discipline.

**2. Attack upon Canada.**—A second army was raised for an attack upon Canada, and Washington gave the command of it to General Philip Schuyler; but, Schuyler falling sick on the way, the management of the expedition fell to General Richard Montgomery, an experienced and distinguished Irish soldier, who had lately settled in New York.



GENERAL RICHARD MONTGOMERY.

**3. Montgomery captured St. John's and Chambly, both on the Sorel (the outlet of Lake Champlain), and then easily made himself master of Montreal, after Ethan Allen had been taken prisoner in a foolhardy attempt to surprise that town, and**

Who was appointed commander-in-chief? When did he take command? What disposition did he make of his forces? **2.** Who commanded the army against Canada **3.** Describe the progress of Montgomery.



had been sent to England in irons. Montgomery then moved towards Quebec.

4. Arnold, in the meantime, had marched from Boston with 1,100 men, ascended the Kennebec in boats, struck across the forest to the head-waters of the Chaudière, and, after suffering great hardships, floated down that stream to the St. Lawrence. He reached Quebec at the beginning of November with little more than half his detachment, the rest having deserted during the six weeks' struggle in the wilderness.

5. In a few weeks Montgomery and Arnold joined their forces and began the attack upon Quebec. The united army, not exceeding 1,000 men, gallantly assaulted the town on the 31st of December in the midst of a blinding snow-storm. Montgomery was killed almost at the first charge, Arnold was badly wounded, and the Americans were driven off with a loss of 300 men. They persevered all the winter and spring in blockading Quebec, but the arrival of reinforcements for the British at last compelled them to retire.

6. **The South.**—In the summer of 1775 Dunmore, the royal governor of Virginia, was driven out of Williamsburg, then the capital of the colony, and obliged to seek safety on board a British man-of-war. Collecting some ships and a considerable force of men, partly slaves and indented servants to whom he promised freedom, he burned Norfolk (Jan., 1776), which was the largest and richest town in Virginia, and made descents upon various parts of the coasts.

7. In North Carolina there was some sharp fighting between the Tory settlers, who were principally Scotch, and the patriot militia, in which the Tories were worsted. In

---

What happened to Ethan Allen? 4. Give an account of Arnold's march. 5. How large was Montgomery's army? Describe the attack. What was the result? 6. What is said of Dunmore? Why was Norfolk burned? 7. What took place in North Carolina? The result?



South Carolina the gallant defence of Charleston (June, 1776), where a British fleet under Sir Peter Parker, aided by a large land force under General Clinton, was beaten off with great loss by a small body of men on Sullivan's Island, commanded by Colonel Moultrie, filled the colonists with encouragement.

**8. Operations on the Coasts.**—While the colonies were one after another deposing the royal governors, organizing a temporary administration of civil affairs, and raising troops, the British vessels of war hung upon the coasts and attacked various seaport towns. The provincials themselves, however, fitted out cruisers, some by order of Congress, others by separate colonies, and by capturing British supply-ships they obtained stores, of which they were in great need. Their most serious want was in powder, of which they were almost destitute.

**9. Commissioners to Canada.**—In protesting against the Quebec Statute of 1744 (see page 152) Congress expressed "astonishment that a British Parliament should ever consent to establish" in Canada the freedom of the Catholic religion; nevertheless, the provincials hoped that Canada might be persuaded to join in the revolt against the British crown, and in the spring of 1776, while Arnold was still in camp before Quebec, delegates were sent to Montreal to propose co-operation, or at least secure Canadian neutrality. The persons chosen for this mission were Benjamin Franklin; Charles Carroll of Carrollton, the distinguished Catholic patriot who signed the Declaration of Independence as representative of Maryland; Samuel Chase, likewise of Maryland; and Father John Carroll, a cousin of Charles.

**10. Father Carroll.**—John Carroll was born at Upper

---

What occurred at Charleston? 8. To what were the seaport towns exposed? What was done by the provincials? 9. Did Congress approve the Quebec Statute? Why were commissioners sent to Canada?



Marlborough, Maryland, in 1735, studied with the Jesuits, first in Maryland and afterwards in France, became a member of the Society, and spent several years in priestly duties in Europe. After the suppression of the



ARCHBISHOP CARROLL.

Society of Jesus he retired first to England, and in 1744 returned to America to devote himself to the mission in Maryland. Here his sympathies were engaged from the first with the popular side. The Catholics of Maryland were amongst the staunchest supporters of colonial liberty, and they were represented in the Continental Congress by two of their most eminent men—Daniel

Carroll, the elder brother of Father John, and Charles Carroll, his cousin.\*

11. The commissioners left New York April 2, 1776, and only reached Montreal on the 29th. Franklin endea-

---

\* In 1789 the episcopal see of Baltimore was erected, and Father Carroll became the first bishop in the United States. His appointment had been recommended to the Holy See by Franklin, who retained a strong regard for him. In 1808 Bishop Carroll was promoted to the dignity of archbishop, New York, Philadelphia, Boston, and Bardstown being established as suffragan sees. He died in 1815.

---

10. Give a brief account of Father John Carroll. Why did he return to Maryland? Which side did he join? What is said of the Catholics of Maryland? How were they represented in Congress?





vored to convince the Canadians of the political advantages of a connection with the thirteen colonies, and Father Carroll used his influence with the clergy; but the British Government had caused the protests of the colonists against the freedom of the Catholic religion to be translated into French and circulated amongst the Canadians. This, with other causes, defeated the efforts of the commissioners, and after a fortnight they returned to New York.

**12. Washington at Boston.**—The army which Washington found encamped before Boston was ragged, disorderly, insubordinate, and ill-equipped. Many of the soldiers were dissatisfied; they had volunteered only for a short time, and were now anxious to go home. With the exception of three well-drilled Rhode Island regiments commanded by General Nathanael Greene, most of the men mistook disobedience for independence. The stock of powder was so low that each soldier had only nine cartridges, and for two weeks the troops were in such a destitute condition that if the British had attacked them they must have been cut to pieces.

**13.** By extraordinary exertions Washington renewed the supplies, and, with the aid of Putnam, Greene, Gates, and other generals, brought the army into discipline, strengthened the entrenchments, and filled up the thinned ranks.

**14.** Observing preparations in the British fleet to embark troops, he rightly conjectured that Howe meditated the seizure of New York. General Lee was accordingly despatched in haste to raise volunteers in Connecticut and occupy the city—a task which he performed so well

---

11. When did the commissioners start? What did Franklin attempt? With whom did Father Carroll use his influence? What defeated their efforts? 12. In what condition was the American army encamped before Boston? Whose regiments were well drilled? How much powder had Washington? 13. What did Washington succeed in doing?



that when the British expedition under Sir Henry Clinton arrived in New York harbor, Lee was ready to receive it. Clinton then sailed to the South and joined Sir Peter Parker in the attack on Charleston. (See page 165.)

**15. Evacuation of Boston.**—On the morning of the 5th of March, 1776, the British in Boston were astonished to discover that Washington had occupied Dorchester Heights during the night, and thrown up a series of redoubts which commanded the town and fleet, and made it necessary to evacuate Boston if the Americans could not be dislodged. Howe planned an attack upon the heights, but it was prevented by a storm, and on the 17th he embarked with his whole army and went to Halifax, taking with him fifteen hundred of the Tory inhabitants. This bloodless and important victory for the patriots was received with loud rejoicings, and Congress voted a resolution of thanks to Washington, and ordered a gold medal to be struck in his honor.

**16.** Putting Boston in a state of defence, Washington now hastened to New York, where he was certain that the next blow would be struck, and Lee was ordered to command the troops in the South. The commander-in-chief reached New York on the 13th of April. Fortifications which Lee had begun were hastily completed. Greene was placed in command of a division on Long Island. Measures were taken to disarm the Tory inhabitants; and the royal governor, Tryon, who had been driven to seek refuge on board a man-of-war in the lower bay, was prevented from holding any communication with his partisans on shore.

---

14. Who was sent to protect New York? 15. What position was fortified by Washington? What advantage was thus obtained? What were the British obliged to do? How was this important victory received? 16. Describe Washington's next movement? What was done to protect the city? What measures were taken against the Tories?



## CHAPTER XXV.

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1. **The Project of Separation.**—Even after the war had fairly begun the colonies still looked forward to a reconciliation with the mother-country, and the first proposals for a separation were received with general disapproval. In authorizing the seizure of all British vessels, and sending Silas Deane to France to ask assistance from the French king, the Continental Congress had indeed assumed the functions of an independent government. A flag had also been adopted, showing thirteen stripes of white and red (but not yet the stars in the blue field), and on the 1st of January, 1776, this emblem of nationality was displayed in Washington's camp at Cambridge. The Assembly of Pennsylvania, however, instructed its delegates in Congress to oppose "any proposition that might lead to a separation from our mother-country." New Jersey did the same. The Maryland delegates were instructed to do nothing without the previous sanction of their Assembly.

2. The conflict of arms was not long in giving an impulse to a bolder policy. General instructions extending to the question of independence, without using the word, were given to the delegates by Massachusetts in January, 1776, by South Carolina in March, by Georgia in April. North Carolina was the first to command its representatives in Congress to concur in a declaration of independence (April 12). Massachusetts and Rhode Island a few days later made their provincial legislatures independent of the royal authority in name as they had already become in effect.

---

1. What functions had Congress assumed? How were delegates from these colonies instructed? 2. To what did the conflict of arms lead? What colonies issued instructions pointing to independence?



3. On the 10th of May John Adams carried through Congress a resolution requesting each of the United Colonies to establish a government for itself, and five days later a preamble to this resolution was adopted, declaring that all authority under the crown ought to be suppressed, "and all the powers of government exerted under the authority of the people of the colonies." This important decision led necessarily to complete independence.

4. On the same day (May 15) the Virginia delegates were instructed by their Convention to bring forward in Congress a declaration of independence, and this determination was communicated by a circular letter to the other colonies. Two weeks later at the annual election in Massachusetts the voters declared themselves unanimously in favor of independence.

5. On the 7th of June Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, in obedience to the instructions of the Convention of his province, moved in the Congress at Philadelphia "that the United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent States, and that their political connection with Great Britain is, and ought to be, dissolved." John Adams earnestly supported the resolution. Others opposed it, not because they did not wish for independence, but because they thought the time had not yet come. It was earnestly debated in secret; seven colonies were in favor of it, and the delegates from the other six either against it or else without authority to vote.

6. To give time for consultation with the people the matter was then postponed till the 1st of July; but meanwhile a committee was appointed, consisting of Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, John Adams of Massachusetts, Ben-

---

3. What resolution was passed by Congress? What preamble was adopted? 4. How were the Virginia delegates instructed? 5. What occurred in Congress on June 7? 6. Why was the matter postponed?



jamin Franklin of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, and Robert R. Livingston of New York, to prepare a formal declaration of independence. Another committee was to draw up a scheme of confederation, and a Board of War was created with John Adams at its head.

**7. Declaration of Independence.**—The “resolution respecting independency” was considered in committee of the whole on the appointed day. During the postponement the spirit of the patriots had everywhere declared itself. Several of the Assemblies had issued new instructions to their delegates. Maryland had been induced, by the strenuous exertions of Carroll and Chase, to consent to the declaration. The proprietary government of Pennsylvania had been quietly overthrown, and a popular Assembly ruled in its place.

**8.** Business opened in Congress on the 1st of July with the reading of letters from Washington at New York. Opposed to him was an army of 30,000 British veterans, and to meet them he had only 7,700 men, many of whom were not armed. A fleet of fifty-three British ships had been reported off Charleston, and the safety of that port was in great doubt. Before the debate closed further advices from New York announced the arrival there of a powerful expedition under Howe. Part of the American force, moreover, was disaffected; the Tories in New York gave great uneasiness; and a plot had been discovered to seize Washington and deliver him to the British.

**9.** While the military situation was thus discouraging, the spirits of Congress were revived by a letter from Maryland announcing that the Convention had declared unani-

---

What committees were appointed? 7. How did postponement benefit Lee's resolution? 8. What was the condition of affairs on July 1? 9. How were the spirits of Congress revived?



mously for independence. The Virginia resolution was then taken up. For a few minutes perfect silence prevailed; every delegate seemed to be oppressed by a sense of grave responsibility. In the absence of Lee all eyes were turned towards John Adams. He had not prepared himself to speak, but without premeditation he delivered an impetuous and powerful address in support of the resolution.

10. At the end of the discussion nine of the colonies voted to sustain the resolution; South Carolina was unanimously opposed to it; Delaware and Pennsylvania were divided; New York had called a popular convention to consider the question, and, as it had not yet met, the delegates in Congress had no authority to vote.

11. The matter having thus been decided in committee, the final vote was taken by the House on the 2d of July, when twelve colonies resolved “that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.” There was no opposition. New York was still unable to vote, but the delegates of that province were in favor of the resolution; and when the new convention met a week later at White Plains, the Declaration was ratified unanimously.

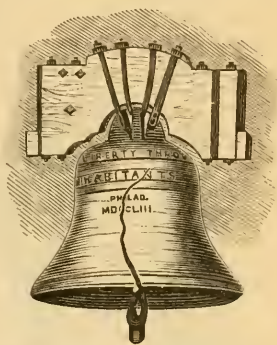
12. The discussions in the Congress at Philadelphia were held in private. A large crowd waited in the streets to learn the results of the momentous deliberation. In the steeple of the State House was a bell, imported from London twenty-three years previously, and by a strange

---

Who supported the resolution? 10. How many colonies voted to sustain it? Which opposed it? How did the other colonies stand? 11. When was the final vote taken? Repeat the resolution.



coincidence it bore the following text inscribed on the metal: "Proclaim liberty throughout the land unto all the inhabitants thereof." The old bell-ringer stood at his post all day, ready to announce the Declaration by a joyous peal, and his boy was stationed below to give him the signal as soon as the resolution was adopted. As the time went on the story is that the old man shook his head and repeated: "They will never do it! they will never do it!" At last the boy appeared, clapping his hands and shouting, "Ring!



ring!" Then the bell "proclaimed liberty," and the whole city was filled with rejoicing. The Liberty Bell is still preserved at Independence Hall in the old State House of Philadelphia, the same room in which the Declaration was adopted.

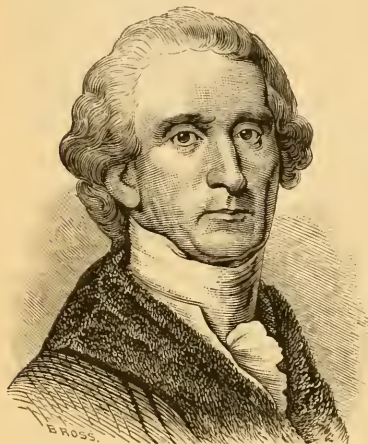
13. It now remained for the delegates to set forth the reasons of the separation in the formal Declaration of Independence. This famous document, written by Jefferson, had been submitted to Congress on the 28th of June, and after a few changes was agreed to on the evening of the 4th of July, twelve of the colonies—or, as they should now be called, independent States—approving it, and New York not voting. It was then signed by John Hancock, President of the Continental Congress, and immediately published. The other delegates waited until it had been carefully engrossed on parchment, and did not sign until August 2.

---

12. Were the meetings of Congress public? Give an account of the ringing of the Liberty Bell. 13. What still remained to be done by the delegates? Who wrote the Declaration? When was it adopted?



14. When John Hancock wrote his name in a large, bold, and beautiful hand, he said: "There, John Bull can read that without spectacles." Franklin remarked: "Well, gentlemen, we must hang together now, or we are likely to hang separately." As Charles Carroll affixed his



CHARLES CARROLL OF CARROLLTON.

signature, one of the members, knowing that he was very rich, said: "There go a few millions. However, there are many Carrolls, and the British will not know which one it is." Mr. Carroll thereupon, in order that there might be no mistake, added to his name "of Carrollton," and he was ever afterward known by that title.\*

15. The Declaration was celebrated by the people with demonstrations of joy. Washington caused it to be read to his soldiers in New York on the 9th of July. On the same evening the excited inhabitants pulled down a leaden statue of George III. on horseback which stood on the Bowling Green, and it was melted into bullets for the use of the patriot army.

---

\* This illustrious Catholic patriot survived all the other signers of the Declaration of Independence, and died in 1832, universally respected. In his last days he uttered these words: "I have lived to my ninety-sixth year; I have enjoyed continued health; I have been blessed with great wealth, prosperity, and most of the good things which the world can bestow—public approbation, esteem, applause; but what I now look back on with greatest satisfaction to myself is that I have practised the duties of my religion."

14. What remark was made by Hancock when he wrote his name? By Franklin? Why did Charles Carroll add "of Carrollton"? 15. How was the Declaration celebrated? When was it read to the army?





## CHAPTER XXVI.

BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND—CAPTURE OF NEW YORK—BATTLE OF  
WHITE PLAINS.

1. **The British Attack New York.**—The British Government, during the progress of these events, had declared the colonists to be rebels, authorized the destruction of their property at sea, and prepared powerful fleets and armies to reduce them to submission. Besides sending a large number of British troops to America, the crown hired 17,000 soldiers in Germany to assist in suppressing the revolt. As most of these foreign troops were obtained from the Prince of Hesse Cassel, they were all called by the general name of Hessians. They were especially hateful to the Americans.

2. The first operations were intended to secure the line of the Hudson River, and thus cut off New England from the other States. While Sir Guy Carleton led an expedition from Canada against the Americans on Lake Champlain, a formidable land and naval force was directed against the city of New York. It was under General Sir William Howe and his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, who had been appointed to the chief command, the one of the fleets, the other of the armies, in America.

3. On the day of the adoption of the resolution of independence (July 2) General Howe, having sailed from Halifax with the late garrison of Boston and some other troops, landed on Staten Island in New York harbor; ten days later Lord Howe arrived from England with large

1. What had the British Government done in the meantime? How many soldiers were hired in Germany? 2. What was the object of the first operations? 3. When did Howe land on Staten Island?



reinforcements; and Sir Henry Clinton, after his defeat at Charleston, soon joined them.

4. The Howes had been appointed commissioners to receive the submission of any of the rebels who might throw themselves on the king's mercy. They sent on shore by a flag of truce a circular letter offering a pardon to all who would submit. Congress ordered it to be published to show the people that no redress was to be expected from the crown, and "that the valor alone of their country could save its liberties."

5. **Battle of Long Island.**—On the 22d of August, 1776, 10,000 of the British, led by Sir Henry Clinton, landed on the southwest end of Long Island, at Gravesend Bay, with the intention of seizing Brooklyn Heights, from which commanding position the city of New York would be at their mercy. The approaches to the heights from the rear had been fortified by General Greene, but he was attacked by a raging fever just before the battle, and the command on Long Island devolved first upon General Sullivan and afterwards upon Putnam, whom Washington sent over from New York with reinforcements as soon as the plan of the British became clear. The absence of Greene, who was familiar with all the roads and passes, was a great misfortune.

6. Driving back the American advance posts, Howe brought over his main army, and prepared to attack the American position in three columns. One, under General Grant, was to march along the shore of Gowanus Bay; another, composed of Hessians, was to assail the centre; while Clinton, making a long night march, gained a pass in the hills beyond the American left, and took the lines in the rear.

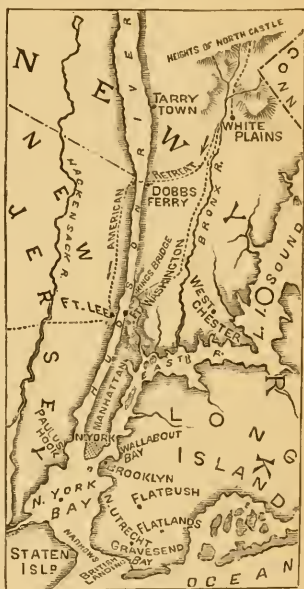
---

4. What powers were conferred on the Howes? What offer was made by them? 5. What movement was made by the British? How were Brooklyn Heights defended? 6. Describe the plan of attack.



7. The attack began early in the morning of August 27. Clinton's manœuvre, executed with great secrecy, gave the day to the British. Sullivan was caught between two fires, and made prisoner with a large part of his army. Stirling was also captured. At night, after a desperate engagement, the Americans had lost five hundred killed and wounded, besides eleven hundred prisoners, who were soon suffering great hardships and cruelties in the prisons of New York and the prison-ships moored in the harbor.\*

8. Howe now waited for his fleet to come up in order to complete the capture of Brooklyn and of the army defending it. But before light on the morning of the 29th, aided by a thick fog, Washington caused the whole force to be ferried across the East River to New York. Howe did not discover the retreat until the last boat was beyond musket-shot.



WASHINGTON'S RETREAT.

9. **Evacuation of New York.**—It was impossible to hold New York, because it could be shelled from Brooklyn Heights, and attacked on both sides by the British fleet, and Washington accordingly determined to withdraw to

\* During the Revolutionary war about 11,000 prisoners died in these ships, which lay near the present site of the Brooklyn Navy Yard.

7. What is said of Clinton's manœuvre? What was the result of the engagement? State the loss on each side. 8. What movement did Washington perform? 9. Why was New York evacuated?



the ridge of hills at the north end of the island, known as Harlem Heights. The movement was made just in time; General Howe began to cross the East River while the Americans were on the march (September 15). A detachment ordered to oppose their landing (at what is now the foot of Thirty-fourth Street), so that the main body might make good its escape, fell back in a panic, and Washington, while trying to rally the fugitives, narrowly escaped capture. New York remained in the hands of the British till the end of the war.

10. The condition of the patriots was now deplorable. The army, greatly reduced by losses in battle, was still further weakened by desertions and insubordination. Thousands of the disheartened soldiers went home. In a few days the Connecticut militia dwindled down from six thousand to two thousand. Fortifying himself, however, on Harlem Heights, Washington succeeded in partly establishing discipline, and opposed so bold a front to the enemy's line that Howe did not venture to attack him directly.

11. At the same time Washington addressed a strong letter to the President of Congress, setting forth the total inefficiency of the existing system of enlisting militia-men for short terms, and insisting upon the formation of a permanent military force. In consequence of these representations the army was at length reorganized.

12. **Nathan Hale.**—As it was very important for the Americans to obtain correct information of the force and position of the British troops on Long Island, a young captain in a Connecticut regiment, named Nathan Hale, volunteered on that dangerous service. He entered the

---

What occurred during the withdrawal of the troops? 10. What did Washington succeed in doing? 11. Give the substance of his letter to Congress. The consequence. 12. Give an account of Nathan Hale.



camp at Brooklyn, learned all the necessary facts, and was about to return when he was arrested and hanged the next morning as a spy.

13. After a delay of a month Howe undertook to attack Washington in the rear. While a part of the British fleet sailed up the Hudson, easily breaking through a line of obstructions which Putnam had placed in the river, a strong body of troops landed at Throg's Neck, where the East River opens into Long Island Sound, and attempted to advance in the direction of Fordham.

14. Unable to drive in the American outposts at this place, they made a landing further east. Washington, however, was prepared for them. He withdrew his force across the Harlem River at King's Bridge, and entrenched himself on Fordham Heights, facing the British advance. A series of manœuvres occupied the next two weeks, during which the superior generalship of Washington baffled all the movements of Howe's fine army. Skirmishes from time to time resulted to the advantage of the Americans and greatly encouraged the raw and disheartened troops.

15. **Battle of White Plains.**—On the 28th of October a battle took place at White Plains, in which, after severe fighting, the British carried one of the American positions. They then rested for the night. During the darkness Washington built three redoubts of corn-stalks, piled with the roots outward; the lumps of earth clinging to them, just as they had been pulled from the ground, made them look like solid fortifications. Deceived by the apparent strength of these works, Howe was afraid to attack them in the morning, and while he was waiting for reinforcements Washington fortified a much stronger position on

---

13. What was Howe's next movement? 14. What was done by Washington? What was the result of his manœuvres? 15. What took place at White Plains? Where did Washington fortify himself?



the heights of Northcastle, five miles distant, and removed thither his baggage, stores, guns, and men. Howe waited a few days and then retired to King's Bridge.

16. The whole of this campaign, although it was a victory for the British, showed the military genius of Washington in a most striking light. With a small, untrained, ragged, hungry, half-armed, and dissatisfied body of men, more like a rabble than an army, he had kept at bay a formidable array of veterans led by skilful and experienced officers. Unable to resist Howe's superior numbers, he had, nevertheless, brought off his army and stores by a series of retreats which deserve to be celebrated as warlike achievements.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

BATTLE ON LAKE CHAMPLAIN—WASHINGTON IN THE JERSEYS—BATTLE OF TRENTON—BATTLE OF PRINCETON.

1. **Affairs on the Hudson.**—Notwithstanding the capture of New York, General Howe was not able to carry out his plan of seizing the line of the Hudson River. As a part of the scheme, Sir Guy Carleton undertook to sail up Lake Champlain and Lake George from Canada (there were no roads in that region), and then to march through the wilderness to Albany, whence he could descend the river to co-operate with Howe.

2. Vessels for his use were brought from England in pieces and put together on the outlet of Lake Champlain. To meet him the Americans under Benedict Arnold col-

---

Where did Howe retire? 16. What did this campaign show? In what did Washington succeed? 1. Were the British able to seize the line of the Hudson? What did Carleton attempt? 2. Who opposed him?



lected a small flotilla, and on October 11, 1776, a battle was fought on the lake, in which the Americans, being outnumbered two to one, lost more than half their vessels, barely escaping with the rest to Ticonderoga. They displayed great courage and ability, however, in the action, and Carleton, though he occupied Crown Point for a short time, did not venture to attack Ticonderoga. General Gates, in the meantime, who commanded in the northern department, strengthened the American position, and the British abandoned the enterprise for the season.

3. Washington, after the battle of White Plains, made haste to secure the lower part of the river by fortifying the passes of the Highlands from West Point to Peekskill, where the Hudson flows through the gateway of the mountains. A part of his army crossed into Jersey by defiles among these hills, and the whole force was held ready to move swiftly as soon as Howe's plans were disclosed.

4. Fort Washington, on the upper end of Manhattan Island, was still held by an American garrison commanded by Colonel Magaw. Howe captured it by assault November 16, after a gallant defence, and took nearly three thousand prisoners. Then he sent Lord Cornwallis with a strong corps to cross the river to Fort Lee, Washington retreating hurriedly before his advance.

5. **Campaign in the Jerseys.**—The two armies crossed New Jersey in hot haste, Washington manœuvring so as to defeat the British design of cutting him off from Philadelphia. The armies were often in sight of each other, and the American rearguard sometimes had to destroy the bridges while the British were actually within musket-shot.

---

Where was a battle fought? What was the result of the British movement? 3. What passes did Washington secure? What disposition did he make of his army? 4. Describe the capture of Fort Washington. 5. Describe the campaign in northern Jersey.



6. Washington had not more than four thousand men, and this little force was fast dwindling away. General Charles Lee with a division was near Northeastle, and, though he was repeatedly ordered to join the commander-in-chief with all haste in the Jerseys, he hesitated and delayed until near the end of the year. On the march he carelessly separated himself from his army and was made prisoner by the enemy. This event caused great rejoicing in one camp and consternation in the other, as Lee was considered the ablest of the American generals. It has lately been discovered that while detained as a prisoner of war Lee was concerned in a plot to betray his country.

7. The patriots were in great alarm during these movements. The Convention of New York travelled from place to place on horseback, and sometimes, it is said, held meetings in the saddle. The legislatures of New Jersey and Pennsylvania adjourned and left those States almost without a government. Congress, fearing for its safety in Philadelphia, removed to Baltimore. Apathy and disorder prevailed among the troops and disaffection among the citizens, and a great number of prominent persons, believing that the cause of independence was lost, hastened to make their peace with the British authorities.

8. **Battle of Trenton.**—Early in December Washington had fallen back into Pennsylvania, crossing the Delaware at Trenton and securing all the boats. Here the pursuit stopped, the British going into winter quarters on the Jersey side of the river. Strengthened by the arrival of Lee's division, now under the command of Sullivan, Washington determined to strike a sudden blow that might at least

---

6. Give an account of the capture of Lee. 7. How did the campaign in the Jerseys affect the patriots? What step was taken by many prominent persons? 8. Where did the retreat and pursuit end?





revive the courage of the people ; courage was especially needed just then, because the term of enlistment of many of his troops was about to expire. He resolved to fall upon a detachment of one thousand five hundred Hessians at Trenton, and he chose Christmas night for the attack.

9. With two thousand four hundred men Washington crossed the Delaware in boats nine miles above Trenton. The river was full of floating ice, snow was falling, and the passage, made with great difficulty, took all night. The troops marched in two columns, led by Greene and Sullivan, and reached Trenton about eight o'clock on the morning of December 26. The Hessians were completely surprised and routed. Their commander, Colonel Rahl, was killed ; and Washington returned to camp with one thousand prisoners.

10. This brilliant exploit had a great effect upon the people. The soldiers who were about to return home consented to serve six weeks longer ; Congress, which had exhibited great firmness under the most trying circumstances, put forth fresh efforts to strengthen the army ; and Washington, invested for six months with the authority of a dictator, crossed the Delaware again and occupied Trenton.

11. **Battle of Princeton.**—The British had fallen back from the river and concentrated at Princeton, and Lord Cornwallis, who had returned to New York on his way home to England, was hastily sent to take the command again while General Howe was bringing up reinforcements. On the 2d of January, 1777, Cornwallis marched to Trenton, and, resting for the night in sight of the American lines, made preparations to attack the next morning. His army

---

How did Washington seek to revive the courage of the people ? 9. Describe the battle of Trenton. 10. What was the effect on the people ? On Congress ? 11. Describe the movements of Cornwallis.



was much the larger of the two; a strong force at Princeton was ready to join him; and the position of Washington was full of danger.

12. But while Cornwallis slept Washington quietly abandoned his camp, marched around his enemy, and at sunrise (January 3) fell upon the British reserves at Princeton just as they were starting to take part in the expected battle at Trenton. Some of the American militia, disheartened by the fall of their leader, the gallant General Mercer, were put to flight early in the action; but Washington, mounted on a white horse, dashed into the thickest of the fight and turned the fortune of the day. Those of the British who escaped from the field hastened towards Trenton to join Cornwallis.

13. This officer lost no time in bringing up the main body of the British, and the Americans, exhausted by fighting and long marches and the want of food and sleep, were in no condition to meet him. They retired, consequently, towards Morristown. Posting them in safe positions between that place and the Highlands of the Hudson, Washington spent the rest of the winter in sudden and daring exploits which, without risking a general engagement, kept the enemy in constant distress and compelled him to abandon every post in New Jersey except New Brunswick and Perth Amboy. Thus, with a few ragged regiments, which Alexander Hamilton called "the phantom of a military force," Washington brought to a brilliant close a campaign which opened in disaster. Congress now returned to Philadelphia.

What is said of Washington's position? 12. How did he extricate himself? What occurred at Princeton? 13. Where did the Americans establish themselves? How did Washington spend the winter?



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

CAMPAIGN OF 1777—INVITATIONS TO FOREIGN OFFICERS—AFFAIRS ON LONG ISLAND SOUND—BATTLE OF THE BRANDYWINE—CAPTURE OF PHILADELPHIA—BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN.

1. **Preparations for a New Campaign.**—While Washington was busy in the reorganization of his shattered army Congress applied itself industriously to the raising of money and purchase of supplies. Funds had hitherto been obtained by the issue of a paper currency, which declined rapidly in value as the amount of the issues increased. To sustain the credit of these bills Congress resorted to the expedient of declaring all persons who refused to take them “enemies of the United States.”

2. Franklin, Deane, and Arthur Lee were appointed regular diplomatic commissioners to the court of France. They were informally but kindly received there, and obtained aid in money, as well as valuable supplies by indirect means from the royal arsenals, although the French Government was not willing as yet to recognize the United States as an independent nation.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

3. **Foreign Officers.**—Commissions were offered to French

---

1. How had Congress obtained funds to carry on the war? In what way did Congress attempt to sustain the credit of these bills? 2. Who were appointed commissioners to France? How were they received?



and other foreign officers who wished to serve in the American armies, and a large number of ambitious soldiers consequently embarked. Washington was embarrassed by the arrival of so many, not all of them men of merit, and the American officers were displeased to find strangers suddenly placed over them.

4. Among the foreigners, however, who thus gave their services to the American cause were several distinguished men : Kosciuszko and Pulaski, the famous Polish patriots ;



LAFAYETTE.

Baron Steuben, an accomplished and experienced Prussian soldier ; Baron de Kalb, an Alsatian ; and the French Marquis de Lafayette, who, at the age of nineteen, purchased a ship with his own means, and, in spite of the prohibition of his Government, sailed for America to offer his sword, without pay, to the cause of independence. These generals rendered the most valuable aid to the struggling nation, and their

names are spoken with gratitude by all Americans.

5. **Naval Operations.**—Congress ordered thirteen frigates and several other vessels of war to be fitted out, and, although there was not money enough at present to build so many, the organization of a navy was begun, and privateers were despatched to cruise against British merchant-

---

3. To whom were commissions offered ? 4. Name the distinguished foreigners who offered their services. What is said of Lafayette ? 5. What provisions were made by Congress for the organization of a navy ?



men. In the first year of this naval warfare about three hundred and fifty British vessels were captured, with cargoes valued at \$5,000,000. The privateers disposed of many of their prizes in French ports.

**6. Military Expeditions on Long Island Sound.**—The campaign of 1777 opened with small detached expeditions, the most important of which was one against Danbury, Connecticut, where the Americans had a large quantity of stores. Tryon, the royalist ex-governor of New York, landed near Norwalk, on Long Island Sound, with two thousand men, marched to Danbury, destroyed the magazines, and set fire to the town (April 26). On his retreat he was three times attacked by a militia force hastily assembled under Generals Wooster and Arnold, but he reached his ships with a loss of about two hundred men. Wooster, a brave, honest, and valuable old officer, was mortally wounded.

7. The Americans had their revenge the next month when Colonel Meigs with two hundred Connecticut men crossed the Sound in whale-boats, destroyed a quantity of British stores at Sag Harbor, on the eastern end of Long Island, burned eleven or twelve vessels, took ninety prisoners, and returned without the loss of a man.

8. On the 13th of July a small party of Continentals landed by night near Newport and carried off General Prescott, the British commander at that post. This affair was considered a great triumph as an offset for the capture of General Lee, for whom Prescott was soon exchanged.

**9. Operations of General Howe.**—Uncertain whether General Howe intended to attack Philadelphia or to move

---

What was accomplished by the privateers? 6. Give an account of Tryon's expedition. 7. Describe the expedition against Sag Harbor. 8. Give an account of the capture of Gen. Prescott.



towards the Hudson and co-operate with a new expedition known to be fitting out in Canada, Washington remained on the watch in his winter quarters in Jersey. At length the whole British force crossed over to Staten Island (June 30), embarked on board the fleet, and sailed southward.

**10.** Washington hurried to Philadelphia by forced marches, and, in order to make an impression upon the disaffected inhabitants, paraded through that city with all possible display. Howe, proceeding up Chesapeake Bay, landed eighteen thousand men at its head (the present site of Elkton, Maryland), sixty miles south of Philadelphia. Both armies then advanced to meet each other.

**11. Battle of the Brandywine.**—Reaching Brandywine Creek, about half way between the place of landing and Philadelphia, Howe found Washington prepared to give battle, though with hardly eleven thousand effective men. The Hessians under Knyphausen attacked the American front at Chadd's Ford, while Cornwallis crossed the stream further up and attempted to gain the American rear (September 11).

**12.** The attack at the ford was gallantly resisted by General Wayne, while Sullivan, who commanded on the American right, marched with three divisions to intercept Cornwallis. He was beaten, however, and driven back in confusion, and Wayne was then compelled to abandon the ford, Greene bringing up the reserve to cover the retreat. The Americans retired first to Chester and then through Philadelphia to Germantown, having lost about twelve hundred men, or twice as many as the British. For his bravery in this battle Count Pulaski was made a briga-

---

9. Why did Washington remain in his winter quarters until June? Where did the British force go? 10. Where did Howe land? 11. Where did Washington make a stand? 12. Describe the battle.



dier general. Lafayette, who was wounded, distinguished himself so highly that he was soon after appointed to the command of a division.

13. After some days occupied in skirmishes and manœuvres Washington was obliged to fall back behind the Schuylkill, about thirty miles from Philadelphia, and General Howe took possession of the city on the 26th of September, Congress having in the meantime removed first to Lancaster and afterward to York. The main body of the British was stationed at Germantown, then a small village about six miles from Philadelphia, but now included within the limits of the city.

14. **Battle of Germantown.**—Here General Howe was suddenly attacked by Washington at sunrise on the 4th of October, and his men were driven in disorder. Just when victory seemed secure, however, the American line, having to advance in a dense fog across ground which was broken by a great many strong stone enclosures, became confused in the darkness; the officers could not see their own position or that of the enemy; and the British took advantage of the accident to rally and repel the attack. The Americans lost one thousand men in this affair, and their adversary lost about six hundred.

15. Washington still held Fort Mifflin, on an island in the Delaware River a few miles below Philadelphia, and Fort Mercer, on the eastern bank, nearly opposite the other work, and thus he prevented the British fleet from bringing up supplies to Howe's army. On the 22d of October Count Donop, with twelve hundred Hessians, attacked Fort Mercer, while the fleet opened fire upon Fort Mifflin. The combined assaults were gallantly

---

13. What was Washington compelled to do? When did Howe take Philadelphia? Where was the British army stationed? 14. Describe the battle of Germantown. 15. What forts were still held by Washington?



repelled, Donop and four hundred of his men being killed and two of the ships destroyed. Land batteries were now erected, and, after Fort Mercer had been almost entirely destroyed by a bombardment lasting several days, both posts were evacuated, and the British became masters of the river. Howe thereupon stationed his army behind a line of fortifications extending from the Delaware to the Schuylkill, and Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill, about twenty miles above Philadelphia.



## CHAPTER XXIX.

### BURGOYNE'S INVASION—BATTLE OF BENNINGTON—SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE.

1. **Burgoyne's Invasion.**—While the Americans were thus unfortunate in the middle department a brilliant success in the north revived their drooping spirits and had a very important effect upon the fortunes of the war. The British still adhered to the project of an invasion from Canada to seize the whole line of the Hudson River, and a powerful expedition was fitted out for that purpose and placed under the command of General Burgoyne.

2. The plan of campaign was arranged by Burgoyne himself after a personal interview with the king. He had nearly eight thousand men, of whom four hundred were Indians, two hundred and fifty Canadians and Tories, and the rest disciplined English and German regulars. There were forty-two pieces of artillery.

---

Describe the first attack. Why were the posts evacuated? Where were the armies stationed for the winter? 1. What was going on in New York in the meantime? 2. How large was Burgoyne's army?





3. The American army in Northern New York was under General Schuyler, who had only a handful of undisciplined militia-men, many of them unarmed, and all short of food and ammunition. The main body, twenty-five hundred strong, was at Ticonderoga, commanded by General St. Clair.

4. Burgoyne began his advance by Lake Champlain in June, 1777, just as Sir William Howe left New Jersey for his attack upon Philadelphia, and on the 2d of July he appeared with his brilliant and finely-equipped army before Ticonderoga. The post was overlooked by a steep hill called Mount Defiance, and on the 5th the British appeared on the summit with a battery of artillery which, by great effort, they had hoisted up from tree to tree.

5. **Evacuation of Ticonderoga.**—The American position was no longer tenable, and St. Clair hastily sent off his cannon and stores by boat to Skenesborough (now Whitehall), at the upper end of Lake Champlain, and led the garrison to the same point by a road recently cut by the soldiers. Burgoyne followed the boats, captured two at Skenesborough and compelled the Americans to destroy the others, and at the same time the light division of his army pursued St. Clair.

6. The American rearguard was beaten at Hubbardton on the 7th of July, after a sharp action, in which the losses of the two sides were about equal. St. Clair made his way to Fort Edward, on the Hudson, and there the remnant of his force, with a few Continentals and a brigade which Washington had detached from Putnam's command in the Highlands, was concentrated under the personal direction of Schuyler.

---

4. When did Burgoyne appear before Ticonderoga? 5. Why did St. Clair retreat? What occurred at Skenesborough? 6. At Hubbardton? Where did the Americans concentrate? Describe Schuyler's army.



7. Schuyler's army all told did not amount to more than forty-five hundred destitute men, and the enemy, flushed with victory, was only twenty-six miles distant. Schuyler obstructed the road through the wilderness by felling trees across it and destroying the bridges, and he did his work so thoroughly that Burgoyne was twenty-four days in reaching the Hudson. In the meantime the Americans had fallen back first to Saratoga and then to Stillwater, near the mouth of the Mohawk.

8. While the British were on the march a party of Indians who, in accordance with the recommendation of the king, had been attached to the expedition, made a raid upon a house near Fort Edward, murdered several persons, and carried off a young lady named Jenny McCrea, who was engaged to be married to a loyalist officer of Burgoyne's army. Quarrelling over their prize, they killed her and carried her scalp into the British camp. General Burgoyne spared no pains to show his horror of the deed of his savage allies; but the tragedy caused a great excitement among the people and increased the animosity against the British.

9. **St. Leger's Expedition.**—While Burgoyne was forcing a road towards the Hudson, expeditions were imprudently detached from his main body on both sides. One under Colonel St. Leger, composed of regulars, Tories, Canadians, and Indians, marched into the valley of the Mohawk, and on August 3 laid siege to Fort Schuyler (now Rome), an important post, on what was then the extreme western frontier of the New York settlements. It was occupied by two regiments of Americans under Colonel Gansevoort.

10. General Herkimer, advancing with a body of New

---

7. How large was Schuyler's army? How was Burgoyne's progress retarded? To where did the Americans retreat? 8. Relate the story of Jenny McCrea. 9. What was the object of St. Leger's expedition?



York militia to the relief of the garrison, fell into an ambush at Oriskany, near the fort (August 6), and was mortally wounded, and many of his men were killed. The garrison, by a successful sally, rescued the survivors. A number of the prisoners taken by St. Leger in this affair were massacred by the Indians.

11. A few days later Arnold approached with three



MAP OF NEW YORK.

regiments sent by Schuyler. The British did not wait for his arrival, but, abandoning their tents and most of their stores and baggage, retired hastily to Oswego and thence crossed into Canada. The effect of this disastrous failure was the desertion of many of Burgoyne's Indian allies.

10. What happened to Gen. Herkimer? How were the survivors rescued? 11. Who was sent to the assistance of the garrison? What was the result? How did St. Leger's failure affect Burgoyne?



**12. Battle of Bennington.**—Still more unfortunate were Burgoyne's undertakings on his left flank. He had sent a mixed force under Col. Baum, including eight hundred British and German regulars, to seize a quantity of stores collected by the Americans at Bennington, Vermont. Six miles from the town Baum was confronted by a body of New Hampshire militia commanded by Col. Stark. Both parties threw up entrenchments and sent back for reinforcements. On August 16 Stark made an attack in four columns, and after an engagement of two hours put the British force to rout.

**13.** On the same day Col. Breyman arrived with a fresh body of British, but fortunately Col. Seth Warner came up also with help for Stark. The battle was renewed and lasted till night, when Breyman retreated in confusion, leaving his guns and baggage. The British lost in the two actions about two hundred killed, six hundred prisoners, one thousand muskets, and four cannon. The American loss was only fourteen killed and forty-two wounded.

**14. Burgoyne's Advance.**—These defeats, together with the prudent defensive tactics of Gen. Schuyler, proved the ruin of Burgoyne's enterprise. He could not retreat, however, because the militia had begun to collect in his rear. Pushing on to Saratoga, he fortified a camp there. His desperate situation was not understood by Congress or the people. Schuyler's careful campaign was severely criticised, and just as he was about to secure the final victory Congress removed him from the command, and appointed Gen. Horatio Gates in his place. Schuyler obeyed gracefully and welcomed his successor with cordiality.

**15.** Gates fortified himself on Bemis's Heights, near

---

12. Describe the battle of Bennington. 13. How was each side reinforced? What was the result? 14. What ruined Burgoyne's enterprise? Why was a change made in the American commanders?



Burgoyne's lines, Kosciuszko acting as his engineer. While awaiting the British attack, he sent a detachment under Gen. Lincoln to harass the enemy's flank and rear. On the 19th of September Burgoyne attacked the American position at Bemis's Heights, and a severe battle took place, in which the field was lost and won over and over again in the course of the day. Night put an end to the indecisive conflict. The British lost 600 men and the Americans 300.

16. On the eve of the battle Stark arrived in camp with the victors from Bennington. They were militia-men whose term of service expired that day, and in spite of all efforts to detain them they marched off home again the very morning of the battle. The American generals were often exposed to similar troubles with the militia. Notwithstanding these desertions, however, the army of Gates began to increase, and the battle of Bemis's Heights being announced as a great victory, proved an encouragement to recruiting. Burgoyne, on the other hand, was daily in greater distress, and his only hope was in the success of an expedition which Howe had sent up the Hudson to force the passes of the Highlands.

17. **Capture of the Highlands.**—That force, commanded by Sir Henry Clinton, captured Forts Clinton and Montgomery (October 6), compelled the evacuation of other forts, ravaged the country, and burned Kingston. But their help came too late. The news of their advance reached Gates, but was kept from Burgoyne.

18. **Surrender of Burgoyne.**—On the 7th of October a severe engagement was fought at Saratoga, when the Americans not only obtained an important advantage in posi-

---

15. Where did Gates fortify himself? What occurred on Sept. 19?  
16. What is said of Stark's party? What was the condition of affairs in each army? 17. What expedition was led by Sir Henry Clinton?

tion but captured what they greatly needed, a full supply of ammunition.

19. During the night Burgoyne fell back to the high grounds in the rear, but Gates, too wary to attack him there, sent a detachment to threaten the enemy's retreat. At last, his provisions being nearly exhausted and his army hemmed in, Burgoyne surrendered at Saratoga on the 17th of October, giving up 5,800 men and 27 pieces of artillery. Gates granted honorable terms to the British, the more readily as he was anxious to hasten the surrender before Burgoyne heard of the capture of the Highlands and the advance of Sir Henry Clinton.

20. Clinton, on being informed of the capitulation of Burgoyne, dismantled the forts he had taken on the Hudson, and returned in haste to New York. The capture of a whole British army and the failure of the invasion which had excited so much alarm, filled the people with exultation. The battles of Saratoga also had an important effect in proving to the Americans that their marksmen were able to withstand the British bayonet.

---

## CHAPTER XXX.

### OPERATIONS OF 1778—ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE—BATTLE OF MONMOUTH— MASSACRE OF WYOMING.

1. **The Dark Winter.**—In spite of the encouragement plucked from the Saratoga campaign, the cause of the patriots looked dark and the winter of 1777-78 was the most trying time of the war. Washington's army at Valley

---

18. What occurred at Saratoga? 19. Describe the manœuvres of each general. Why did Burgoyne surrender? 20. What was the effect of the capitulation? 1. What is said of the winter of 1777-78?



Forge was in great misery. The men were without shoes, and the snow was stained with the marks of their bleeding feet. They had few blankets, and they only kept themselves from freezing by sitting all night around the camp fires. There was no money to pay them. The bills issued by Congress had become so depreciated as to be nearly worthless. Food was so scarce that Washington was authorized to seize provisions wherever he could find them.

**2. The Conway Cabal.**—During this time of trouble a plot was formed by Generals Conway and Mifflin, aided by a few members of Congress, to force Washington from his command and put Lee or Gates in his place. The scheme, known in history as “the Conway Cabal,” was brought to light; Washington became more popular than ever, and Conway wrote a humble apology.

**3. Brighter Prospects.**—In the spring the condition of affairs improved. Relief was afforded to the treasury by the patriotism of Robert Morris, a rich merchant of Philadelphia, who raised large sums of money for the government on his personal credit, and continued to serve the country in this way till the end of the war. The British Parliament, alarmed by the surrender of Burgoyne, made an attempt at reconciliation by renouncing all intention to levy taxes in America, and appointing five commissioners to negotiate for the restoration of the royal authority. The war had already cost Great Britain 20,000 men and \$100,000,000; and American cruisers, infesting even the British waters, had captured over 500 English vessels.

**4. Alliance with France.**—But the most important result of the capture of Burgoyne was the conclusion of a formal alliance with France. That country had favored

---

Describe the suffering at Valley Forge? 2. Give an account of the Conway Cabal. 3. How did Robert Morris assist Congress? What was done by Parliament? What had the war cost Great Britain?



the insurgent colonists from the first. On the 6th of February, 1778, two treaties were signed with the American commissioners in Paris, one of commerce and friendship, the other of defensive alliance in case Great Britain should declare war against France. No peace was to be made until the independence of America was secured. The influence of Franklin, who was a great favorite at the French court, was of the highest service to his country in these negotiations. A French frigate was immediately sent across the ocean with the treaties, and Congress promptly ratified them amid the general rejoicings.

5. The terms offered by the British commissioners, who arrived soon afterward, were at once rejected, the Americans refusing to negotiate except on the basis of the recognition of their independence. The proceedings of the commissioners, moreover, rather increased the general bitterness against the mother country.

6. Johnstone, one of their number, was compelled to resign his appointment, having been exposed in an attempt to bribe Joseph Reed, the President of Pennsylvania. "I am not worth purchasing," said Reed, "but such as I am the king of England is not rich enough to buy me." In a manifesto to the people, the British agents tried to excite the bigotry of the Protestant clergy against an alliance with French "papists," and threatened, if the rebels did not submit within forty days, to make the desolation of the country the leading object of the war. Congress caused this violent proclamation to be widely published as a means of encouraging the patriots in their determination to be free. In consequence of the language used against

---

4. What was the most important result of the capture of Burgoyne? What treaties were concluded with France? 5. Why were the terms offered by the British commissioners rejected? 6. What is said of Johnstone? What did the British agents try to excite?





the French, Lafayette sent a challenge to one of the commissioners, the Earl of Carlisle, but that nobleman declined it.

7. A proposal to acknowledge the independence of the colonies was made about this time in the British Parliament, and it was while protesting in the House of Lords against any such “dismemberment of the British Empire” that Lord Chatham fell in an apoplectic fit, dying shortly afterward.

8. **Aid from France.**—The French government fitted out a fleet of sixteen large vessels under Count d’Estaing (*des-tang’*) to aid the Americans, and despatched it to the Delaware. This obliged the British to evacuate Philadelphia. Lord Howe sailed at once with the English fleet for New York, and Sir Henry Clinton, who had succeeded General Howe in the chief command of the land forces, crossed the Delaware to march for the same place.

9. **Battle of Monmouth.**—Washington instantly left Valley Forge, and pursued the retreating British with about twelve thousand men. He came up with them at Monmouth Court House, New Jersey, after a rapid march of several days in the most intense heat, and there on the 28th of June a hard battle was fought.

10. The attack was begun by General Charles Lee’s division, which was easily beaten and fled in disorder. Washington succeeded in arresting the panic, addressing to Lee on the spot a very severe reprimand, and a general engagement followed, broken off at night without decisive result. Under cover of the darkness Clinton stole away and reached the protection of the fleet at Sandy Hook.

11. The American loss in the battle was about 200 and

---

7. What proposal was made in Parliament? 8. What aid was sent to the Americans? The consequence? 9. What occurred at Monmouth? 10. Who began the attack? What was the result?



the British loss 300 ; but the retreat had cost Clinton in killed, wounded, and missing nearly 2,000. For his conduct at Monmouth Lee was arrested and tried by court-martial ; he was acquitted of the most serious charges, but found guilty of disrespectful behavior to the commander-in-chief and suspended for a year. This was the end of his career in the army. He was soon afterwards dismissed for writing an insolent letter to Congress.

**12.** With a view to an attack upon New York, in conjunction with the French fleet, Washington crossed the Hudson and encamped at White Plains. This plan, however, was given up, and the American army passed the winter in a line of cantonments extending from Danbury in Connecticut, across the Hudson at West Point, to Elizabethtown, in New Jersey.

**13. Operations of D'Estaing.**—Lord Howe's fleet anchored in Raritan Bay, where the water was too shallow for the French ships (which were much larger than the English) to follow. A movement was then planned against Newport.

**14.** General Sullivan marched to Rhode Island in August with a considerable force of militia, and the French fleet appeared in Narraganset Bay, closely followed by Lord Howe, who had been re-enforced. Both admirals prepared for action, but a storm of extraordinary severity dispersed the fleets, and D'Estaing, much to the disgust of Sullivan, abandoned the enterprise and went to Boston for repairs. Sullivan was now obliged to retreat, after gallantly repulsing an attack by the British garrison.

**15. Massacre of Wyoming.**—In July, 1778, a large body of Tories and Seneca Indians, commanded by Colonel John Butler, made a raid into the Wyoming valley, on the

11. How was Lee punished ? 12. Why did Washington cross the Hudson ? Where did the army pass the winter ? 13. Where did Lord Howe anchor his fleet ? 14. Describe the movement against Newport.



Susquehanna opposite the present town of Wilkesbarre (*wilks-barry*) in Pennsylvania. A settlement called Westmoreland had been made here some years before by emigrants from Connecticut and elsewhere, and it now had 2,000 or 3,000 inhabitants, a large proportion of whom, however, were absent in Washington's army. Colonel Butler defeated the small body of soldiers which attempted to oppose him (July 3), and compelled the rest of the people who had taken refuge in Fort Wyoming to surrender, on promise of security to life and property. Butler, however, was unable to control his savage allies. They massacred about 400 prisoners and civilians, burned the houses, and destroyed the crops; and the survivors, mostly women and children, fled to the mountains, where many of them perished.

16. The cruel policy of arming the Indians against the white settlers produced deplorable consequences. In October a regiment of Continental troops destroyed the settlement of Unadilla, on the upper Susquehanna in New York, where a number of Indians and Tory refugees had fixed themselves; and in November the Indians and Tories revenged themselves by surprising the neighboring



BRANT.

Cherry Valley, and repeating the tragedy of Wyoming. The red men, under the famous Mohawk chief Brant, and

---

15. Who made a raid into Wyoming Valley? How large was the settlement? Give an account of the massacre. 16. What settlement was destroyed by the Continental troops? Who led the red men?



the loyalists under John Johnson, a son of Sir William (see p. 128), for a long time spread terror through central New York. The frontier towns in the south were harassed in the same way.



## CHAPTER XXXI.

THE WAR IN THE SOUTH—MINOR OPERATIONS IN THE NORTH AND EAST—CAPTURE OF STONY POINT—INDIAN HOSTILITIES—THE NAVY—JOHN PAUL JONES.

**1. The War transferred to the South.**—At the beginning of the year 1779 Washington resolved to make the next campaign a defensive one. His army had been reorganized and strengthened. Greene, one of his favorite officers, had taken charge of the quartermaster's department. Baron Steuben, replacing Conway as inspector-general, had greatly improved the discipline of the forces. Kosciuszko had undertaken the fortification of the Highlands and other engineering duties. The whole number of soldiers, however, in all the patriot armies, was only 16,000, and with so small a force it was impossible to attack the British either at New York or Newport.

**2. The British, on their part, despairing of the subjugation of the Northern and Middle colonies, resolved to strike a blow at the South.** At the close of 1778, Sir Henry Clinton sent an expedition by water from New York to invade Georgia. The troops, commanded by Colonel Campbell, landed on the Savannah River a few

---

Who led the loyalists? 1. What kind of campaign did Washington resolve to make in 1779? What changes had been made in the generals? 2. What expedition was sent out by Clinton?



miles below the city of that name, and won an easy victory over the small American garrison which under Colonel Robert Howe attempted to oppose them (December 29, 1778).

3. The British General Prevost marched from Florida, took Sunbury in Georgia (January 9, 1779), and, assuming command at Savannah, sent Colonel Campbell against Augusta, which surrendered. The whole state then submitted to the invaders, and the Tory inhabitants, organized under the command of Colonel Boyd, became very troublesome on the South Carolina frontier. A band of them on the march to join the British were defeated at Kettle Creek by Colonel Pickens, and five were hanged for treason.

4. General Lincoln had now taken command of the American troops at the South and had begun the formation of an army on the Carolina side of the Savannah River above Savannah. A detachment of his forces under General Ashe compelled Campbell to evacuate Augusta, but while pursuing the retreating British, Ashe was signally defeated by General Prevost, March 3, 1779, at Brier Creek, a little stream which enters the Savannah River between Augusta and Savannah. Prevost then crossed the river to invade South Carolina.

5. **Attack on Charleston.**—On the 11th of May Prevost reached Charleston. The city was prepared for defence, and before an assault could be attempted Lincoln arrived by forced marches, and the British fell back towards Savannah by the way of the Sea Islands on the coast, where a part of their force remained for some time under protection of a redoubt. Lincoln attempted to drive them off,

---

Where did the British win a victory? 3. By whom was Sunbury taken? What was the result of these successes? What occurred at Kettle Creek? 4. What took place at Brier Creek?



but was defeated at Stono Ferry, June 20. Operations were then suspended in consequence of the hot and sickly season.

6. In September, Count d'Estaing, who had been cruising in the West Indies since the failure of the attempt upon Newport, arrived on the Georgia coast with his fleet, and agreed to undertake with General Lincoln the capture of Savannah. Troops and guns were landed, and after a siege of a fortnight an assault was made upon the British works by the French and Americans together (October 9). At the end of five hours' hard fighting, in the course of which the gallant Pulaski was mortally wounded, a truce was arranged for the purpose of burying the dead. The French refused to resume the attack, and returned to the West Indies, whereupon Lincoln was obliged to retire to Charleston. This brought the southern campaign of 1779 to an end.

7. The Spanish governor of New Orleans, aided by American volunteers, had meanwhile driven the British out of Baton Rouge and Mobile, and captured a British fort near Natchez.

8. **Raids on the Coast.**—On the other hand, Sir Henry Clinton lost no opportunity of harassing the people by sudden raids. An expedition despatched by him from New York did great damage on the James and Elizabeth Rivers, Virginia, destroying shipping and other property and carrying away 3,000 hogsheads of tobacco.

9. General Tryon was sent to ravage the coasts of Long Island Sound, and in the course of this excursion (March, 1779) he attacked and scattered a small outpost of Putnam's near Greenwich. Putnam escaped with a bullet

---

5. Where was Lincoln defeated? 6. By whom was Savannah besieged? Give an account of the assault. 7. What had taken place in the Southwest? 8. What expedition was sent out by Clinton?



through his hat, by riding on horseback down a steep declivity where a long flight of steps had been cut in the bank. Collecting his men, he then hung upon the rear of the British, recaptured some of their plunder, and took fifty prisoners, whom he treated so kindly that the British commander wrote him a letter of thanks.

**10. Disaster in Maine.**—A British force from Nova Scotia had established a post on Penobscot Bay, and in the summer the State of Massachusetts sent an expedition, consisting of fifteen hundred militia under General Lovel and nineteen armed vessels under a Connecticut sea-captain named Saltonstall, to break it up. The affair was mismanaged and resulted in complete disaster; the ships were all lost; the soldiers who escaped from the British took to the woods and wandered nearly one hundred miles before they reached any habitations; and Saltonstall was tried by court-martial and cashiered.

**11. Events on the Hudson.**—Washington had ordered the construction of two forts, one at Stony Point on the west bank of the Hudson, the other at Verplanck's Point opposite; these works commanded the crossing at King's Ferry, just below the entrance to the Highlands. Sir Henry Clinton had captured Stony Point while the works were still unfinished, and Verplanck's Point was obliged thereupon to surrender. Regarding these posts as very important to his army, Washington sent General Wayne (whose daring exploits won for him the name of "Mad Anthony") to attempt their recapture. The plan was Washington's in all its details. Wayne carried it out with splendid success, assaulting the fort with two columns, about one o'clock in the morning (July 16, 1779), killing sixty of the garrison and

---

9. What was the object of Tryon's raid? 10. What expedition was sent out from Massachusetts? The result? 11. Where were two forts built by the Americans? Who took them?



making all the rest prisoners. The Americans did not fire a gun, but trusted entirely to the bayonet. This has been described as one of the most brilliant exploits of the war.

12. Verplanck's Point was saved by Sir Henry Clinton, who came up the river in force, and Washington, not choosing to risk a general engagement, then caused Stony Point to be evacuated. The British held these posts, however, only a little while longer. Resolving to transfer all his available troops to the south, Clinton strengthened the fortifications of New York, and in October abandoned not only the forts below the Highlands but also Newport.

13. The achievement of Wayne had an excellent effect upon the spirits of the people and the soldiers, besides resulting in the capture of a large amount of military stores, and putting a stop to the depredations of Tryon on Long Island Sound. A few weeks later there was another gallant affair at Paulus Hook (Jersey City), opposite New York, where Major Henry Lee\* surprised the garrison by night (August 18) and brought away one hundred and fifty-nine prisoners.

14. Hostilities with the Indians.—In the West the hos-

\* The Lees of Virginia played a remarkable part in the American Revolution. Five brothers won more or less fame, the best known being Richard Henry, who introduced the resolution of independence in the Continental Congress and was distinguished as an orator; Francis Lightfoot, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence; and Arthur, who was agent of the colonies in London, and diplomatic agent of the United States successively in Paris, Madrid, and Berlin. Henry Lee, the hero of the exploit above mentioned, was a cousin of these distinguished brothers. He served with great credit through the war, commanding an independent corps, or legion, principally of cavalry, and was known as "Light-Horse Harry," or "Legion Harry." He was a favorite of Washington, to whom he applied the celebrated phrase, "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." Robert E. Lee, the commander in-chief of the Confederate armies during the Civil War, was his son. General Charles Lee was an Englishman by birth, and belonged to another family.

Describe the recapture of Stony Point. 12. Who saved Verplanck's Point? Why was Stony Point evacuated? What places were soon abandoned by Clinton? 13. Describe the affair at Paulus Hook.





tility of the Indians, instigated by the British commander at Detroit, was in part counteracted by the daring operations of a force of pioneers under Major Clarke, who captured several of the British posts north of the Ohio. The Six Nations of New York were more formidable, and a considerable military force, including three brigades from Washington's army, was sent against them in the summer of 1779 under the command of Sullivan.

15. Joined by Gen. James Clinton\* with another brigade, Sullivan gave battle to a large body of Indians and Tories led by Brant, Johnson, and the Butlers, at Newtown, now Elmira (August 29), and routed them. Then he ravaged the Genesee valley, burned all the Indian villages, and destroyed the crops, his purpose being to lay waste the whole region in which the savages found shelter.

16. **Naval Affairs.**—The activity of the little American navy had been seriously checked by the loss of several vessels, and the vigilance of the British cruisers had greatly diminished the number of privateers. Gallant services, however, had been performed by Admiral Esek Hopkins, Captain Biddle, Captain John Barry (an Irish Catholic), and other brave officers, and in 1779 an exploit by Captain John Paul Jones created the greatest enthusiasm both at home and abroad.

17. **John Paul Jones.**—This officer was a Scotchman by birth. In 1778 he made a successful cruise in an eighteen-gun vessel called the *Ranger*, with which he took a

---

\* There were three generals named Clinton in the Revolution. Sir Henry Clinton was the British commander-in-chief; George and James Clinton, brothers, were distinguished officers on the American side, and George became Governor of New York and Vice-President of the United States. De Witt Clinton, an eminent governor of New York, was the son of Gen. James Clinton.

---

14. What service did Major Clarke perform? Who was sent against the Six Nations? 15. By whom was he joined? What did he accomplish? 16. Name the naval officers who performed gallant services.



large number of prizes. He was then placed in command of a squadron of five vessels fitted out in France, his flagship being an old Indiaman altered to a man-of-war, ill-equipped and imperfectly armed; she was named the *Bon Homme Richard*, in allusion to the "Poor Richard" of Dr. Franklin's almanac.

18. With this squadron Jones sailed from L'Orient, France, for the North Sea, and in the course of a month captured or destroyed twenty-six vessels and spread terror along the eastern coast of England. On the 23d of September, 1779, having two of his ships in company, he encountered off Flamborough Head, on the coast of Yorkshire, a fleet of English merchant vessels under convoy of two powerful men-of-war, the *Serapis* and the *Countess of Scarborough*. Jones immediately gave chase, and came up with the *Serapis* soon after nightfall. One of the most terrible engagements on record now took place by moonlight, in full view of crowds of people who lined the shore.

19. The ships lay touching each other, and Jones lashed them together for a furious hand-to-hand combat. After the *Bon Homme Richard* had been dreadfully injured by the bursting of two of her guns the commander of the *Serapis* called out to enquire if she had surrendered. "I have not begun to fight yet," was the reply of the American captain.

20. The battle lasted three hours, when the *Serapis*, a much finer and heavier ship than her antagonist, hauled down her flag. The *Bon Homme Richard* was on fire in two places, and so badly injured that she sank a few hours later, all hands being transferred to the *Serapis*. In the meantime the *Countess of Scarborough* had surrendered to one of the other ships, but the third vessel of Jones's squad-

---

17. Where was Jones's squadron fitted out? 18. How many vessels were captured by this squadron? What occurred off Flamborough Head? 19. What is said of the combat? 20. What was the result?



ron, a frigate commanded by a French officer named Landais, gave no help in the victory.

21. Cruising once on the coast of Scotland, Jones landed in the hope of carrying off the Earl of Selkirk, and compelling the British Government to agree to an exchange of prisoners in order to release him. The earl, however, was absent from home, and the expedition only brought away a quantity of silver plate. When this plate was sold as a prize, Jones became the purchaser and sent it to Lady Selkirk with his compliments.

---

## CHAPTER XXXII.

CAPTURE OF CHARLESTON—INGLORIOUS CAMPAIGN OF GATES—ATROCITIES OF CORNWALLIS—PARTISAN LEADERS IN THE SOUTH.

1. **Siege of Charleston.**—Sir Henry Clinton resolved to conduct the next campaign at the South in person. As soon as the defence of New York was sufficiently provided for he sailed with a fleet commanded by Admiral Arbuthnot, and a land force of five thousand men, besides two thousand marines, and in February, 1780, disembarked on the islands below Charleston.

2. General Lincoln was in Charleston with a small body of Continentals, which he imprudently increased by calling in all the troops he could reach. There was really no hope of making a good defence, and the re-enforcements which he collected only marched to certain captivity. While the ships slowly approached the harbor the British army com-

---

21. Give an account of the attempt to capture the Earl of Selkirk.  
1. Where did Clinton sail? Where did he land? 2. Who was in command of Charleston? What mistake did Lincoln make?

pleted the investment on the land side, dispersing the American detachments which endeavored to keep open the communications with the country. Colonel Tarleton, commander of the British cavalry, greatly distinguished himself during these operations. On the 14th of April he signally defeated fourteen hundred American cavalry at Monk's Corner, thirty miles from Charleston.



MAP OF THE CAROLINAS.

3. At length the siege-works were finished, and, when the city could resist no longer and escape was cut off, Lincoln surrendered (May 12, 1780), the soldiers and male citizens—about six thousand in all—becoming prisoners of war. The town was plundered, and the negroes were shipped to the West Indies to be sold.

What did the British army succeed in doing? What took place at Monk's Corner? 3. When was the city surrendered? How many prisoners were taken? What was done with the negroes?



4. **South Carolina overrun.**—Clinton now sent out expeditions to scour the state. Tarleton came upon a part of a Virginia regiment, and massacred in cold blood over a hundred who offered no resistance but sued for quarter. The inhabitants were treated with the utmost rigor, and all persons, even prisoners on parole, were required to aid in restoring the royal authority on penalty of being treated as rebels.

5. Returning to New York with a part of his army, Clinton left South Carolina in the hands of Lord Cornwallis, whose severity even surpassed his own. The people were forcibly enrolled for military service under the hated British flag, and the conditions of the surrender of Charleston were violated in order to drive the prisoners into the ranks. These brutalities were far from securing the submission of the state. Many of the soldiers thus pressed into the service of their enemies turned their arms against their officers, and many were driven to join the partisan bands of the interior, which kept alive the spirit of resistance under the British reign of terror.

6. One of the partisan leaders was Sumter, whose forces, after gaining some successes, were almost annihilated by Tarleton near the Catawba River, August 18. Another was Marion, who kept the country between the Pedee and Santee in arms. Pickens and Clarke were commanders of corps in the western part of the state.

7. **General Gates in the South.**—Before the surrender of Lincoln, Washington had sent Baron de Kalb to the South with re-enforcements, but he did not arrive in time to save Charleston. More extensive operations were now resolved upon, and Congress placed the southern department under

---

4. What did Clinton next attempt? Who were massacred by Tarleton? How were the inhabitants treated? 5. Who was left in command of the South? 6. Name the partisan leaders.



the command of General Gates, although Washington would have preferred to entrust it to Greene.

8. Gates, whose military capacity was greatly overrated, collected about six thousand men, including the forces of De Kalb, and marched precipitately towards Camden, on the Wateree, in the interior of South Carolina. Cornwallis concentrated a superior army and moved out to meet him. He surprised Gates on the road at two o'clock in the morning, August 16, about nine miles from Camden, and inflicted upon him a signal and disgraceful defeat. Gates had placed the worst of his new militia-men in front to bear the brunt of the charge; they ran at the first onset and nearly two-thirds of the army scattered without firing a shot. The gallantry of De Kalb's Maryland and Delaware brigades could not save the day, although they inflicted severe loss upon the enemy. De Kalb was mortally wounded. Gates fled to North Carolina, and left his fugitive soldiers to take care of themselves. Soon afterward he was removed from his command.

9. The outrages of Cornwallis were now redoubled. Numbers of the patriots were imprisoned or hanged, and their property was confiscated; houses were burned and women were beaten. The Cherokee Indians were encouraged to take arms; and bands of Tories, organized under Major Ferguson and others, committed great ravages. The war at the South assumed a cruel and brutal character from which it was generally free in the Northern States.

10. In September Cornwallis marched into North Carolina, expecting to overrun that State with ease and then invade Virginia. A disaster, however, to Ferguson's par-

---

8. What did Gates do? Where did Cornwallis meet him? Describe the battle. 9. What was the character of the war at the South? 10. Where did Cornwallis next go?



tisan corps compelled him to fall back. On the 7th of October Ferguson was surprised at King's Mountain, on the South Carolina frontier, by a body of backwoodsmen and Virginia militia under Colonel Campbell, and his whole command was either killed or captured. Ferguson himself was among the killed. In revenge for the cruelties of the Tories several of the prisoners were hanged on the spot.

**11. Partisan Warfare.**—No sooner had Cornwallis retreated into the northwestern part of South Carolina than the whole country seemed to rise in arms. Marion, who could boast that he never burned houses or distressed women and children, continually harassed the British soldiers, and defied pursuit by the rapidity and secrecy of his movements. Sumter appeared at the head of a considerable force, and defeated Tarleton, who was sent to crush him.



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### TREASON OF BENEDICT ARNOLD—EXECUTION OF MAJOR ANDRÉ.

**1. Washington in New Jersey.**—During the course of these events at the South the army of Washington, whose headquarters were at Morristown, New Jersey, was in great suffering. Provisions were scarce; the men had not been paid for five months; the winter was unusually severe; many of the soldiers, exhausted by their sufferings, were in open mutiny; and, to make matters worse, there was an insensibility among the people and a negligence in Congress which filled Washington with despondency.

---

What happened at King's Mountain? 11. What followed the retreat of Cornwallis? Who were the chief partisan leaders? 1. How did Washington fare in New Jersey?



2. In June, 1780, General Knyphausen, who commanded at New York in Clinton's absence, sent a detachment of five thousand men into New Jersey, hoping to capture the heights of Morristown. He was met by General Greene at Springfield, on the Rahway River (June 23), and so energetically opposed that he abandoned the enterprise.

3. **Treason of Arnold.**—General Benedict Arnold, though a brave and able soldier, was a vicious and treacherous man. He had involved himself in debt, fallen into disgrace by misconduct while in command of Philadelphia, and been sentenced by a court-martial to a reprimand, which Washington delivered with all possible tenderness. Angry at Congress and embarrassed by his creditors, he entered into a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and agreed to betray his country for a large sum of money and a commission in the British army. In order to carry out this infamous design he asked and obtained from Washington the command of West Point.

4. His plan was to surrender this important post to the British. The details were arranged through Major André, an accomplished young officer of Sir Henry Clinton's staff, and after the interchange of several letters it was agreed that André should meet Arnold by night near Haverstraw on the Hudson, which was neutral ground between the English and American lines. André landed from the sloop-of-war *Vulture*, and the last particulars of the treachery were settled at the promised interview. The *Vulture*, however, was driven some distance down the river by the American batteries, and, unable to return to her, André was obliged to cross the Hudson and

---

2. What did Knyphausen attempt? Who opposed him? 3. What was the character of General Arnold? What was his plot? 4. Through whom did he negotiate with the British?





attempt to reach New York by land, passing the American lines in disguise.

5. **Capture of André.**—This rendered him liable to be hanged as a spy if he was caught. Arnold, however, had given him an order instructing the sentries to pass “Mr. John Anderson” on public business. Near Tarrytown he



CAPTURE OF MAJOR ANDRÉ.

was arrested by three patriot militia-men, Paulding, Van Wart, and Williams, whom he at first mistook for Tory refugees. An incautious expression aroused their suspicions; they refused to recognize Arnold's pass, and insisted upon searching their prisoner. In his boots they found a plan of West Point and other papers which disclosed

How came André to enter the American lines? 5. How was he captured? What was found on his person? How did his captors behave?



the whole plot ; and, rejecting the large reward which he offered them for his liberty, they conducted him to the nearest American post, at Northeastle.

6. The officer in command there, not suspecting Arnold, sent intelligence of the capture to that officer at West Point, and forwarded all the papers to Washington. Thus Arnold was warned and escaped to the *Vulture* before his crime was known. Washington, accompanied by Lafayette, arrived unexpectedly at West Point at the time Arnold was fleeing down the river, and there he received the despatches from Northeastle which told the shameful story. The fugitive was at once pursued, but it was too late.

7. **Execution of André.**—The greatest pity was felt for André, but under the laws of war there could be no hesitation as to his fate. He was tried by a board of fourteen generals, with Greene at the head, condemned as a spy, and hanged at Tappan, near the Hudson, October 2. Each of his captors received from Congress a silver medal and a life pension of \$200.

8. Arnold received about \$30,000 for his perfidy. He bore arms against his country with the rank of brigadier-general ; but he was despised and insulted by the English to whom he had sold himself, and he died in London in obscurity. His young wife, whom he left at West Point, was treated with the greatest kindness by Washington, and with consideration by all the people. She wished to separate from her unworthy husband and remain with her father in Philadelphia, but the executive council suspected her of complicity in the plot, and she was forced against her will to join Arnold in New York.

---

6. What mistake did the officer at Northeastle make ? How did Arnold escape ? 7. What was the fate of André ? 8. What became of Arnold ? What is said of his wife ?



## CHAPTER XXXIV.

ARRIVAL OF COUNT ROCHAMBEAU—GREENE'S ABLE CAMPAIGN IN THE SOUTH—THE COWPENS—GUILFORD COURT-HOUSE—EUTAW SPRINGS.

1. **More Aid from France.**—Just at the time of Arnold's treason the Americans were encouraged by the arrival of succor from France. Lafayette had spent the winter at the French court, where, aided by Queen Marie Antoinette, he pleaded the cause of the patriots with great ability and enthusiasm, and in the spring he had the satisfaction of returning to Washington's camp with the news that another French fleet, commanded by Admiral de Ternay (D'Estaing had returned home), and an army under Count Rochambeau, would shortly sail for America.

2. Rochambeau and De Ternay arrived at Newport in July, 1780, with the first division of the troops (six thousand men) and a part of the fleet; the rest were to follow very soon. They were to recognize Washington as commander-in-chief, and in order to avoid disputes the king sent the American general a high commission in the French service. The most cordial feeling prevailed between the allies, and French officers who took part in this expedition have left interesting eulogies on Washington and his principal associates.

3. Admiral Arbuthnot, who now commanded the British fleet at New York, had been re-enforced, and was able to blockade the French at Newport, while the second division of the auxiliary force was blockaded in the harbor of Brest, in France. For the present, therefore, the aid of Rochambeau was of no avail.

---

1. What had Lafayette done? What powerful friend had the Americans at the French court? 2. Who arrived in 1780? What is said of the French? How did the British meet them?



4. **Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line.**—The troops at Morristown suffered a great deal during the next winter (1780–81), and complained bitterly at not receiving their pay; besides which there was a dispute as to the time for which they had been enlisted. On New Year's day, 1781, the men of the Pennsylvania line, thirteen hundred strong, marched out of camp and started for Philadelphia with arms in their hands to demand redress from Congress. General Wayne attempted to stop them, but they threatened to run him through with the bayonet. A captain was killed and several other officers were wounded.

5. At Princeton the agents of Sir Henry Clinton urged them to desert to the British, but the soldiers, though they were mutineers, were not traitors; they arrested the agents and delivered them to General Wayne as spies. A committee of Congress was sent to treat with the troops, and it was agreed to accept the understanding of the men as to their term of enlistment, to provide them with clothing, and to make certain arrangements for their pay. A dangerous revolt was thus checked, but nearly all the Pennsylvanians obtained their discharge, and the effect of this successful mutiny upon the rest of the army was very bad. A rising of New Jersey regiments a few days later was put down by force, and two of the ringleaders were shot.

6. Congress, startled by these events, made fresh exertions to raise money and supplies and improve the condition of Washington's miserable little army; but the efficiency of the soldiers was injured by the shortness of their term of service, and the finances were dreadfully embarrassed by the depreciation of the Continental

---

4. What was the cause of trouble with the Pennsylvania troops? What did they do? 5. How did they treat the British agents? 6. What did Congress do?



money, which had now fallen so low that sixty dollars in paper were worth only one dollar in coin.

**7. Arnold in Virginia.**—In January, 1781, Arnold took sixteen hundred British troops from New York, occupied Portsmouth, Virginia, ravaged the James River, and burned a part of Richmond. Thomas Jefferson, then governor of the State, called out the militia, and Arnold fell back to Portsmouth. Here Washington endeavored to capture the traitor, of whom he was anxious that an example should be made. Lafayette was sent to attack the place by land while De Ternay's ships assailed it by sea. The British squadron pursued, however, and the French fleet, defeated off the entrance to Chesapeake Bay (March 18), was obliged to return to Newport. Arnold was then heavily re-enforced from New York, and Lafayette's march was arrested at Annapolis.

**8. Campaign in the South.**—The direction of affairs in the South had now been entrusted to Major-General Greene, who had always been Washington's first choice for that important duty. Stenben aided him in the reorganization of an army. Henry Lee with his famous legion was detached to serve under him; and he had the assistance also of General Morgan, an enterprising officer already in South Carolina with an independent command.

**9.** At the beginning of January Tarleton with the light division was sent against Morgan, while Cornwallis moved with the main body from his camp between the Broad and Catawba Rivers to separate Morgan from Greene. Penetrating this design, Morgan retreated rapidly towards North Carolina.

**10. Battle of the Cowpens.**—At a place called the Cow-

---

7. What did Arnold do? What did Washington attempt? 8. Who succeeded to the command at the South? Who aided him? 9. How did the campaign begin?

pens, three miles south of the boundary line and not far from King's Mountain, he resolved to stand and give battle (January 17, 1781). The American militia were easily routed, and the British began to pursue them in some disorder when the Continentals suddenly poured in a deadly fire, and Morgan's horse at the same time charged upon the British cavalry. Tarleton was utterly defeated with the loss of more than six hundred men and all his artillery and baggage, while Morgan's loss was only eighty. Congress caused a medal to be struck in commemoration of this brilliant affair.

11. Morgan now hastened his march eastward to meet Greene, and Cornwallis, collecting the fragments of Tarleton's division, and adding also to the main body a large force just arrived from New York, made extraordinary exertions to overtake him before the Americans could unite. In order to move faster the British burned their stores and superfluous baggage. They reached the Catawba River only two hours after Morgan had passed it. A sudden rise of the water, in consequence of rains, delayed Cornwallis in crossing, and gave the Americans a fresh start. At the Yadkin, where Greene, who had hurried forward, was in personal command of Morgan's detachment, high water again favored the American retreat. Greene had not fairly got over when the British advance came up, but the American commander had secured all the boats.

12. The two divisions of Greene were now joined in Central North Carolina, but they numbered all told only a little more than two thousand men, and were quite unfit to meet the larger and better-appointed army of the enemy.

---

10. Where did Morgan resolve to fight? The result? 11. Describe the march of both parties. Who took command of the Americans at the Yadkin? 12. How many men had Greene?



Cornwallis turned northward with the intention of cutting them off from Virginia, but Greene baffled this movement by a rapid march in the same direction.

13. Occupying Wilmington and Newbern, the British overran North Carolina and endeavored to rouse and organize the Tories. To check these operations Greene returned from Virginia, keeping the country in perpetual alarm by skirmishing parties and never encamping twice in the same place. After a while, being joined by a body of six weeks' volunteers from North Carolina and Virginia, he determined to offer battle.

14. **Battle of Guilford Court-House.**—The engagement took place at Guilford Court-House, near the present town of Greensborough, North Carolina, March 15, 1781. Greene drew up his army in three lines, the North Carolina militia (many of them Tories serving under compulsion) in front; the Virginia militia next, with a row of sentinels behind them to shoot the first who ran; and the Continentals in the rear. The first line threw down their arms and ran at the first charge. The second stood for a while, but could not long resist the British bayonet. The Continentals checked the onset in gallant style, and drove the enemy so hard that Cornwallis only extricated a part of his regiments by playing his artillery full in the face of his own men and cutting down friend and foe together.

15. After the desertion of so many of his men Greene was in no condition to continue the battle, and accordingly retreated. Cornwallis had suffered too much to pursue; on the contrary, he was obliged to fall back towards Wilmington. The result of the battle, therefore, was decidedly to the advantage of the Americans.

---

13. What was the next movement of Cornwallis? How did Greene check it? 15. Describe the battle of Guilford Court-House. 16. What was the result? To whose advantage was it?

16. Greene now formed the bold plan of marching past Cornwallis, invading South Carolina, and attacking the chain of British posts which extended from Camden westward to Fort Ninety-six, and thence to Augusta and Charleston. He was so far on the way towards Camden before Cornwallis found it out that pursuit was useless. The British commander then resolved to imitate Greene's policy and throw himself upon the State of Virginia. Greene wisely left Virginia to her fate and continued his march.

17. **Greene in South Carolina.**—Fort Watson, on the Santee, was captured by Marion and "Light-Horse Harry" Lee, April 23. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, two days later, Greene had a sharp engagement with Lord Rawdon, without decisive result, but Rawdon was soon forced by other movements to evacuate Camden. Fort Motte, on the Santee, was taken by Marion and Lee, Orangeburg by Sumter, Fort Granby by Lee, Augusta by Lee and Pickens. Fort Ninety-six, unsuccessfully assaulted by Greene, was soon afterwards abandoned, and about the beginning of July operations were suspended on account of the intense heat, leaving with Greene all the fruits of victory.

18. Strengthening and supplying his army to some extent during a six weeks' rest, Greene took the field again in August, and, crossing the Santee, marched down the right bank of that river, the enemy retiring before him. At Eutaw Springs, September 8, 1781, he found the main body of the British, under Col. Stuart (Rawdon having sailed for England), drawn up to give battle. A severe engagement took place, each side losing about six hundred men and

- 
16. What bold plan did Greene form? How did Cornwallis act?  
17. Describe the American successes in the spring and summer. 18.  
Who were the commanders at Eutaw Springs?





both claiming the victory. Colonel William Washington, a gallant American cavalry commander, and a distant kinsman of General George Washington, was wounded and made prisoner in this battle. The advantage was really with the Americans, for Stuart was thenceforth restricted to the narrow tract between the Cooper and Ashley rivers. Greene, on the other hand, was crippled by the want of ammunition and shoes, and the desertion of his militia.

19. Retiring to the hills of the Santee, he left Marion, Sumter, and Lee to harass the enemy. By the beginning of the next year the British retained only Charleston and Savannah. Greene was posted near the former city, and Wayne was watching the other. The campaign, fought with a small, ill-furnished, and disaffected army in the midst of a Tory population, restored two States to the Union, and called forth from Washington the highest praise of Greene's fortitude and ability.

---

## CHAPTER XXXV.

THE END OF THE WAR—SIEGE OF YORKTOWN—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS—TREATY OF PEACE AND ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

1. **Cornwallis in Virginia.**—While Greene was thus subduing the Southern States, Cornwallis, effecting a junction with the British troops already in Virginia, ravaged the James River and marched beyond Richmond, where Lafayette was posted with a much smaller force. He wished to prevent Lafayette from uniting with Wayne,

---

Describe the battle. The result. 19. What was the effect of the campaign? What did Washington think of Greene? 1. What was Cornwallis doing in Virginia?



who was passing through Virginia on his way to join Greene; but this he was unable to do, and after several unimportant affairs he retired to the mouth of the James River, with the intention of embarking a part of his troops for New York.

2. Abandoning this purpose in consequence of fresh orders from Sir Henry Clinton, he transferred his whole army to the peninsula between the James and York rivers (August, 1781), where the fleet could easily reach him, and he would hold, as it was wrongly believed, a favorable position for further operations. The British had destroyed in the invasion of Virginia about \$10,000,000 worth of property.

3. **Affairs at the North.**—At the North the whole number of soldiers under Washington's command was not as large as the number of Tories alone in the service of the British. Food was very scarce. It was almost impossible to obtain recruits, the States being nearly exhausted. The French army was still at Newport, kept inactive by the presence of the British fleet. The difficulties about money became more and more serious. The Continental bills fell rapidly. A dollar in that currency was soon worth only one cent; finally it took a thousand dollars in paper to equal one dollar in silver; and before the end of the year Continental bills, of which there were more than \$100,000,000 in circulation, were worth nothing at all.

4. In this extremity the States were relieved by their good allies, the French. When Robert Morris had exhausted all his own means and credit, he obtained a little timely aid from Count Rochambeau, and soon afterward money,

---

2. What did he do next? Why did he go there? 3. What was the condition of affairs at the North? How did the Continental money fall? 4. How did the States obtain relief?



clothing, arms, and ammunition arrived from France, where Franklin and Laurens had succeeded in negotiating a loan from the Government.

5. About the same time (August, 1781) the French admiral, De Grasse, who had been engaged against the English in the West Indies, came north to co-operate for a little while with Washington, and it was resolved, instead of carrying out an attack upon New York which had been planned, to strike a hard blow at Cornwallis in Virginia.

6. The army of Rochambeau marched from Newport to meet Washington in the Highlands. Their destination was kept secret, and the movements of both armies were so artfully contrived that Clinton supposed they were going to attack New York. He did not discover their object until they had reached the Delaware.

7. **Arnold in New England.**—It was then too late to help Cornwallis, and Sir Henry accordingly sent an expedition under Benedict Arnold to ravage Connecticut, in the hope of thus forcing Washington to turn back. Arnold plundered and burned New London (September 6), and a part of his command took Fort Griswold, at Groton, on the opposite side of the Thames River. After the surrender the brave American Colonel Ledyard and about sixty of his men were massacred by the victors. The officer responsible for this disgraceful crime was Major Bromfield, a New Jersey loyalist.

8. The militia of Connecticut quickly assembled, and Arnold hastened back to New York. This marauding expedition into his native State was his last appearance in American history. It did not have the effect which Sir

---

5. Who arrived to aid Washington? What was undertaken? 6. What did Clinton suppose? 7. Describe the burning of New London. What disgraceful affair happened at Groton? 8. What of Arnold?



Henry Clinton intended, for Washington kept on his march.

**9. The Allies in Virginia.**—Lafayette, who had conducted himself in the meantime with the greatest skill and gallantry in Virginia, disposed his command so as to prevent the escape of Cornwallis into the Carolinas, occupying the upper end of the peninsula, with his headquarters at Williamsburg, while Cornwallis was at Yorktown, only a few miles distant. It was a fatal blunder of the British general to place his army in this position, because if his ships were beaten off he had no retreat; but Cornwallis acted under the instructions of Clinton.

**10.** Admiral Graves, who commanded the fleet at New York, knew that De Grasse was coming, and sailed to meet him. But he was too late. The French were already at anchor in Chesapeake Bay, and had blocked up the James and York rivers and landed re-enforcements for Lafayette. In a naval engagement off the capes of the Chesapeake the English were badly damaged, so that they returned to New York to refit, and in the meantime De Grasse was joined by a number of the French ships from Newport.

**11.** The armies of Washington and Rochambeau marched to the head of Chesapeake Bay, and there went aboard the French ships. By the end of September they were united with Lafayette's division at Williamsburg, and Cornwallis was invested on all sides.

**12. Siege of Yorktown.**—The peninsula is about eight miles wide at Yorktown, and across this neck of land the British had constructed a line of fortifications. The siege was pushed with great rapidity. On the 14th of

---

9. What did Lafayette do? What was the blunder of the British?  
10. What did the French fleet do? 11. Where did Washington and Rochambeau unite?



October two of the British redoubts were taken by assault simultaneously, one by the French, the other by the Americans. Cornwallis attempted a sally, but it failed. He then tried to escape across the York River, with the hope of breaking through the lines on that side and pushing for New York, but a violent storm dispersed his boats and the desperate scheme had to be abandoned.

**13. Surrender of Cornwallis.**—The result of an assault could not be doubtful, and on the 17th of October, 1781, Cornwallis proposed to Washington a suspension of hostilities to arrange terms of surrender. On the 19th the whole British army (seven thousand men) marched out and laid down their arms. Over one hundred cannon were given up and \$11,000 in money, and at the same time the British vessels of war in the rivers, with about eight hundred sailors, surrendered to Admiral de Grasse. The allied army at the siege of Yorktown consisted of 5,500 Continentals, 3,500 militia, and 7,000 French.

**14.** On the very day of the surrender Sir Henry Clinton sailed from New York with thirty-five ships and seven thousand troops to rescue his unfortunate lieutenant. When he reached the Chesapeake and heard of the surrender he went back again.

**15.** Washington wished now to attack Charleston, but De Grasse felt obliged to sail immediately for the West Indies. The Continentals, therefore, except a detachment sent to strengthen Greene, returned to New Jersey and the Highlands, and Rochambeau remained at Williamsburg. But the surrender of Cornwallis was regarded everywhere as the final triumph of American independence.

---

12. How were the British redoubts taken? What did Cornwallis next attempt? 13. Describe the surrender. What was the number of the allies? 14. What did Clinton do? 15. The next movements?



16. The country gave way to transports of joy. There were rejoicings in all the camps and illuminations in the cities, and Congress voted honors to Washington, Rochambeau, De Grasse, and others, and proclaimed a day of general thanksgiving. When the news was told the British minister, Lord North, "he took it," said an eye-witness, "as he would have taken a ball in the breast, for he opened his arms, exclaiming wildly as he paced up and down the apartment, 'It is all over!'"

17. **End of the War of Independence.**—The obstinate King George III. was still resolved "never to consent to a peace at the expense of a separation from America," but the temper of the English people was very different. The city of London petitioned the king to put a stop to this "unnatural and unfortunate war"; a resolution in favor of peace, supported by Fox, the younger Pitt, Barré, Burke, and others, passed the House of Commons February 27, 1782; the king was compelled to dismiss Lord North and to accept a ministry headed by the Marquis of Rockingham,\* who was committed to the policy of peace; and commissioners were appointed on both sides to negotiate a treaty, hostilities being stopped in the interval.

18. The commissioners met in Paris, those of the United States being John Adams, John Jay, Benjamin Franklin, and Henry Laurens. A preliminary treaty was signed November 30, 1782. Congress ratified the action of the commissioners in March, and a proclamation an-

---

\* Rockingham died three months later, and his successor, Lord Shelburne, was the minister under whose administration the independence of the United States was acknowledged.

---

16. How did Americans receive the news? What did Lord North say? 17. What followed in England? Who advised peace? 18. Where was the treaty negotiated? Who were the American commissioners?



nouncing the end of the war was published in Washington's camp at Newburg on the 19th of April, 1783, just eight years to a day after the battle of Lexington.

19. Deliberations upon various points, however, lasted some time longer, and it was not till September 3, 1783, that the definitive treaty was signed at Paris. Peace was formally concluded at the same time between Great Britain and the other powers that had been at war with her—France, Spain, and Holland.

20. **Disaffection in the Army.**—During the progress of the negotiations the temper of the American army was far from satisfactory. Unpaid and often suffering from absolute hunger, the soldiers became restless under their wrongs, and a portion of them seem to have been anxious to establish a military despotism. In May, 1782, a letter was addressed to Washington advising him to declare himself king—a proposal to which he returned an indignant reply.

21. In the following March an anonymous appeal was circulated in the camp at Newburg, advising the soldiers to organize for the purpose of enforcing their demands upon Congress. To counteract this movement Washington called all the officers together, and, making them a sensible and patriotic address, succeeded in dispelling the danger. Afterwards he induced Congress to give every officer on his discharge a sum equal to five years' pay.

22. Congress and the States had both treated the army badly; but it should be remembered in their excuse that the country was very poor, and that, after spending nearly \$100,000,000 during the war, the treasury found itself at the end about \$40,000,000 in debt. This did

---

19. When was the treaty signed? 20. Of what did the American soldiers complain? What proposal was made to Washington? His answer? 21. What occurred at Newburg? What did Washington do?



not include the outlay of the separate States, which amounted to \$60,000,000 or \$70,000,000 more.

**23.** On the 25th of November, 1783, the last of the British evacuated New York, and Washington's troops marched in by way of King's Bridge. On the 2d of November Washington issued his farewell address to the army; on December 4 he took leave of his officers at New York; on December 23 he formally resigned his commission to Congress, then in session at Annapolis, and immediately retired to his home at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac, in Virginia.

---

22. What had the war cost? 23. When was New York evacuated? When and where did Washington take leave of the army? What did he do at Annapolis?



# PART FOURTH.

---

## THE UNION.

---

### CHAPTER XXXVI.

#### THE CONSTITUTION—ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON—DISPUTES WITH ENGLAND.

1. **The Confederation.**—The States were governed during the latter part of the war by “Articles of Confederation,” proposed by Congress at the time of the Declaration of Independence, but not adopted until several years later. Nearly all power was reserved to the separate States; Congress had little authority; there was no president or other executive chief; and it was soon found that this system produced endless confusion. In particular it left the country without means of providing for the common defence or regulating commerce or the finances.

2. **Shays's Rebellion.**—An extensive rebellion in Massachusetts, led by an ex-captain in the Continental army named Daniel Shays (December, 1786), and directed against the collection of taxes, etc., was put down by a militia force under General Lincoln after a short but very active campaign. This served to strengthen the popular conviction that some change was necessary in the form of government, and a convention to revise the Articles of Con-

---

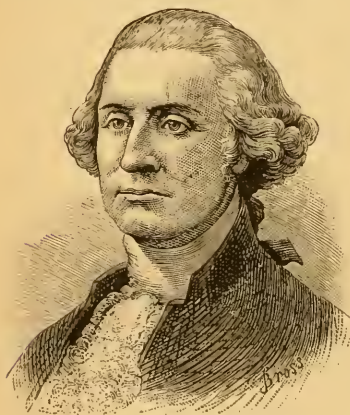
1. How were the States governed at this time? What was the character of this government? 2. What is said of Shays's rebellion? The effect on the public mind?



federation met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. Washington was unanimously chosen president of this assembly.

**3. The Constitution.**—Instead of amending the old Articles, the convention advised a new Constitution. It was to go into operation March 4, 1789, if two-thirds of the States gave their assent. After much discussion it was ratified by all the States—by Delaware first in December, 1787, and by Rhode Island last in May, 1790. On the 4th of March, 1789, eleven of the thirteen States had approved it, and on that day accordingly the old Confederation came to an end and the Union began.

**4.** New York was selected as a temporary seat of government, and the old City Hall in Wall Street was given up to the use of Congress. Electors were chosen in January to cast the votes of their respective States for President and Vice-President.



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

**5. Washington President.**—When the votes were counted it appeared that George Washington was unanimously chosen President, and John Adams was chosen Vice-President. Washington's journey from Mount Vernon to New

York was like a triumphal procession. The people turned out everywhere to show their gratitude and respect towards him. At Elizabethtown he went aboard a splen-

---

Where did the convention meet? Who was its president? 3. What was done? When did the Constitution take effect? 4. Where was the capital? 5. Who were chosen President and Vice-President?



did barge constructed for the occasion and magnificently decorated. It was rowed by thirteen masters of vessels, dressed in white, and commanded by Commodore Nicholson. Other barges followed. As they proceeded through New York Bay a multitude of vessels decked with flags surrounded them, thousands of boats appeared upon the waters, and the ships of war of different nations manned their yards, spread their colors, and fired salutes. The inauguration took place on the 30th of April in the midst of universal rejoicings.

6. Thomas Jefferson was appointed Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton Secretary of the Treasury, and General Henry Knox Secretary of War. With the aid of these able men Washington administered the government wisely, proving himself hardly less valuable to his country in peace than he had been in war. The skill of Hamilton in reducing the finances to order and restoring the ruined credit of the nation deserves to be especially remembered. The seat of government was transferred to Philadelphia in 1790, with the understanding that in 1800 it should be permanently established in a new city on the banks of the Potomac.

7. **Indian War in the Northwest.**—The Indian tribes on the Ohio became very troublesome to the settlers who now began to pour into the West; the emigrants were waylaid and murdered as they descended the river in boats. General Harmer, who was sent against the savages in 1790, was defeated near the present site of Fort Wayne, Indiana; and General St. Clair met with a similar disaster the next year.

8. General Wayne (“Mad Anthony”) was then de-

---

Describe Washington’s journey. When was he inaugurated? 6. Who were his cabinet officers? To what city was the capital removed in 1790? 7. Who were defeated by the Indians of the Northwest?



spatched to the Indian country. As soon as the Indian chief, Little Turtle, heard that Wayne was coming, he advised his people to make peace, because "the white chief never slept." They did not follow his advice, and Wayne devastated their villages, sweeping everything before him till he reached the Maumee River, in the north-west corner of Ohio. There he won a great victory near the site of Maumee City, August 20, 1794, and obliged the Indians to sue for terms. By the treaty concluded at Greenfield the next year the United States acquired from the savages a large tract for settlement in the present States of Ohio and Indiana.

**9. Washington's Second Term.**—The second election

for President occurred in 1792, Washington's term ending on the 4th of March, 1793. Washington was again the unanimous choice of the electors, and Adams was re-elected Vice-President. Political parties, however, had become sharply divided. The Federalists, among whom were Washington, Adams, and Hamilton, favored the Constitution as it was, and believed in a strong central



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

government. The Anti-Federalists, known also as Democrats or Republicans (those two names being used at that time indifferently to designate the same party), wished to

---

8. Who put an end to the war? What did the United States gain by the treaty? 9. Who were elected in 1792? What were the two political parties? Who were the leaders?



limit the power of the federal Government and give more independent authority to the States. Their ablest leader was Jefferson.

10. The most terrible scenes of the French Revolution were enacted during the first years of the American republic. King Louis XVI. was beheaded a few weeks before the end of Washington's first term, and Queen Marie Antoinette, who had so warmly befriended America during the struggle for independence, was executed a few months afterward. Jefferson and the Anti-Federalists sympathized strongly with the French revolutionists, and wished to aid them in their struggle against the European powers. Washington and the Federalists insisted upon preserving a strict neutrality.

11. In April, 1793, Citizen Genest (*zhen-áy*) arrived in America as minister from the French republic. He fitted out privateers in American ports, tried to embroil the United States in war against England and Spain, violently attacked President Washington, and otherwise misbehaved himself so that the President requested the French Government to recall him.

12. This proper and dignified step shook for a time even Washington's popularity. The Jeffersonian party had shown extraordinary favor to Genest as the representative of a French republic, and at public receptions held in his honor crowds of people appeared wearing the French revolutionary cockade. Calmer opinions, however, soon began to prevail, and the bad conduct of Genest helped to convince the country that Washington was right.

13. **Troubles with England.**—The party spirit aroused

---

10. What was the condition of France at this time? Which party sympathized with the revolutionists? 11. Who was sent to America by the French republic? How did he behave? What did Washington do?



by this affair was embittered by the unjust conduct of the British Government, which, in spite of the treaty of 1783, still kept possession of the forts in the Northwest. British men-of-war cruising against the French had also committed great injuries upon American commerce, confiscating French property found on American vessels, seizing all vessels which attempted to carry grain to France, and searching American ships in order to carry off sailors supposed to be British subjects. Even those who had become naturalized in America were not spared, and sometimes native Americans were taken and compelled to serve in the British navy.

14. A strong disposition to go to war again with England was growing up when Washington appointed John Jay a special envoy to London to arrange the disputes. Jay succeeded in negotiating a treaty (1794), which settled some of the causes of complaint, but left the question of the impressment of seamen to be a cause of future trouble. The treaty was ratified after much opposition. It greatly incensed the French, and they in their turn began to plunder American commerce.

15. **The Whiskey Insurrection.**—In 1794 a violent disturbance was created in Western Pennsylvania by the refusal of the people to pay a tax on whiskey. Secret societies were organized to resist the collection of the duty, the officers of the law were attacked, and the outrages soon amounted to an insurrection. The President called out fifteen thousand militia from Pennsylvania and other States, and this display of force quelled the revolt without a battle.

16. During the political quarrels of his administration

---

13. What were the causes of complaint against England? 14. What course did Washington adopt? 15. Give an account of the whiskey insurrection. How did the President put it down?



Washington had not escaped abuse and misrepresentation. He was even accused of wishing to establish a monarchy; but his just and noble character at last conquered even his enemies. He would probably have been unanimously re-elected for a third term had he not refused to let his name be used.

17. In September, 1796, he published his famous Farewell Address, in which he announced his fixed resolve to retire to private life, and left to his countrymen a precious political legacy. He warned them especially against the dangers of disunion, and besought them to frown indignantly "upon the first dawning of every attempt to alienate any portion of our country from the rest."

18. The whole people seemed now to concur in testifying their respect and affection for their great leader. Congress and the State Legislatures passed appropriate resolutions on the occasion of his retirement. On the 4th of March, 1797, when he left the Capitol at the close of his term, the multitude pressed around him in the street and followed him to his door; there he turned to say farewell, but his emotions were too great for utterance, and, with tears in his eyes, he expressed his thanks and regard by silent gestures.

---

16. Had Washington been slandered? 17. When did he publish his Farewell Address? What excellent advice did he give? 18. Give an account of his retirement.



## CHAPTER XXXVII.

## SETTLEMENT OF THE WEST.

1. **Organization and Settlement of the West.**—By the treaty of 1783 the Mississippi River was recognized as the western boundary of the United States, but nearly half of the territory included within the national limits was unoccupied and unorganized. Several of the older States—Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia—claimed, under their colonial charters or other titles, the proprietorship of an undefined tract of western lands. They were induced to cede to the general Government the jurisdiction over all this country, Virginia and Connecticut, however, reserving the title to 7,000,000 acres in the present State of Ohio.

2. One of the important acts of Congress under the Confederation was the adoption of an ordinance for the government of this ceded district (1787). It erected the whole region north of the Ohio into the Northwest Territory, and on the proposal of Jefferson it was enacted that slavery should never be tolerated in the territory or any of the States to be formed out of it. In this region are now included Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin, and a part of Minnesota.

3. In Illinois there were already several small towns, Cahokia, Kaskaskia, and some other settlements having been founded by the French under La Salle nearly a hundred years before. Vincennes, in Indiana, had been settled by the French about 1702. There were also

---

1. What was the western boundary of the United States? What disposition did the older States make of their western lands? 2. What did Congress do with these lands? 3. What French settlements existed in the West?





French settlements in Michigan, at the outlets of Lakes Michigan, Superior, and Huron. Ohio was a wilderness; the first permanent settlement in that State was made at Marietta in 1788, and named in honor of Queen Marie Antoinette.

4. Ohio was divided off and formed into a separate territory in 1800, and the name of Indiana was given to all the rest of the Northwest Territory.

5. Kentucky originally constituted a county of Virginia. At one time a party among the people wished to form themselves into an independent sovereignty—a scheme which was secretly promoted by the Spaniards. In 1790 the territory was separated from Virginia, and the next year it was admitted to the Union as a State.

6. Tennessee was a part of North Carolina. The inhabitants organized themselves in 1785 as the State of Franklin, or Frankland, but North Carolina never acquiesced in this arrangement, and the new State fell to pieces about 1788. In 1789 it was ceded to the general Government, and the next year it was organized as the Territory South of the Ohio. It became a State of the Union in 1796.

7. Alabama and Mississippi were divided from Georgia in 1798, and erected into the territory of Mississippi. This territory did not reach to the Gulf of Mexico, for those portions of Alabama and Mississippi which now extend to the gulf belonged at that time to Florida, which was the property of Spain. The northern boundary of Florida was unsettled, Spain claiming the east bank of the Mississippi, at least as far as the present site of Vicksburg.

---

3. What was the first settlement in Ohio? 4. How was the Northwest Territory divided in 1800? 5. Give an account of Kentucky. 6. Tennessee. 7. Alabama and Mississippi.



8. **Vermont.**—Vermont had long been in dispute between New York and New Hampshire. A few years before the Revolution the British Government decided in favor of the claim of New York, but the Green Mountain Boys, under Ethan Allen and Seth Warner, violently resisted the New York authorities. In 1777 the people declared themselves independent. The quarrel, however, continued till 1791, when New York sold all her claims for \$30,000, and Vermont was admitted to the Union as a State.

9. At the end of Washington's second term, therefore, the Union consisted of sixteen States, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Vermont having been added to the original thirteen. Emigration into the western country went on with great rapidity, and, in spite of trouble from the Indians, flourishing settlements began to appear in the midst of the wildernesses which are now rich States.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE UNITED STATES AT THE END OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. **The Church in the United States.**—At the time of the Revolution there were very few Catholic churches in the United States. We have already seen how the Catholic religion was planted in Maryland, but even there the members of the faith formed but a small minority of the population. Maryland, however, became the cradle of the American clergy, being the seat of the first bish-

---

8. Vermont. When was Vermont admitted to the Union? 9. How many States were there at the end of Washington's second term? 1. What is said of the Catholic churches during the Revolution?



opric, and the asylum of a number of zealous Jesuits and other priests, who went thence to various parts of the Union.

2. In Pennsylvania, at the close of the war of independence, there had been churches or mission stations for many years at Philadelphia, Lancaster, Conewago, and other places. The venerable Father Farmer, who died at Philadelphia in 1786, labored in Pennsylvania for more than forty years. In 1790 the Catholics were so numerous that Matthew Carey ventured to publish in Philadelphia the first edition of the Douay Bible printed in America.

3. There were Jesuit missionaries among the Indians of the northern and interior parts of the State of New York from an early period (see pp. 75, 106), and three fathers of the same society were settled in New York City between 1683 and 1690 (see p. 100); but at the time of the Revolution the number of Catholics in the town was insignificant. The spirit of the colony was bitterly intolerant, and in the first constitution of the State, adopted in 1777, Catholics were excluded from the privilege of naturalization. This clause was inserted at the instance of John Jay, afterwards chief-justice of the United States.

4. The French posts in the Mississippi valley were regularly attended by chaplains, so that when the western settlements came into the possession of the United States the Catholic religion had already a foothold among them. About the middle of the last century there were several Jesuit stations in Indiana, with a church at Vincennes. The Jesuits, however, were afterwards withdrawn, and for

---

Of the Church in Maryland? 2. In Pennsylvania? 3. Among the Indians of New York? In New York City? What was done to Catholics by the first constitution of the State?



many years the only priest in the territory now constituting Indiana and Illinois was the Rev. Mr. Gibault, who was vicar-general for that region under the Bishop of Quebec. He lived at Kaskaskia, in the southwestern part of Illinois.

5. In 1778 Father Gibault induced the French inhabitants of Vincennes to declare in favor of the United States against Great Britain, and he administered the oath of allegiance to them in the church. He also had great influence in keeping the Indians friendly to the American cause.

6. The Catholics during the war of independence were practically unanimous in supporting the patriot side. They contributed many eminent men to the service of the country, including General Moylan in the army, Commodore Barry in the navy, and Charles Carroll, Daniel Carroll, and Thomas Fitzsimmons in Congress; they raised an Irish regiment in the Pennsylvania line; and on Washington's election to the Presidency they presented an address of congratulation, to which the general replied: "I presume that your fellow-citizens will not forget the patriotic part which you took in the accomplishment of their revolution and the establishment of their government, or the important assistance which they received from a nation in which the Roman Catholic faith is professed."

7. The patriotism of Catholics in America and the generous aid given to the American cause by Catholic France helped to break down bigotry. At the close of the war a solemn *Te Deum* was chanted in St. Joseph's Church, Philadelphia, by request of the French ambassa-

---

4. How was the Church planted in the West? 5. What did Father Gibault do during the Revolution? 6. What was the conduct of Catholics during the war? Name some of their distinguished men.



dor, and Washington, Lafayette, and many distinguished official persons were present.

8. Immediately after the peace Mass was celebrated at stated intervals in New York City by Father Farmer, who used to come from Philadelphia for the purpose, and hold service in a loft over a carpenter's shop. The first church, St. Peter's, in Barclay Street, was begun in 1786. The first priest settled in the city after the war was Father Charles Whelan, an Irish Franciscan, who had been a chaplain in the French fleet.

9. At the date of the first national census (1790) it was estimated by Bishop Carroll that the Catholics of the United States numbered 30,000, or one in every hundred of the total population. There were about 16,000 in Maryland, 7,000 in Pennsylvania, 5,500 among the French settlements of the West, and only 1,500 in all the rest of the country.

10. **Increase of the Clergy.**—In 1789 Father John Carroll, who had for some years administered the affairs of the American Church with the rank of prefect-apostolic, was appointed bishop, and Baltimore was created the first see in the United States. The diocese embraced the whole Union, and contained thirty or forty priests.

11. The first care of the new bishop was to provide for Catholic education. He had already begun the erection of Georgetown College (1788), and it was opened by the Jesuits in 1791. He induced the Sulpitians in Paris to send over Father Nagot with several assistants to open a theological seminary in Baltimore (1791). The first community of nuns in the United States was established by

---

7. What lessened the bigotry of the Protestants? 8. What was the first church in New York City? 9. How many Catholics were there in 1790? In what States? 10. Who was the first American bishop? 11. What did he do for education?



Carmelites in 1790 at Port Tobacco, Maryland, whence they removed to Baltimore after a few years and opened a school.\*

12. The Reign of Terror in France drove a great many estimable French priests to the United States, where Bishop Carroll gave them welcome and employment. Among the most distinguished of these exiles who arrived between 1791 and 1796 were Messrs. Dubois (afterwards Bishop of New York), Flaget (first Bishop of Bardstown and Louisville), David (coadjutor to Bishop Flaget), Dubourg (afterwards Bishop of New Orleans), Maréchal (who became Archbishop of Baltimore), Richard (a missionary in Michigan and delegate in Congress from that territory), Ciquard (who devoted himself to the Indians in Maine), Garnier, Tessier, Barrière, Matignon (settled for many years in Boston), and Cheverus (first Bishop of Boston and afterwards Cardinal Archbishop of Bordeaux).

13. Mr. Stephen Badin, another of the French exiles, received orders in Baltimore in 1793, being the first priest ordained in the United States. He became a missionary in the West. The second priest ordained in the United States (1795) was the celebrated Russian Prince Demetrius Augustine Gallitzin, who gave up an illustrious position and a vast fortune to become a missionary under the name of "Father Smith" in Western Pennsylvania. He founded a Catholic colony at Loretto, in Cambria County, giving away lands to the settlers and spending about \$150,000 in the charitable enterprise. He is called the "Apostle of the Alleghanies."

---

\* There were Ursulines much earlier in New Orleans, but that place did not then belong to the United States.

---

12. Name some of the French priests who fled to America. What became of them? 13. Who was the first priest ordained in this country? The date? The second priest? Give an account of him.



14. Father Leonard Neale, a native of Maryland, was consecrated coadjutor to Bishop Carroll (1800), and succeeded him in the archbishopric of Baltimore. Neale and Carroll were both Jesuits. The Rev. John Thayer, a Congregationalist minister of Boston, became a Catholic in 1783, and, being ordained priest in France, was appointed pastor in Boston, where he labored with great success.

---

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

JOHN ADAMS PRESIDENT, 1797-1801—HOSTILITIES WITH FRANCE—  
DEATH OF WASHINGTON.

1. **Election of President Adams.**—The third election for the Presidency took place in 1796. The Federalists put forward John Adams, of Massachusetts, and the Republicans Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, and after an angry contest the choice fell upon Adams. Under the Constitution as it then stood, Jefferson, having received the next highest number of electoral votes, became Vice-President. The term of President Adams began March 4, 1797.



JOHN ADAMS.

2. **Quarrel with France.**—Two months after his inau-

14. Who was Father Neale? What is said of Mr. Thayer? 1. Who were candidates at the third election for the Presidency? Who was chosen?



guration President Adams called an extra session of Congress to consider the unfriendly relations between the United States and France. The council styled the Directory, which then administered the affairs of the French Republic, had violently resented the conclusion of Jay's treaty with England, insisting that America ought to support France in her war against Great Britain. The most inflammatory appeals were made by the French representatives in this country to the passions and prejudices of the people. American ships were seized, and a decree was published under which the hundreds of American sailors who had been impressed into the British service were made liable, if caught, to be treated as pirates.

3. Gouverneur Morris, the American minister in Paris, did not sympathize with the extreme revolutionists, and the French Republic demanded his recall. His successor was Mr. Monroe, whom Washington was obliged to remove because he misrepresented the neutral policy of the administration. The next minister was Pinckney, whom the French grossly insulted and refused to receive. President Adams then resolved to send three commissioners to negotiate for a better understanding (1797).

4. The persons chosen were Pinckney, Elbridge Gerry, and John Marshall, afterwards chief-justice of the United States. The Directory refused to receive them, but they had a long unofficial discussion with Talleyrand, the Minister of Foreign Affairs, who demanded of them, as a preliminary to any negotiation, a large loan for the use of the government, and a bribe of \$240,000 for the private pockets of members of the Directory, threatening war in

---

2. What were the relations between America and France? What had the French Directory done? 4. How were the American commissioners treated in Paris? Tell the story of Pinckney and Talleyrand.





case of refusal. Pinckney replied: "War be it, then! Millions for defence, not one cent for tribute."

5. Pinckney and Marshall were ordered to leave the country. Gerry was allowed to remain because he belonged to the extreme party in politics. Great resentment was aroused in America by these proceedings of the French revolutionists, so different from the behavior of France in former days, and Congress prepared for war. A navy was organized, money was appropriated for the defence of the coasts, a provisional army was raised, and Washington, recalled from his retirement at Mount Vernon, was appointed commander-in-chief.\*

6. Hostilities were promptly begun at sea. Several excellent ships of war had been built, and a number of merchant vessels were converted into armed cruisers. Four squadrons were fitted out: one under Commodore Barry, then head of the navy, had the frigate *United States* for flag-ship, and included also the celebrated frigate *Constitution* (known as "Old Ironsides"), Captain Samuel Nicholson, and eight smaller vessels; another was commanded by Commodore Truxtun, in the *Constellation*; a third by Captain Tingey; and the fourth by Captain Decatur. More than three hundred and fifty merchant vessels were also armed as privateers.

7. All the squadrons made numerous prizes. In 1799 the French frigate *L'Insurgente*, after engaging the *Constitution*, from which she escaped, was captured by Commodore Truxtun. The next year Truxtun drove the

---

\* It was during the excitement of this crisis that Joseph Hopkinson wrote the words of "Hail Columbia," ever since regarded as one of the national songs. The tune was already popular under the name of "The President's March."

---

5. What was done in America? 6. Who commanded the American squadrons? What other preparations were made? 7. What did Commodore Truxtun accomplish?



French frigate *Vengeance* into Curaçoa, dismasted and sinking. The exploits of the American navy during this "French war" (as it was called) filled the country with pride and gave the new nation a high repute abroad.\*

8. In the meantime the French Directory had offered to come to terms, and President Adams accordingly sent three envoys to France. On their arrival they found the Directory overthrown and the Consulate established in its place. A treaty of peace was concluded by Napoleon Bonaparte as First Consul, September 30, 1803.

9. **Death of Washington.**—Washington died at Mount Vernon, December 14, 1799, after only one day's illness. His disease was an affection of the throat. The event was mourned all over the United States with sincere feeling, and was appropriately observed by Congress and other public bodies. Bonaparte ordered the standards of the French army to be shrouded in crape for ten days, and in England a fleet of sixty British men-of-war lowered their flags to half-mast.

10. **Alien and Sedition Laws.**—During the difficulties with France two acts were passed by Congress known as the alien and sedition laws. The first empowered the President to order aliens who were conspiring against the peace of the United States to quit the country, and the second restricted liberty of the press. These laws

---

\* The first "commander-in-chief" of the navy of the Revolution was Esek or Ezekiel, sometimes called "Admiral," Hopkins. He was dismissed in 1777, and the senior officer during the rest of the war was Commodore James Nicholson, of Maryland, a gallant sailor belonging to a family which has been distinguished in the service to this day. The navy was disbanded after the peace, and a new establishment was organized in 1794. Commodore Barry was at the head of it till his death in 1803, and he was succeeded by Commodore Samuel Nicholson, a brother of Commodore James.

---

8. How was peace made? 9. When did Washington die? What signs of mourning were exhibited? 10. What were the alien and sedition laws?



proved highly unpopular and caused the defeat of Adams in the next election for the Presidency.

**11. Removal of the Capital.**—In 1800 the national capital was removed from Philadelphia to the new city of Washington on the Potomac. For the purposes of the federal Government the States of Virginia and Maryland had ceded a tract of land ten miles square, and this was erected into the District of Columbia and placed under the exclusive jurisdiction of Congress. The portion on the south side of the Potomac, being about two-fifths of the whole grant, was given back to Virginia in 1846.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

**12. Fourth Presidential Election.**—At the election in 1800 the Republican party triumphed. Of the electoral votes for President, Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, and Aaron Burr of New York, received seventy-three each, and Adams sixty-five. This threw the choice into the House of Representatives, by whom Jefferson was elected President and Burr Vice-President.\*

---

\*The contest between Jefferson and Burr led to the Twelfth Amendment of the Constitution respecting the manner of choosing the President and Vice-President.

What was the effect of these laws in politics? 11. When was the capital removed? To what place? 12. When was the fourth presidential election? The result?



## CHAPTER XL.

THOMAS JEFFERSON PRESIDENT, 1801-9—PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA—  
WAR WITH THE BARBARY STATES—CONSPIRACY OF AARON BURR—  
QUARREL WITH ENGLAND.

1. **Acquisition of Louisiana.**—By a secret treaty with Spain in 1800 France recovered the territory of Louisiana; the Spanish civil officers, however, were left in command, and in 1802 the Spanish intendant at New Orleans issued a proclamation closing the Mississippi to American commerce. This action threatened to result in war; but fortunately Jefferson succeeded in a negotiation which he had long carried on with Napoleon Bonaparte.

2. Knowing that whoever controlled the mouth of the Mississippi must become master of the whole valley, Jefferson proposed to buy New Orleans. Bonaparte refused; but finding himself on the eve of a great European war, he offered to sell the whole of Louisiana, and the United States obtained this vast territory in 1803, at the price of \$15,000,000, one-quarter of which was to be paid to American citizens in satisfaction of claims against France. What is now the State of Louisiana was thereupon organized as the Territory of Orleans, and the rest was called the District of Louisiana. The Louisiana purchase included everything west of the Mississippi not already occupied by Spain, and comprised the whole or part of the present States of Arkansas, Colorado, Iowa, Kansas, Louisiana, Minnesota, Missouri, Nebraska, Oregon, the Indian Territory, and the Territories of Dakota, Idaho, Montana, Washington, and Wyoming.

---

1. What changes took place affecting Louisiana? 2. How did the United States acquire it? For what price? How was it divided? What did it comprise?



**3. War with the Barbary States.**—The Barbary States, Tunis, Tripoli, Algiers, and Morocco, on the southern shores of the Mediterranean, were in the habit of sending out piratical vessels to prey upon the commerce of other nations and reduce their sailors to slavery. All the great powers of Europe, as well as the United States, had adopted the custom of paying tribute to these petty governments, in order to secure immunity for their trade. In 1801, however, the bey of Tripoli having demanded additional presents, and Algiers having been guilty of great insolence, an American squadron was sent to give the corsairs a lesson.

4. While Commodore Preble, in the *Constitution*, menaced Tangier and forced the emperor of Morocco to come to terms, Captain Bainbridge, in the *Philadelphia*, blockaded Tripoli. There he unfortunately ran on a sunken rock, and was attacked by a fleet of the enemy's gun-boats in such a position that he could not bring a gun to bear in reply. Unable to get the ship off, he was forced to surrender (October 31, 1803); the officers were held for ransom and the men were all reduced to slavery.

5. A few months later Lieutenant Stephen Decatur (son of the Captain Decatur mentioned in the preceding chapter) entered the harbor of Tripoli with seventy picked men in a small schooner, boarded the captured frigate, drove off the Tripolitan crew, set the vessel on fire, and sailed out under the guns of the city without losing a man. For this exploit he was promoted to be captain.

6. Tripoli was bombarded by Commodore Preble in August, and a number of the Tripolitan vessels were

---

3. What were the Barbary States? How did they treat other nations? 4. Describe the American naval operations. 5. What was Decatur's exploit? 6. The fate of Captain Somers?



captured by boarding. A fire-ship sent into the harbor in the hope of destroying the enemy's fleet blew up prematurely, Captain Somers and all her crew being killed.

7. The bey of Tripoli had an elder brother named Hamet, whom he had driven from the throne. Captain Eaton, the United States consul at Tunis, planned an expedition against Tripoli in conjunction with this person. They raised a force of four hundred men in Egypt, made a difficult march of six hundred miles across the desert, captured the Tripolitan port of Derne (April, 1805) with the aid of two vessels of the American squadron, and were about to move upon Tripoli when news came that the bey had made peace. Tunis also sued for peace, and the depredations of the Barbary cruisers came to a stop for several years.

8. **Burr and Hamilton.**—In 1804 Jefferson was re-elected President, with General George Clinton for Vice-President, in place of Aaron Burr, who had separated from his party. The Federalists then made Burr a candidate for the governorship of New York, but some of their leading men refused to support him, and he was defeated.

9. Resenting especially the opposition of Alexander Hamilton, Burr sent that distinguished man a challenge to a duel. They fought at Weehawken (now part of Hoboken), on the Hudson, opposite New York, July 11, 1804, and Hamilton was killed.

10. Hamilton had rendered the most brilliant service to his country, both as a confidential aide-de-camp and friend of Washington during the Revolution, and as a political writer and Secretary of the Treasury after the

---

7. What was Captain Eaton's enterprise? How did it end? 8. What was the result of the election of 1804? 9. What duel was fought? 10. What were the characters of Hamilton and Burr?



peace. Burr had also been in the army, but he belonged to the faction opposed to Washington, and Washington had a very bad opinion of him. His private life was notoriously profligate.

**11. The Conspiracy of Burr.**—In 1805 Burr, bankrupt in fortune and a fugitive from his home, visited New Orleans and other parts of the South and West for the purpose of arranging an enterprise whose exact object has never been positively discovered. He planned either the seizure of Mexico or the establishment of a monarchy west of the Alleghanies; he proposed to a number of military and naval officers to join him; and he enlisted in his scheme the unfortunate Harman Blennerhasset, a rich gentleman of English birth but of Irish family, who owned a magnificent seat on an island in the Ohio River near Marietta. Blennerhasset was ruined by his engagement in this affair, and his splendid home, surrounded by celebrated gardens, was laid waste.

**12.** Burr and several of his partisans were arrested by the federal Government on a charge of treason. The trial of Burr took place at Richmond before Chief-Justice Marshall, and in September, 1807, after a long investigation, he was acquitted in consequence of a defect in the chain of evidence. Burr went to England in search of aid for the prosecution of his schemes, but after suffering much from poverty, and being expelled from England as a French spy and detained in Paris as an English spy, he returned to America and died at an advanced age in obscurity.

**13. Troubles with France and England.**—France and England being at war, the United States, as a neutral

---

11. What was the scheme of Burr? Who was Blennerhasset? 12. What became of Burr? How did he die? 13. How did America profit by the war in Europe?



power, acquired a valuable foreign commerce ; but this was speedily destroyed by the arbitrary measures of the two belligerents. The British Government, by an “order in council,” declared all the French ports from Brest to the Elbe to be in a state of blockade (1806). Bonaparte retaliated by proclaiming a blockade of all the British ports.

14. In 1807 another order in council forbade neutral vessels to enter a French port without previously stopping at a British port and paying a tax. Napoleon promptly replied by his “Milan decree,” confiscating every vessel which should submit to British search or pay any duty whatever to England. Thus American merchantmen were made the prey of both parties.

15. Congress attempted to meet these high-handed acts by declaring an embargo, which detained all vessels, American or foreign, in the ports of the United States, and ordered all American vessels abroad at once to return home. This measure proved so unpopular that it was repealed (1809), and in its place a non-intercourse law was passed prohibiting trade with France and England.

16. **The Right of Search.**—The resentment aroused against England by the injury to American commerce, and the arbitrary ruling of the English prize courts with respect to neutral property captured at sea, was greatly intensified by the offensive manner in which British cruisers continued to search American vessels, and seize all sailors, even naturalized citizens, who were supposed to be British subjects.

17. In June, 1807, the insolence of this claim was carried so far that the British man-of-war *Leopard* stopped

---

What were the orders in council ? 14. The next orders ? How did Bonaparte reply ? 15. What did Congress do ? 16. What claim did England enforce ?





the United States frigate *Chesapeake* off the entrance to Chesapeake Bay, fired into her, killing or wounding twenty-one of the crew, and took off four men, three of whom were Americans. President Jefferson demanded reparation for this outrage, and issued a proclamation ordering all British war vessels out of American waters. The British Government was ready to disavow the act of the *Leopard*, but as it would not surrender the right of search the negotiations became angry, and the end of Jefferson's term found the matter still unsettled.

**18. Other Events of Jefferson's Administration.**—Among the other important events of Mr. Jefferson's administration were the admission of Ohio as a State in 1802; the passing of an act of Congress prohibiting the slave trade after January 1, 1808; the beginning of the United States Coast Survey, a valuable work which is still continued to the great credit of American science; and the application of steam to navigation by Robert Fulton. The first steamboat on the Hudson was built by Fulton in 1807, and made the voyage from New York to Albany, one hundred and fifty miles, in thirty-six hours. John Fitch, however, a native of Connecticut, had built a steamboat nearly twenty years earlier. Fulton also experimented with submarine torpedoes, and some years later built the first steam vessel of war.

**19.** Jefferson refused to be a candidate for a third term, and at the election in 1808 James Madison, of Virginia, the Secretary of State, was chosen President by the Republican, or, as it now began to be called, the Democratic, party. Clinton was re-elected Vice-President. The candidates of the Federalists were C. C. Pinckney and Rufus King.

---

17. What was the affair between the *Leopard* and the *Chesapeake*?  
 18. Mention other events of Jefferson's administration. Who invented steamboats? 19. Who was elected in 1808?



## CHAPTER XLI.

JAMES MADISON PRESIDENT, 1809-17—TECUMSEH—SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

**1. Relations with England.**—President Madison's term of office began March 4, 1809. He was surrounded from the first with extraordinary difficulties. The French and English alike continued to confiscate American ships on the ocean and in foreign ports, and to treat remonstrances and demands for reparation with extreme insolence. The British, moreover, persisted in searching American ships and taking off seamen, and the Department of State at Washington had a list of six thousand of these unfortunate men who were said to have been forced into the English service.

**2. Indian War.**—The bitter feeling against the British was increased by a general belief that they were the instigators of troubles which now began to appear among the Indians of the Northwest Territory. Tecumseh, a Shawnee chief, and his brother, a famous "medicine-man," commonly called The Prophet, were known to be forming a confederacy of the tribes to resist the progress of the whites.

**3.** The Government determined to attack them before they could begin hostilities, and General William Henry Harrison, Governor of the Territory of Indiana and Superintendent of Indian Affairs, marched against their principal town, at the junction of the Wabash and Tippecanoe rivers, Indiana.

---

1. What were the foreign difficulties of Mr. Madison? 2. What trouble arose in the Northwest? 3. Who was sent against the Indians?



**4. Battle of Tippecanoe.**—Ten miles from the town the savages attempted to surprise Harrison's camp before daylight, November 7, 1811, but they were beaten off and put to flight, and the town was burned. This quelled the disturbances in the West for a time, but Tecumseh was soon in arms again with a regular commission in the British service.

**5. British Outrages.**—On the sea the conduct of the English fell little short of actual war. In May, 1811, the United States frigate *President*, Commodore Rodgers, hailed the British man-of-war *Little Belt* near Sandy Hook, and on asking, "What ship is that?" was answered by a shot which cut the rigging and entered the mainmast. The *President* replied with a gun, and a sharp action ensued, in which the *Little Belt* was severely crippled and lost thirty-one killed and wounded.

**6. The War of 1812.**—On the 19th of June, 1812, the President proclaimed war against England; Congress authorized the enlistment of twenty-five thousand regulars and fifty thousand volunteers, and the calling out of one hundred thousand militia to man the defences of the coast and frontier. Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was made commander-in-chief, and commissions as brigadiers were issued to James Wilkinson, Wade Hampton, William Hull, Governor of Michigan, and Joseph Bloomfield.

**7.** The war opened with the invasion of Canada, Hull being ordered to cross at Detroit and attack Fort Malden, a few miles distant. He entered Canada, but learning that the British had captured Mackinaw (July 17), and had surprised and defeated a small force under Major Van Horne at the Raisin River (August 5), he abandoned his march and returned to Detroit.

---

4. Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe. 5. Of the affair between the *President* and *Little Belt*. 6. When was war declared? 7. Describe the first operations.



8. Here he was at once attacked by a combined British and Indian force under General Brock and Tecumseh. Believing that he was not strong enough to defend the place, he surrendered (August 16) not only Detroit, with its garrison and stores, but the whole territory of Michigan. Exchanged after some time, he was tried by court-martial on charges of treason and cowardice. He was acquitted of treason, but sentenced to be shot for cowardice. The President pardoned him because he had been a faithful soldier during the Revolution.

9. **Battle of Queenstown Heights.**—The next attempt upon Canada was made near Niagara. A small body of troops, partly militia, under Colonel Van Rensselaer, crossed from Lewiston, below the falls, to attack the village of Queenstown (October 13). The Americans stormed the Heights and drove the enemy out of their batteries, the British general, Brock, being killed and two young American officers, who afterwards became noted generals—namely, Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott and Captain John E. Wool—distinguishing themselves in the action. Most of the militia at Lewiston refused to go to the support of their comrades, and the invaders were overpowered, nearly all being killed or captured.

10. **Exploits of the Navy.**—To compensate for these disasters on land the little American navy won imperishable glory on the ocean. The United States frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter, captured the British sloop-of-war *Alert* (August 13). The *Constitution*, Captain Hull (a relative of General Hull), fought a famous action with the British frigate *Guerriere* (*gher-e-are'*), Captain Daeres, near the Gulf of St. Lawrence (August 19), and completely de-

---

8. Describe the affair at Detroit. What was done to Hull? 9. Describe the battle of Queenstown. What American officers distinguished themselves? 10. What were the exploits of the *Essex* and *Constitution*?



stroyed her in about an hour. This victory, dispelling the popular belief that the British navy was invincible, filled the country with transports of delight.

11. The sloop-of-war *Wasp*, Captain Jones, captured the British brig-of-war *Frolic* off the North Carolina coast (October 18), but the same day the British ship *Poictiers* took both the captor and her prize.

12. The frigate *United States*, Commodore Decatur, fought a memorable action (October 25) with the British ship *Macedonian*, Captain Carden, which surrendered after being nearly cut to pieces. This engagement took place near the Azores, but Decatur succeeded in carrying his prize to New York.

13. The *Constitution*, now commanded by Commodore Bainbridge, was the victor in another great sea-fight the same year, capturing the British frigate *Java*, Captain Lambert, off the coast of Brazil (December 29); Captain Lambert was killed, and his ship was so badly injured that Bainbridge burned her, while the *Constitution* did not lose a spar.

14. **Madison Re-elected.**—During the first six months of the war the despised American navy, of which even the Americans themselves expected little, became the admiration of the world. Privateers also were very active; and before the end of the year the captures from the British numbered about fifty vessels of war, two hundred and fifty merchant vessels, and three thousand men. Under the impulse of these successes the Federalists, who had been opposed to the war, were beaten in the autumn elections, and Madison was chosen President again, with Elbridge Gerry for Vice-President.

---

11. Of the *Wasp*? 12. The *United States*? 13. The *Constitution* again? 14. How many British vessels were captured this year? How did the elections result in November?



## CHAPTER XLII.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1813—BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE—PERRY, LAWRENCE, AND PORTER.

1. **Operations in the Northwest.**—For the campaign of 1813 the American land forces were divided into three armies. General Harrison, with the army of the west, in Ohio, was to operate near Detroit and undertake the recovery of Michigan; General Dearborn, with the army of the centre, was on the shore of Lake Ontario; and General Hampton, with the army of the north, was near Lake Champlain.

2. In January General Winchester, who held a command under Harrison, sent a detachment to drive off the British then threatening the village of Frenchtown, on Raisin River, Michigan. Winchester soon joined this detachment with his main body. On the 22d of January, 1813, the Americans were surprised by the English from Fort Malden, under General Proctor, and forced to surrender. Those who were able to march were taken to Canada; the sick and wounded were left behind and massacred by the Indians.

3. Harrison, who was on the way to join Winchester, stopped at the rapids of the Maumee, in Northwestern Ohio, and established a post, which he called Fort Meigs. There he was besieged by two thousand British and Indians, under Proctor and Tecumseh, but General Green Clay, with a body of Kentucky troops, came to his relief, and the enemy were driven off, May 9.

4. In July Proctor and Tecumseh, with four thousand men, renewed the attack. Clay, who was now in command,

---

1. What was the plan of campaign for 1813? 2. Describe the battle of Raisin River. 3. The siege of Fort Meigs? 4. Was the attack renewed? What was the result?



gave them a rough reception, and they turned aside to attempt the capture of Fort Stevenson, at Lower Sandusky. This post had a garrison of only one hundred and sixty men, commanded by Lieutenant Croghan, a boy of twenty-one, and it mounted only one gun. Nevertheless young Croghan made such a gallant defence that the assailants, though they were assisted by gunboats, were driven off with severe loss, August 2.

5. Dearborn, with the army of the centre, crossed Lake Ontario in the spring, and captured York (now Toronto), April 27. The British blew up the magazine when they retreated, and the American general, Pike, who led the assault, was killed with many of his men by the explosion.

6. A month afterwards Dearborn, with the aid of a squadron commanded by Commodore Chauncey, drove the British out of Fort George, on the Canada side of the mouth of the Niagara River, and pursued them to the western end of Lake Ontario. There they turned and attacked him (June 6) at Stony Creek, in Canada. They were repulsed, but in the confusion two American generals, Chandler and Winder, were made prisoners.

7. Retiring to Fort George, Dearborn was there attacked and six hundred of his men were cut off. His campaign was severely criticised, and he was soon supplanted by Wilkinson.

8. While Dearborn was operating at the western end of Lake Ontario, Sir George Prevost, the British commander-in-chief, landed with one thousand men at the eastern end to attack Sackett's Harbor (May 29). General Brown, a New York militia officer, rallied a body of

---

What was Lieutenant Croghan's exploit? 5. Describe the capture of Toronto. 6. The affair at Stony Creek. 7. At Fort George. Who superseded Dearborn? 8. What did Prevost undertake?



volunteers to aid the small force of regulars stationed there, and handled them so well that Prevost abandoned his wounded and retired hastily to his ships.

**9. Naval Operations on the Lake.**—These land operations had no important result, but the navy (which had never been fairly appreciated by the Government) was meanwhile preparing a brilliant success. Oliver Hazard Perry, a young master-commandant, had volunteered for service on Lake Erie, and by extraordinary exertions had built and launched several vessels at Presque Isle (now Erie), Pennsylvania, and added to them a few craft captured in the Niagara River.

**10.** With a fleet of ten sail (some of them mounting only one gun), imperfectly equipped and short of men and officers, he met an English squadron under Commodore Barclay near the western end of the lake on the morning of September 10, 1813. The enemy had only six vessels, but, as they were superior to the American, the forces were about equal.

**11. Battle of Lake Erie.**—The engagement lasted about three hours. Perry's own ship, the *Lawrence*, became the target of the heaviest of the enemy's fire, and was so badly injured as to be useless. Perry then abandoned her, and, taking an open boat, pulled through the thick of the battle to the *Niagara*. With this brig he sailed into the British line at a critical moment, pouring in a terrible broadside right and left as he passed, then turning and continuing a deadly discharge at short range. In fifteen minutes the British surrendered, and Perry sent a messenger to General Harrison with the despatch, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

---

Who defended Sackett's Harbor? The result? 9. What was attempted on Lake Erie? 10. What were the forces on each side? 11. Describe the battle.





12. This victory gave the Americans command of the lake. The squadron was employed to transport Harrison's troops to Canada; the British evacuated Detroit and Fort Malden, and retreated with Tecumseh and his Indians up the river Thames, a stream of Canada West, which flows into Lake St. Clair.

13. Harrison overtook them, October 5, at a village called Moravian Town. At the first charge by a body of Kentucky mounted volunteers under Colonel Richard M. Johnson (afterwards Vice-President) the British threw down their arms and surrendered, General Proctor and his staff making their escape. The Indians fought better until Tecumseh was killed, when they also fled.

14. **Wilkinson's Expedition.**—This put an end to the war in the Northwest. Michigan was restored to the United States, and the government was reorganized under General Cass. Harrison and his army went to Buffalo in order to take part in a contemplated attack upon Canada by Wilkinson.

15. Wilkinson moved down the St. Lawrence in boats, with the intention of capturing Montreal. A battle was fought November 11 near Williamsburg, on the Canada side of the river, below Ogdensburg, in which both parties were somewhat crippled. Disappointed in the expectation of meeting Hampton with a supporting force which had begun to advance from Lake Champlain, Wilkinson abandoned the attempt to reach Montreal, and went into winter quarters near St. Regis, on the St. Lawrence. The quarrels of the American commanders had been the chief cause of the failure of the expedition.

16. In December the British attacked Fort George, and

---

12. What was the result of Perry's victory? 13. Describe Harrison's battle at Moravian Town. Who was killed here? 14. The result of the victory. 15. Describe Wilkinson's expedition.



drove the small American garrison under General McClure across the Niagara River. On the night of the 19th they captured Fort Niagara, on the American side, and then they laid waste the American shore, burning Buffalo and several other towns.

**17. War with the Creeks.**—In the previous spring Tecumseh had visited and roused the Creek Indians of the Southwest, and in August they surprised Fort Mimms, on the Alabama River, and massacred nearly four hundred settlers who had gone there for protection. General Andrew Jackson, with a force of volunteers, marched into the Creek country, and inflicted on them a series of crushing defeats, ending with the battle of March 27, 1814, at the Horseshoe Bend of the Tallapoosa, where six hundred warriors were slain. This entirely subdued the Creeks, and they purchased peace by the surrender of two-thirds of their hunting-grounds.

**18. Events on the Sea.**—In February, 1813, the American sloop-of-war *Hornet*, Captain James Lawrence, captured the *Peacock* off the coast of Guiana, after an action of only fifteen minutes. The *Peacock* sank almost immediately, carrying down nine of her own crew and three Americans.

**19.** On his return to the United States Lawrence was promoted to the frigate *Chesapeake*, with which, on June 1, he had a severe engagement with the British frigate *Shannon*, Captain Broke, near Boston. Lawrence was mortally wounded at the beginning of the action. As he was carried below he exclaimed: "Don't give up the ship!"\*

---

\* Commander Perry had these words displayed on the flag of the brig *Lawrence*, in which he fought the battle of Lake Erie a few weeks afterwards.

---

16. Give an account of the operations on the Niagara River. 17. Of the rising of the Creek Indians. Who conquered them? 18 and 19. Describe the exploits of Captain Lawrence.



The *Chesapeake*, however, was captured by boarding after she had lost a large proportion of her officers and crew.

20. The *Argus*, Captain Allen, took a number of prizes near the English coast, and created so much alarm that several cruisers were sent after her. On the 14th of August she was captured by the British man-of-war *Pelican*, after a gallant fight, in which Captain Allen was mortally wounded.

21. The *Enterprise*, Lieutenant Burrows, while cruising off the coast of Maine, fell in with the British brig-of-war *Boxer*, Captain Blythe (September 5), and captured her after a short action. Both commanders were killed, and they are buried in the same grave in Portland.

22. The frigate *Essex*, Captain Porter, made a brilliant and successful cruise during the year 1813 in the Pacific, where she was the first to show the flag of an American man-of-war. She captured a great number of merchantmen and several armed ships, and entirely broke up the British whaling business in those seas. At length, however, she was attacked and destroyed, March 28, 1814, by the British ships *Phæbe* and *Cherub*, in the harbor of Valparaiso. In this affair the British committed a gross violation of the neutrality of Chili.

23. During the spring and summer of 1813 a British squadron under Admiral Cockburn (*co'burn*) ravaged Delaware and Chesapeake bays, and, in co-operation with a land force under Sir Sidney Beckwith, attacked Norfolk. Repulsed June 22, the British plundered Hampton, on the James River, and Cockburn afterwards made a descent upon the Carolina coast.

---

20. The cruise of the *Argus*. 21. The *Enterprise*. 22. The *Essex*. How was the *Essex* destroyed? 23. Describe the British raids on the coast?



## CHAPTER XLIII.

CAMPAIGN OF 1814-15—LUNDY'S LANE—PLATTSBURG—BURNING OF WASHINGTON—BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS—END OF THE WAR.

**1. On the Niagara Frontier.**—Brown, the New York militia general who distinguished himself so highly at Sackett's Harbor, had been rewarded for that affair by a commission as major-general in the regular army, and in the summer of 1814 he obtained permission to attempt a new invasion of Canada. He crossed the Niagara River with five thousand men. Fort Erie, nearly opposite Buffalo, surrendered July 3. On the 5th he fought a severe battle at Chippewa, near the falls, with the British under General Riall, who were defeated and forced to retire to Burlington Heights, at the western end of Lake Ontario. In this action the American advance was led by Brigadier-General Winfield Scott.

**2. Battle of Lundy's Lane.**—Having been re-enforced, the British advanced again to the Niagara River under command of Lieutenant-General Drummond, and came upon Brown at Bridgewater, or Lundy's Lane, a short distance from the falls. The battle began at sunset July 25, 1814, with a gallant attack by the Americans under Scott, and it lasted till midnight, without important advantage to either side. The Americans, though greatly inferior in numbers, were left in possession of the field. Brown and Scott were both wounded, and Ripley, upon whom the command devolved, retired the next day to Fort Erie, where General Gaines took the chief command.

**3.** Drummond laid siege to Fort Erie at the begin-

---

1. Give an account of Brown's invasion of Canada? 2. Describe the battle of Lundy's Lane? How did it end? 3. Describe the siege of Fort Erie.



ning of August. On the 15th he lost one thousand men in a vain attempt to take it by a night assault. A month later General Brown, who had now recovered from his wounds, made a sortie, destroyed the British works, and took four hundred prisoners. Drummond then abandoned the siege. In November the Americans blew up the fort and crossed to the New York side.

**4. Invasion of New York.**—The war between France and England was now over, and a large number of veteran British troops who had served under Wellington were sent to Canada. Thus strengthened, Prevost advanced with an army of fourteen thousand men to attack Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain, while a British squadron, under Captain Downie, sailed up the lake to co-operate with him.

**5.** The Americans, under Gen. Macomb, being only fifteen hundred strong, fell back behind a rapid stream called the Saranae, and there made a vigorous defence. They had also a squadron of small vessels under Commodore Macdonough, and this was stationed at the entrance to Plattsburg Bay. It was decidedly inferior in size and equipment to the English fleet.

**6. Battle of Plattsburg.**—On the 11th of September, 1814, Captain Downie attacked Macdonough at the same time that Prevost attempted to force the passage of the Saranae. After two hours' hard fighting all the British vessels were captured except a few small galleys, and Prevost, beaten at every point by Macomb, retreated in disorder and fled to Canada.

**7. Operations on the Coast.**—The British fleets blockaded the coast from Maine to Carolina. In August they bombarded Stonington, Connecticut, for four days, but

---

4. How was Prevost strengthened? What did he undertake? 5. Describe the situation at Plattsburg? 6. The battle. 7. British operations on the coast?



were driven off. They occupied part of the coast of Maine, and broke up the fisheries, and they committed great ravages on the Chesapeake.

8. The new sloop-of-war *Peacock*, Captain Warrington, captured the British brig *Epervier* off the coast of Florida in April, and the *Wasp*, Captain Blakely, made a brilliant cruise, taking a great number of prizes; but she never returned, and was probably lost in a storm.

9. **Capture of Washington.**—In August a British fleet under Admiral Cochrane appeared in the Chesapeake, united with Cockburn's squadron, and landed five thousand veteran troops under General Ross on the Patuxent River, about fifty miles from Washington. The army thence marched towards the capital, while a part of the fleet ascended the Potomac.

10. There was a force of American militia under General Winder at Bladensburg, six miles from Washington, and here, on the 24th of August (1814), a faint effort was made to stop the enemy's advance. The militia, however, fled almost at the first attack, and Commodore Barney, who, with a few marines and artillery, made a brave stand, was wounded and taken prisoner.

11. Ross now entered Washington without further opposition, the President and other officers of the Government taking refuge in the country. The Capitol, the President's house, the Library of Congress, the buildings of the State, Treasury, and War Departments were burned, and the Post Office and Patent Office were only saved by a sudden storm. After this barbarous destruction of property the British retired to their ships.

12. **Defence of Baltimore.**—In September they moved

---

8. Naval operations? 9. What were the British plans for capturing Washington? Who were their commanders? 10. Describe the affair at Bladensburg. 11. The burning of Washington.



upon Baltimore. Ross and his troops were landed on the 12th at North Point, fourteen miles below the city, while the fleet moved up the Patapsco to bombard Fort M'Henry, which commanded the entrance to the harbor. Ross was killed in a skirmish at North Point, the attack upon the fort failed, and on the night of the 13th the assailants retired.\*

**13. Affairs in Florida.**—Florida still belonged to the Spaniards, and they allowed the British to make use of the port of Pensacola for the purpose of fitting out an expedition against the Americans on Mobile Bay. Gen. Jackson, who commanded in the South, after vainly remonstrating against this breach of neutrality, marched against Pensacola and captured it November 7, 1814.

**14. Invasion of Louisiana.**—Jackson then hastened to New Orleans to meet a British force which had suddenly appeared in the Gulf. It consisted of 12,000 veteran soldiers under Sir Edward Pakenham, a distinguished general in Wellington's campaigns, and a fleet mustering 4,000 sailors and marines. Jackson had only 1,000 regulars, 4,000 militia, and a small flotilla of gunboats on that arm of the Gulf of Mexico called Lake Borgne, which lies east of New Orleans and extends almost to the Mississippi.

**15. Battle of New Orleans.**—Having captured the gunboats, December 14, 1814, after a severe conflict, the British advanced towards the city. On the night of the 23d Jackson attacked them and inflicted a severe loss. This checked their march and gave the Americans time to complete their defences.

---

\* It was during the bombardment of Fort M'Henry that Francis Scott Key, an American gentleman detained on board one of the British ships, to which he had gone to ask the release of a friend, wrote the words of "The Star-Spangled Banner."

---

12. What was the next movement of the British? The result? 13. What happened in Florida? 14. What were the forces on each side at New Orleans? 15. What were the first movements?



16. Jackson had constructed a line of entrenchments four miles below the city, extending from the Mississippi on one side to an impassable swamp on the other. At first his defences were breastworks built of cotton-bales, but as the British artillery set the cotton on fire, it was all removed and a ditch and earthworks were constructed. The only approach for the British was by a neck of land hardly a mile wide and entirely exposed to the American batteries.

17. Pakenham tried a cannonade in vain. On the 8th of January, 1815, he ordered an assault. His troops moved forward in excellent order, in spite of the murderous fire of the American artillery; but when they came within range of the Tennessee riflemen the slaughter was so terrible that they broke and fled. Pakenham was killed; Gibbs, one of his subordinate generals, was mortally wounded; and the British retired to their ships. Their loss in the battle was about two thousand, while that of the Americans was only thirteen. This was the last battle of the war. Indeed, a peace had already been concluded at Ghent, but the news had not yet reached America.

18. **Naval Operations.**—A week after the battle of New Orleans the frigate *President*, Commodore Decatur, in attempting to put to sea from New York, encountered a British blockading squadron of five vessels, and was captured after a severe and gallant action.

19. The old *Constitution*, Captain Stewart, made up for this disaster by engaging singly the British sloops-of-war *Cyane* and *Levant* off the coast of Portugal, and capturing both in a remarkable night engagement, February 20. The *Hornet*, Captain Biddle, captured the British brig *Penguin* in March, and in June Captain Warrington, with the *Pea-*

---

16. How was Jackson posted? What is said of his breastworks?  
 17. Describe the battle of New Orleans. Was this the last of the war?  
 18 and 19. Mention some of the naval engagements.





*cock*, took the *Nautilus* in the Pacific. Learning that peace had been concluded, he restored this vessel to the British the next day.

**20. Peace.**—Both sides had for some time desired peace, and in America there was a considerable party, especially in New England, with whom the war had always been unpopular. In December, 1814, a convention of the peace party of New England met at Hartford to consider the grievances of the people. The Hartford convention was often denounced as treasonable, but there was not sufficient ground for such a charge.

**21.** The negotiations for peace took place at Ghent, in Belgium, the commissioners on the part of the United States being John Quincy Adams, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, Jonathan Russell, and Albert Gallatin. The treaty was signed December 24, 1814, and promptly ratified by both governments.

**22.** Nothing was said in the treaty about the right of search and impressment of seamen, out of which the war arose, but the British ceased to enforce their claims, and hence the United States must be said to have succeeded in the object of the contest.



## CHAPTER XLIV.

WAR WITH ALGIERS—JAMES MONROE PRESIDENT 1817-25—PURCHASE OF FLORIDA—SLAVERY—INDIAN MISSIONS.

**1. War with Algiers.**—During the war with Great Britain hostilities had broken out again with Algiers, and the crew of an American vessel had been reduced to slavery.

---

20. What was the Hartford convention? 21. Where was the treaty of peace signed? When? 22. What was done about the right of search, etc.? 1. What happened in the Mediterranean?



As soon as the treaty of Ghent was signed the United States Government undertook to deal with this affair decisively.

2. Commodore Decatur accordingly sailed for the Mediterranean in May, 1815, with a fleet of nine vessels, including three fine frigates, the *Guerriere*, *Macedonian*, and *Constellation*. Soon after passing Gibraltar the *Guerriere* captured a large Algerine man-of-war, the best in the dey's navy. An Algerine brig was next taken; and when Decatur appeared off Algiers the terrified ruler was ready to submit to any demands.

3. Decatur forced the dey to come on board his ship and sign a treaty renouncing all future claim to any tribute from America, and agreeing to pay a sum of money as indemnity, to abandon the practice of reducing prisoners of war to slavery, and to surrender all the prisoners then in his possession. Afterwards Decatur exacted certain indemnities from Tunis and Tripoli. This put an end to the piracies of the Barbary Powers.

4. Important treaties were made with the Indians of the Northwest in September, 1815. Indiana was admitted to the Union as a State the following year.

5. **James Monroe President.**—At the elections of 1816 the Democratic, or Anti-Federalist, party was again successful. James Monroe, of Virginia, Madison's Secretary of State, was chosen President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President. The new Administration began March 4, 1817.

6. Mr. Monroe was an old soldier of Washington's and a man of pleasant and popular manners and upright character. He served, like all his predecessors except John Adams, for two terms.

---

2. Describe Decatur's cruise. 3. What terms did he exact of the dey? 4. What State was admitted in 1816? 5. What was the result of the elections of 1816? 6. What is said of Monroe?

7. Hostilities broke out with the Seminole and Creek Indians of Spanish Florida, Georgia, and Alabama in 1817, and Gen. Jackson, being sent to the scene of disturbance, chastised the savages and destroyed their villages.

8. Satisfied that the Spaniards had incited the Indians to make war, Jackson invaded Florida (April, 1818), captured St. Mark's, and hanged two British subjects who were convicted by a court-martial of stirring up the Indians and supplying them with arms. Then he seized Pensacola and sent the Spanish troops and civil authorities to Havana.

9. Spain vigorously protested against these proceedings as a gross violation of neutrality, but they were defended by the Government on the plea that they were necessary for the protection of the States. The matter was finally arranged by the purchase of Florida by the United States for \$5,000,000 in 1819.

10. Mississippi Territory was divided in 1817, the western half being admitted into the Union as the State of Mississippi, and the eastern half erected into the Territory of Alabama. Illinois became a State in 1818 and Alabama in 1819. Maine was divided from Massachusetts in 1820 and admitted as the twenty-third State. In 1820 Monroe and



JAMES MONROE.

---

7. What occurred in 1817? 8. What did General Jackson do at St. Mark's? At Pensacola? 9. How was the difficulty with Spain arranged? 10. What new States were admitted?



Tompkins were re-elected, Mr. Monroe receiving all the electoral votes except one.

**11. Slavery Agitation.**—The question of slavery began to give serious trouble during Mr. Monroe's administration. In the Northern States the use of slave labor had nearly died out, while in the South, on the other hand, it had rapidly increased in consequence of the great development of the cotton industry. The invention of the cotton-gin, or machine by which the fibre of the cotton is separated from the seed (1793), was followed by the sudden extension of the cultivation of cotton all over the South. The labor of the fields was performed entirely by negroes, and the slaves, with the crops of cotton, rice, and tobacco raised by them, became sources of great wealth to the planters.

**12.** In the Northwest Territory slavery was prohibited by law; in all territories south of that domain it was permitted. There soon grew up a contest between the free and the slave States for the control of the Government, the South wishing to extend the area of slavery by the admission of new slave States; the North seeking to confine the institution to the localities where it already existed; while the abolitionists of the North desired to put a stop to it altogether. Hence began the "irrepressible conflict" between free and slave labor which ended, after more than forty years, in the great civil war.

**13. The Missouri Compromise.**—In the session of Congress of 1818-19 the controversy became exciting when it was proposed to admit Missouri as a State. The House of Representatives voted by a small majority to prohibit slavery in the new State; the Senate would not consent.

---

11. What is said of slave labor at the North? At the South? 12. In the Northwest Territory? In other Territories? 13. What controversy arose in 1818-19?



At the next session the conflict was renewed with the same result. At last a compromise was made by which Missouri was admitted as a slave State (1820), but it was agreed that slavery should not be tolerated in future north of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , which was the southern boundary of Missouri. This law, known as the Missouri Compromise, quelled for a time an agitation which threatened to break up the Union.

**14. The Tariff.**—The policy of a protective tariff, which dates from the year 1820, afterwards became another cause of disagreement between the North and the South. The manufacturing communities of the North wished the Government to impose high duties upon foreign goods imported into this country, so that the owners of American mills and factories might be protected against the ruinous competition of older countries. The South, which was devoted to agriculture, insisted upon low duties. The question was postponed for a few years, but the sentiment in favor of the protective system rapidly increased.

**15. The Monroe Doctrine.**—Mexico and the Spanish colonies of South America had revolted against Spain and established republics, and in 1822 President Monroe acknowledged them as independent nations. This important step was urged with the greatest ability and eloquence by Henry Clay, of Kentucky, who was at this time one of the most distinguished of American statesmen. The next year Mr. Monroe declared in his annual message that “the American continents are not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power.” This principle afterwards became famous as the “Monroe Doctrine.”

---

What was the Missouri Compromise? The date? 14. Explain the disagreement about the tariff. 15. Explain the Monroe Doctrine. Who advised the recognition of the South American States?



**16. Visit of Lafayette.**—In 1824 Congress requested President Monroe to invite Lafayette to visit the United States as the guest of the nation. The marquis, then sixty-seven years of age, spent eleven months in a tour of the States, receiving everywhere the highest honors, and in 1825 he returned to France in an American frigate named, in compliment to him, the *Brandywine*.\* (See page 189.) His great fortune had been lost during the French Revolution, and Congress voted him a present of a township of land and two hundred thousand dollars in money.

**17.** On the 17th of June, 1825, the fiftieth anniversary of the battle of Bunker Hill, General Lafayette laid the corner-stone of the Bunker Hill Monument. There were present on the occasion about forty survivors of the battle and two hundred soldiers of the Revolution. A memorable oration was delivered by Daniel Webster.

**18. Indian Missions.**—It was during the administration of Mr. Madison that the Catholic missions among the Indians west of the Mississippi, neglected after the dispersion of the French Jesuits, entered upon a new course of prosperity. Bishop Dubourg, soon after his appointment to the see of New Orleans in 1815, exerted himself to obtain missionaries for the Western tribes, and from the labors thus begun date the fruitful enterprises which the Church has since prosecuted among these Indians.

**19.** In 1824 a number of Jesuits were secured. They opened a school for Indian boys at Florissant, near the junction of the Missouri and Mississippi rivers, where the Ladies of the Sacred Heart had already a school for Indian

---

\* At the battle of the Brandywine Monroe and Lafayette fought side by side.

16. Describe the visit of Lafayette. 17. When did he lay the corner-stone of the Bunker Hill Monument? 18. What is said of the Indian missions? 19. What missionaries were secured for them by Bishop Dubourg?

girls. The missions on the Missouri were confided to the Jesuits and those on the Mississippi to the Lazarists.

20. Among the Jesuits at Florissant was Father Peter John De Smet, one of several young Belgians who came to the United States under the care of the Rev. Charles Nerinecx, one of the first priests in Kentucky. Father De Smet devoted the whole of his long life to the Indian missions, earning the title of the Apostle of the Rocky Mountains, and recalling by his extraordinary career the heroic days of Jogues and Brébeuf. He died in 1872.



FATHER DE SMET.

---

## CHAPTER XLV.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, 1825-29—ANDREW JACKSON, 1829-37—SEMINOLE WAR—NULLIFICATION—MARTIN VAN BUREN, 1837-41.

1. **Election of John Quincy Adams.**—Mr. Monroe refused to be a candidate for a third term, and at the election of 1824 the political parties were in such a state of confusion that four persons were nominated for President, none of whom received a majority of the electoral votes. General

---

How were the missions divided? 20. Give an account of Father De Smet. 1. Give an account of the election of 1824.



Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, had ninety-nine; John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, eighty-four; William H. Crawford, of Georgia, forty-one; and Henry Clay, of Kentucky, thirty-seven. For Vice-President, however, the balloting was more successful, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was elected.

2. The choice for President now fell to the House of Representatives, and John Quincy Adams was selected.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

He was a son of President John Adams, and in politics he belonged to the same school as Monroe. Henry Clay became Secretary of State. The administration was quiet, prosperous, and economical, and its most important act was the passing of the protective tariff of 1828.

3. On the 4th of July, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of

Independence, John Adams died at Quincy, Massachusetts, and Thomas Jefferson at Monticello, Virginia. They expired nearly at the same hour.

4. **Andrew Jackson President.**—Party feeling was very bitter at the election of 1828, and Andrew Jackson was chosen President by one hundred and seventy-eight votes, against eighty-three cast for Mr. Adams. Calhoun was re-elected Vice-President. Jackson was a man of great

---

2. How was John Quincy Adams chosen? What is said of his administration? 3. What distinguished men died on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration? 4. Who was the next President?



courage, energy, and boldness, and his administration, which began March 4, 1829, and lasted eight years, was marked by many exciting political strifes.

**5. The United States Bank.**—A national United States Bank had been established by Alexander Hamilton, and the public money was deposited in it. Jackson was bitterly opposed to this institution, because he believed that it was unauthorized by the Constitution and a means of political corruption. As the charter was to expire in 1836, he urged Congress not to renew it. An angry controversy followed. A bill renewing the charter passed in 1832, but Jackson vetoed it.

**6.** Subsequently he recommended that the public money should be removed from the bank, and when Congress refused to consent to this measure he took the responsibility of ordering the Secretary of the Treasury to remove it (1833)—a measure which was followed at first by great distress among merchants. In this quarrel the commercial classes generally took the side of the bank and became known as Whigs, while the partisans of the President kept the old name of Democrats. The bank was finally closed when its charter ran out, in 1836.



ANDREW JACKSON.

---

5. Who founded the United States Bank? What did Jackson think of it? His action? 6. What did he do next? How did the affair end?



7. **War with the Indians.**—In 1832 hostilities with the Sac and Fox tribes of Indians broke out in what is now Wisconsin. Their chief, Black Hawk, was captured, and the Indians were removed beyond the Mississippi. In this campaign, known as “Black Hawk’s War,” Abraham Lincoln, afterwards President, served as a captain of volunteers, and Jefferson Davis as a second lieutenant of the regulars.

8. The removal of the Seminoles and Creeks of the South was not accomplished without a more serious war. The Seminoles of Florida, dissatisfied with a treaty for their removal made by some of their chiefs, made a determined resistance under the leadership of Osceola. General Thompson and a few companions were killed and scalped near Fort King, December 28, 1835, and the same day, at a place many miles distant, a detachment of one hundred soldiers under Major Dade were surprised and all but four were slain.

9. A few days later General Clinch fought a battle with the Seminoles on the Withlacoochee, and in February, 1836, General Gaines inflicted upon them a severe defeat near the same place.

10. In May the Creeks of Georgia and Alabama joined the Seminoles, but General Scott soon subdued them and they were sent across the Mississippi. The Seminoles still held out, and, lurking in the trackless swamps known as the Everglades, they caused the soldiers much suffering. Osceola, having once made a treaty and broken it, was captured and imprisoned in Fort Moultrie, at Charleston, where he died. Soon afterwards Colonel Zachary Taylor, afterwards President,

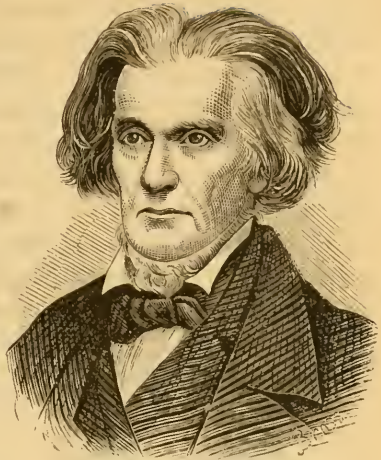
---

7. What was Black Hawk’s War? 8. How did the Seminole war begin? Mention some of the incidents of it. 10. What became of Osceola.



defeated the Indians in the battle of Okechobee, December 25, 1837. It was not until 1842, however, that the war was brought to an end.

**11. Nullification.**—The dissatisfaction with the protective tariff was so great at the South that after the passing of an act in 1832, increasing certain duties, a State convention in South Carolina declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and therefore null and void, and resolved that any



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

attempt to collect the duties at Charleston should be resisted by force of arms. Preparations were also made to take South Carolina out of the Union.

**12.** The leaders of the “nullification party,” so-called because it asserted the right of a State to “nullify,” or annul, an act of Congress, were John C. Calhoun, who had resigned the Vice-Presidency and been elected to the



DANIEL WEBSTER.

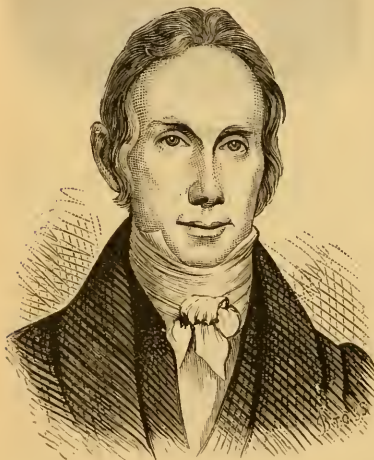
---

Who won the battle of Okechobee? When did the war end?  
 11. What controversy arose in South Carolina about the tariff?  
 12. What was the “nullification party”?



Senate ; Robert Y. Hayne, also a senator ; and George McDuffie, governor of the State. In the course of the controversy in the Senate Daniel Webster held a famous debate with Mr. Hayne lasting for several days, and presented the arguments against the right of secession with an eloquence and force never equalled in any discussion of that question.

13. General Jackson treated the difficulty with characteristic vigor. He issued a proclamation denying the right of a State to set aside an act of Congress ; he sent a ship



HENRY CLAY.

of war to Charleston ; and he ordered troops to assemble there under command of General Scott. The leaders of the nullification party were also privately assured that if they committed any open act of rebellion they would be hanged.

14. The firmness of the President had its effect ; and in the meantime Henry Clay, the leading champion of the protective system,

brought forward a compromise measure for the gradual reduction of the tariff, and the South Carolina party yielded. Mr. Clay did this at the sacrifice of his popularity.

15. **Railroads and Steamships.**—It was during the administration of General Jackson that the railroad system, to which the United States owe so much of their greatness,

---

Who were its leaders ? What celebrated debate was held ? 13. How did Jackson treat the nullifiers ? 14. How did the matter end ? Who was the author of the compromise ?



was begun. The first steam locomotive in this country was run on the track of the Delaware and Hudson Canal Company in Pennsylvania in 1829. The engine was built in England. The first steamship that ever crossed the Atlantic was the *Savannah*, a vessel built in New York, which made the voyage from America to England and Russia in 1818. The first steamships that made regular passages were the *Sirius* and *Great Western*, which began running in 1838 between London and Bristol and New York.

16. At the end of his first term Jackson was re-elected (1832) by two hundred and nineteen electoral votes, against forty-nine for Henry Clay, eleven for John Floyd, and seven for William Wirt. Martin Van Buren, of New York, was chosen Vice-President. In 1836 Mr. Van Buren was elected President by the Democrats, the Whig vote being divided between several candidates, of whom the leading one was General Harrison. Richard M. Johnson was chosen Vice-President.

17. **Martin Van Buren President.**—The administration of President Van Buren (1837–41) was occupied chiefly with efforts to remedy the commercial disasters of the nation, to secure a stable currency, and to establish the present independent treasury for the custody of the public money. Mr. Van Buren also negotiated a settlement of a threatening dispute with Great Britain about the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick, and succeeded, with much trouble, in preserving the neutrality of the United States during a revolutionary movement in Canada.

18. The country was not prosperous during his term of office, and he was defeated as a candidate for re-election (1840) after a remarkably exciting canvass, the Whigs choos-

15. When and where was the first American steam railroad operated? Name the first ocean steamships. 16 Who was elected in 1832? In 1836? 18. In 1840?



ing William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, Vice-President.

---

## CHAPTER XLVI.

JOHN TYLER PRESIDENT, 1841-45—THE DORR REBELLION—THE  
MORMONS—ANNEXATION OF TEXAS.

**1. Harrison and Tyler.**—General Harrison, known as the “hero of Tippecanoe,” was inaugurated March 4, 1841, and died April 4, having been President exactly one month. The office then devolved upon the Vice-President, Mr. Tyler.

**2. Mr. Tyler disapproved** of some of the favorite measures of the Whig party which elected him, especially of their project for re-establishing the United States Bank. Great dissatisfaction was expressed at his policy, and all his cabinet resigned. Daniel Webster, however, the Secretary of State, retained office long enough to finish a negotiation with Great Britain for the settlement of a dispute about the northwestern boundary.

**3. The Dorr Rebellion.**—In 1842 an affair known as “Dorr’s Rebellion” occurred in Rhode Island. The State was still governed under the old colonial charter, and a party, led by Thomas Dorr, was anxious to exchange it for a new constitution giving more power to the people. Dorr assumed to be governor by the votes of his partisans; the lawful governor, under the charter, called for the assistance of the United States; and civil war was imminent when President Tyler sent troops into the State to sup-

- 
1. How long was Harrison President? Who succeeded him?  
2. What is said of Tyler’s administration? 3. What was “Dorr’s Rebellion”?



hold the old government. Dorr was convicted of treason and sentenced to imprisonment for life, but he was soon pardoned and a more liberal constitution was adopted.

**4. The Mormons.**—It was about this time that the sect of the Mormons began to make trouble. They were established in the western part of New York in 1830 by an impostor named Joseph Smith, who pretended to have received from an angel a number of golden plates on which was engraved in unknown characters a revelation from heaven. Smith made what he called a translation from these imaginary plates, and, publishing it as the *Book of Mormon*, became the founder and prophet of a new religion in which the “saints” were allowed to have as many wives as they chose.

**5.** Smith and his followers settled at Independence, Missouri, where they tried to set up a government of their own. Driven away from there, they founded the city of Nauvoo, on the Mississippi, in Hancock County, Illinois (1840), built a costly temple, formed an army, and defied all authority except that of Mormon courts and officers. Smith became rich and powerful, and in 1844 proclaimed himself a candidate for the Presidency of the United States.

**6.** In 1844 a newspaper at Nauvoo began to publish an exposure of the crimes and corruptions of the Mormon leaders. Smith caused the press to be destroyed. The editor applied to the courts of Illinois for redress, and warrants were issued for Smith's arrest. He resisted; troops were called out; at last Joseph and several of his companions were lodged in jail at Carthage, where they were attacked by a mob June 27, 1844, and Joseph Smith and his brother were killed.

---

4. Who was the founder of the Mormons? Give an account of their origin. 5. Describe their conduct in the West. 6. How was Smith killed?



7. Smith had made some preparations to remove the whole community of the Mormons across the Rocky Mountains, and the emigration was accomplished under his successor, Brigham Young. They began their march in February, 1847, and reached the shore of the Great Salt Lake after a horrible winter journey on foot and in wagons across an unknown country, thousands of them dying on the way. There they founded Salt Lake City, and set up what they intended to be an independent State. It was then a part of Mexico, but the territory was soon annexed to the United States, and the difficulty with the Mormons broke out again.

8. **Native American Riots.**—In 1844 the “Native American” party, organized for the purpose of excluding Catholics from politics, provoked a dreadful riot in Philadelphia, which lasted three days. Two of the Catholic churches, a house of the Sisters of Charity, the valuable library of the Augustinian Fathers, and a number of private dwellings occupied by Irish Catholics were destroyed and many persons were killed. A similar riot in New York was prevented mainly by the courage and prudence of Bishop Hughes.

9. **The Telegraph.**—The first electric telegraph line in the United States was erected in 1844 by Samuel F. B. Morse. Professor Morse made this important invention as early as 1832. He had great difficulty in persuading people that his idea was practicable, and in raising money to carry it out. At length, on the very last night of the session, Congress was induced to appropriate \$30,000 for building an experimental line between Baltimore and Washington.

10. **Texas.**—What is now the State of Texas was origi-

---

7. Who succeeded Smith? What became of the Mormons? 8 Give the story of the Native American riots. 9. Of the invention of the telegraph.





nally part of Mexico. The people, many of them colonists from the United States, declared their independence of Mexico in 1835, and after some severe fighting, in which they were commanded by General Sam Houston, and the Mexicans by General Santa Anna, they established the Republic of Texas, with General Houston as President. The new republic was recognized by the United States and other governments, but not by Mexico.

11. In 1844 a proposal for the annexation of Texas to the United States, which had been defeated several years before, was revived by President Tyler. It was acceptable to the Texans, who needed the protection of a strong government, but it caused great excitement and controversy in the United States. A strong party in the South favored it; but in the North it was earnestly opposed, partly because it threatened to involve the country in war with Mexico, and partly because it would extend the area of slavery.

12. A treaty of annexation was rejected by the Senate in July, 1844. The question then became a principal issue in the election for the Presidency. The Democratic party, which desired annexation, triumphed in the election of James K. Polk, of Tennessee, as President, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, as Vice-President, the Whig candidates being Henry Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen.

13. On the 1st of March, 1845, three days before the end of Mr. Tyler's term of office, a resolution annexing Texas to the United States passed Congress, and the President immediately signed it.

---

10. What is the early history of Texas? 11. What is said of the proposal of annexation? 12. How did the election of 1844 result? 13. When did the treaty pass Congress?



## CHAPTER XLVII.

## THE MEXICAN WAR—TAYLOR'S INVASION—FREMONT IN CALIFORNIA.

1. **The Mexican War.**—Mr. Polk promptly ordered General Zachary Taylor to the command of an "Army of Occupation" in Texas, consisting of about fifteen hundred men. It was stationed between the Nueces (*nway'-ces*) and the Rio Grande (*re'o gran'day*), a part of the State which Mexico insisted had never belonged to Texas. At the same time a squadron under Commodore Conner was sent to the Gulf of Mexico.

2. In the spring of 1846 the Mexicans were found to be collecting an army at Matamoras, on the south side of the Rio Grande, near its mouth. Taylor advanced and established a fortified camp on the opposite side of the river. On the 26th of April a skirmish occurred on Texas soil between a company of Taylor's dragoons and a detachment of Mexicans. As soon as the news reached Washington the President declared, in a special message to Congress, May 11, 1846, that "war existed by the act of Mexico," and Congress appropriated \$10,000,000 and authorized the raising of fifty thousand volunteers.

3. **Palo Alto.**—Marching to Point Isabel, on the Texas coast, a few miles north of the Rio Grande, to protect his stores, Taylor was recalled by an attack upon the camp opposite Matamoras, where Major Brown had been left in command. On the way he met the Mexicans, under General Arista, at Palo Alto (*pah'-lo al'-to*). Taylor had two thousand men, and Arista had six thousand; but, after a

---

1. What general was sent to the frontier? 2. What happened on the Rio Grande? When was war declared? 3. Give an account of the battle of Palo Alto.



battle of five hours, the Americans were victorious (May 8, 1846).

4. **Resaca de la Palma.**—The next day the armies met again at Resaca de la Palma (*ray-sch'-ca day la pahl'-ma*), where the Mexicans were found strongly posted in a ravine protected by a thick chaparral, or matted growth of prickly cactus. One of their batteries was doing great execution when Captain May, at the head of his dragoons, dashed through a murderous fire and rode over the guns, capturing the Mexican General La Vega (*vay'-ga*). The battle soon ended in the rout of the Mexicans, whose loss was about one thousand men. This engagement, as well as the one of the day before, was fought in Texas.

5. The small force left on the Rio Grande under Major Brown had sustained a severe bombardment, but was now safe. Major Brown, however, had been mortally wounded, and in his honor the post was named Fort Brown (now Brownsville).

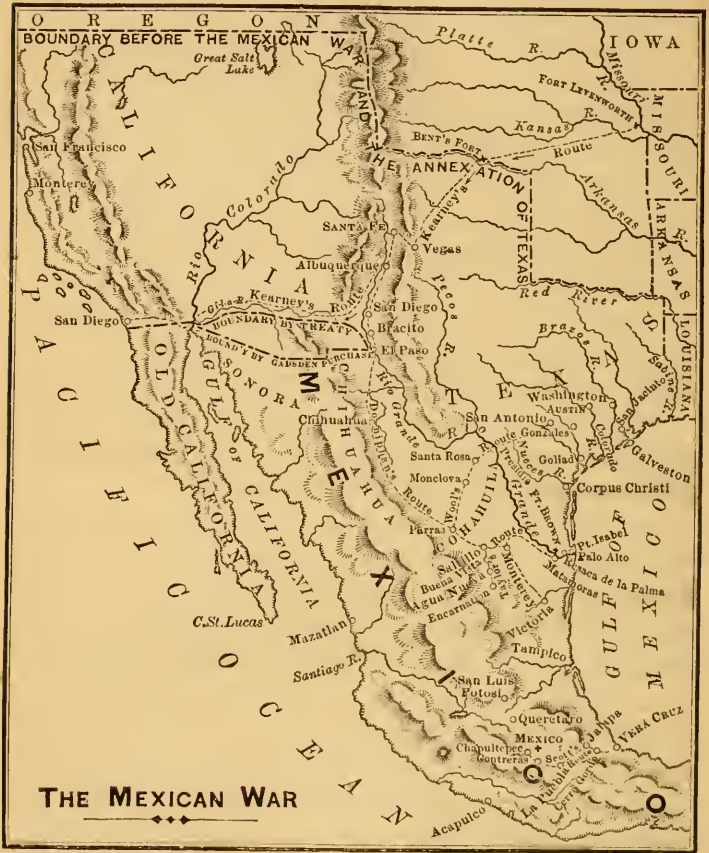
6. Taylor crossed the river and occupied Matamoras, where he waited for re-enforcements. The volunteers called for by the Government were easily obtained, and General Wool, Inspector-General of the Army, equipped, organized, and drilled them with remarkable rapidity.

7. **Taylor's Advance.**—In August the advance of Taylor's force, now six thousand strong, pushed into the interior of Mexico. In September the whole army appeared before the city of Monterey (*mon-tay-ray'*), defended by General Ampudia (*am-poo'-de-a*) with nine thousand Mexicans. The attack began September 21 and lasted three days, at the end of which time Ampudia surrendered (September 24, 1846).

- 
4. Describe the battle of Resaca de la Palma. Where was it fought?  
5. What of Major Brown? 6. What was Taylor's next movement?  
7. Describe the battle of Monterey.



8. An armistice was agreed to for a few weeks, and in the meantime General Wool arrived with a division of



three thousand men, and occupied a fertile district from which he supplied both his own force and Taylor's with

8. What other general now arrived ?



provisions. At the end of the armistice Wool occupied Saltillo (*sal-tee'-yo*) and Taylor took possession of Victoria, with the intention of marching upon Tampico (*tam-pee'-co*), a port on the Gulf of Mexico.

9. Tampico, however, had already surrendered to Commodore Conner, and Taylor therefore fell back to Saltillo and formed a junction with Worth.

10. **Plans of General Scott.**—The plan of the war had been arranged by General Scott, who was the commander-in-chief of all the United States armies. Besides the operations of Taylor, it embraced an attack upon the northern part of Mexico (New Mexico and California) by an "Army of the West"; an assault upon the Mexican capital by an "Army of the Centre"; and a naval attack upon the Pacific coast.

11. **The Army of the West.**—The Army of the West, under General Stephen W. Kearny, started from Fort Leavenworth, on the Missouri, in June, 1846, and, after a march of a thousand miles across the desolate plains, occupied Santa Fe (*sahn'ta fay'*), New Mexico. Thence Kearny was to have invaded California, but, finding that Captain Fremont had already conquered that State, he left his main body at Santa Fe, and pushed on to the Pacific coast with only one hundred men.

12. **Conquest of California.**—Fremont, with a party of sixty men, had been sent (1845) before the outbreak of the war to explore what was then the almost unknown region between the Great Salt Lake and the Pacific. For several years he had been almost continually engaged in the survey of the mountains and deserts of the west, with a view particularly to the discovery of the best overland

---

10. What were Scott's plans for the war? 11. Describe Kearny's march. 12. On what duty had Fremont been sent out?



route between the two oceans, and his reports, published by the Government, had attracted attention all over the world and been universally commended as an honor to the country and the service. This was the third of his great expeditions.

13. Fremont was in Oregon in the spring of 1846 when a messenger from Washington reached him with instructions to look after the interests of the United States in California. War had not yet been declared, but Mexican troops were already marching against American settlements on the Sacramento River, and a movement was also in progress to annex the whole province to the British possessions.

14. Hastening into California, Fremont enrolled a force of American volunteers, and in less than a month drove the Mexican authorities out of the province. The Americans then organized an independent State and chose Fremont president.

15. About the same time (July, 1846) the American naval forces, commanded at first by Commodore Sloat and afterwards by Commodore Stockton, occupied San Francisco, then a small place called Yerba Buena (*bway'-na*), and Monterey, a town on the coast of California south of San Francisco. War being now declared between the United States and Mexico, the American Californians abandoned their scheme of independence, and Fremont and his men placed themselves under the orders of Commodore Stockton.

16. With about three hundred soldiers, sailors, and volunteers Stockton captured Los Angeles (*ahn'-ge'-les*), the capital of the province. California was then proclaimed a territory of the United States, and Fremont

---

What is said of his explorations? 13. What message was sent to him in Oregon? 14. What did he do? 15. What was the action of the naval officers? 16. What did Commodore Stockton do?



was appointed governor. The Mexicans, under General Flores, rallied and gained several temporary successes over the Americans, but were defeated in January, 1847, in two battles which decided the contest.\*

**17. Doniphan's Expedition.**—When General Kearny left Santa Fe he ordered Colonel Doniphan, with about a thousand volunteers, to chastise the Navajo (*na-vah'-ho*) Indians. Having performed this duty and compelled the savages to make a treaty of peace, Doniphan marched a thousand miles to join the army in Mexico.

**18.** At Bracito (*bra-the'-to*), December 25, 1847, he defeated a large force of Mexicans; near Chihuahua (*che-wah'-wah*), February 28, he gained a decided victory over an army four times as large as his own. Finally he reached General Wool at Saltillo, May 22, after a march which is considered one of the most brilliant exploits of the war.

---

\* General Kearny arrived soon afterwards with a few dragoons, and a quarrel occurred between him and Stockton as to the right to command. Fremont determined to obey Stockton. Out of this affair grew a bitter feeling between Kearny and Fremont, and, when Kearny was finally sustained by the Government at Washington, he sent Fremont home under arrest and made charges of mutiny and disobedience against him. An exciting trial by court-martial resulted in Fremont's acquittal on the charge of mutiny, but he was found guilty of disobedience and sentenced to be dismissed the service. The President approved the findings of the court, but promptly remitted the penalty. Fremont, however, believing that he had been unfairly treated, resigned his commission.

What followed? 17 and 18. Describe Doniphan's expedition.



## CHAPTER XLVIII.

GENERAL SCOTT'S CAMPAIGN—CAPTURE OF MEXICO—END OF THE WAR—  
CALIFORNIA—NEW MEXICO—THE OREGON TROUBLES.

1. **Scott's Campaign.**—General Wool had been selected to lead the operations of the Army of the Centre; but a change of plan was made, and it was determined to attack the city of Mexico by way of Vera Cruz, the nearest port on the Gulf. This expedition General Winfield Scott was to lead in person, and, as he was commander-in-chief of the army, he superseded Taylor.

2. Taylor was about to begin a new campaign, but he was required to send nearly all his best officers and men to serve under Scott. Though bitterly disappointed, he obeyed at once, and sent off the divisions of Generals Quitman and Worth, retaining but five thousand troops, with whom he could only stand on the defensive.

3. **Battle of Buena Vista.**—As soon as the Mexican president and commander-in-chief, General Santa Anna, learned of these movements, he fell upon Taylor's little force with an army of twenty thousand men. The battle took place near a plantation called Buena Vista (*bway'-nah vees'-tah*), eleven miles from Saltillo, February 23, 1847. It lasted ten hours, and after a series of terrible conflicts Taylor, ably assisted by Wool, May, and Jefferson Davis, put Santa Anna to rout. This brilliant victory was owing in great part to the American light artillery. Among the officers distinguished in this branch were Captain Braxton Bragg, Captain T. W. Sherman, Captain O'Brien, and Captain Washington.

---

1. What was Scott's plan of campaign? 2. What was done with Taylor's best troops? 3. Describe the battle of Buena Vista.





4. **Siege of Vera Cruz.**—General Scott's expedition, with a squadron under Commodore Conner, appeared off Vera Cruz on the 9th of March. The city was defended by land works and the castle of San Juan de Ulloa (*san hwan' day ool-yo'-ah*), built on a reef in the harbor, and said to be the strongest fortification on the continent except Quebec.

5. The troops, about twelve thousand in number, were landed, threw up batteries commanding the city, and invested the place so as to cut off supplies. On the 22d a bombardment began from the batteries and the fleet. It lasted four days, and the city and castle then surrendered (March 26), with five thousand prisoners and five hundred pieces of artillery. Scott had lost eighty men and the Mexicans more than two thousand.

6. **Cerro Gordo.**—The army marched at once towards Mexico. At the mountain pass of Cerro Gordo Santa Anna was found strongly entrenched with twelve thousand men. Scott attacked him with a little more than eight thousand, carried the heights, and took three thousand prisoners and forty-three guns (April 18). Santa Anna made his escape on a mule.

7. The American army had now a mountain range to cross in order to reach the capital. In the ascent they occupied the strong castle of Perote (*pay-ro'-tay*) and the large city of Puebla (*pway'-bla*), and at the latter place Scott rested three months on account of sickness among the men, who suffered a great deal from the climate.

8. He resumed his march in August with ten thousand troops, and was soon within sight of Mexico. The city was defended by thirty-two thousand soldiers and an

---

4 and 5. Describe the siege of Vera Cruz. What were the losses on each side? 6. Describe the battle of Cerro Gordo. 7. Where did Scott rest after this? 8. How many troops had he before Mexico?



elaborate system of fortifications. On the south side, by which Scott determined to advance, the principal outlying positions were the fortified camp of Contreras and castle of San Antonio, with the fortified heights of Churubusco behind them, and a little distance to the American left the fortified heights of Chapultepec.

**9. Capture of Mexico.**—On the 20th of August, at sunrise, General Persifer F. Smith attacked the camp at Contreras and carried it in fifteen minutes. General Worth about the same time made himself master of San Antonio. The heights of Churubusco were then assailed; Santa Anna, who had advanced from the capital, was driven back; and at the end of the day the Americans had won three victories and taken 3,000 prisoners and thirty-seven cannon.

**10.** Santa Anna now asked for an armistice to negotiate a treaty with the American commissioner, Mr. Trist, who had arrived in the camp from Washington. The proposal was made in bad faith, and served to give the Mexicans time to strengthen their defences.

**11.** A strongly-fortified building, called El Molino del Rey (*mo-lee'-no del ray*), or the "King's Mill," was taken by General Worth, September 8. Second Lieutenant Ulysses Grant, afterwards President of the United States, was promoted on the field for his gallant behavior in this battle. The heights of Chapultepec were stormed amid great slaughter, September 13, Lieutenant Grant earning a second promotion, and at night two of the gates of the capital were in the possession of Worth and Quitman.

**12.** General Scott entered the city with his victorious

---

What were the defences of Mexico? 9. Describe the battles of Contreras and Churubusco. 10. What is said of the proposal for an armistice? 11. Describe the capture of Mexico.



army the next morning, September 14, 1847. The war was now practically at an end. The treaty of peace, negotiated at Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwah-da-loo'-pay he-dal'-go*), was signed March 2, 1848.

**13. Terms of Peace.**—By the terms of this treaty Mexico recognized the Rio Grande as the western boundary of Texas, and sold to the United States, for \$18,500,000, the provinces of Upper California and New Mexico. Of the price agreed upon for these extensive territories, \$3,500,000



GENERAL SCOTT ENTERING MEXICO.

was to be paid to citizens of the United States in satisfaction of claims against Mexico.

**14. California.**—The province of Upper California (Alta California), acquired by the United States, included not only the present State of California but the State of Nevada and the Territory of Utah. It contained scarcely 15,000 persons, many of whom were recent American settlers. The peninsula of Lower California, which was retained by Mexico, had long been occupied by the Spaniards, and became as early as 1642 the seat of one of the greatest of the Jesuit missionary enterprises. Upper Cali-

---

12. When did Scott enter the city? When and where was peace signed? 13. What were the conditions? 14. What did Upper California include? What is said of its early history?



ifornia, however, though occasionally visited, was neglected until a much later period.

15. In 1769 the Franciscans, who had succeeded the Jesuits, founded the mission of San Diego within the limits of the present State of California, and this was soon followed by others. The leader of the good friars was Father Juniper Serra, who had the rank of prefect apostolic. The mission of San Francisco was founded through his efforts in 1776.

16. The California missions were managed on a peculiar plan. The priests went in small companies, attended by a few soldiers, and planted a colony of Indian converts well supplied with herds and cattle and farming tools. The Indians made excellent herdsmen; the missions prospered; the wild tribes were attracted to them; and thus large communities of converts were gradually built up. White settlers were not encouraged to join them. The missionaries had entire control of the settlements.

17. Under this plan, in spite of occasional savage outbreaks, the work of converting and civilizing the Indians went on with extraordinary success. The natives became orderly and industrious; they were expert farmers, masons, mechanics, and weavers. The great mission of San Luis contained as many as 3,500 Indian Christians, who owned 60,000 head of cattle and raised every year 13,000 bushels of grain.

18. At one time the missions numbered 30,000 Indians, 424,000 head of cattle, 62,000 horses, and 320,000 sheep. But on the establishment of the Mexican Republic the system which had produced such rich fruit

---

15. Who founded San Diego? San Francisco? 16 and 17. Describe the California missions. 18. What were the numbers of the converts? What property had they? When were these missions broken up?



was violently broken up. The Mexican civil authorities began in 1824 to expel the missionaries and seize the mission property, and soon afterwards a decree was passed by the Mexican Congress to "secularize" all these Indian colonies. Under the operation of this law the lands, buildings, cattle, etc., were confiscated, the converts were scattered, and at least one of the fathers died of starvation.

19. In five years the number of mission Indians was reduced from 30,000 to 4,000. The others, separated from religious influences, soon lost what civilization they had acquired, and fell into a state of miserable degradation, from which very few of them were ever rescued. Thus the violence of an unscrupulous government put a final stop to the experiment of civilizing the savages of the Pacific coast.

20. When Upper California became a territory of the United States there were only some weak and scattered remains of the once powerful missions. One of the Franciscans, Father Francis Garcia Diego y Moreno, had been consecrated bishop of both Californias in 1840, but he died in 1846 and his place had not been filled.

21. **Discovery of Gold.**—In February, 1848, gold was discovered near a mill belonging to Captain Sutter, on the American fork of the Sacramento River. Soon afterwards the precious metal was found in many other places near there. When the news reached the States an immense crowd of gold-hunters rushed to California, some going by ship around Cape Horn, some crossing the Isthmus of Panama, and others travelling by wagon-trains across the plains and mountains. In the course of the

---

What was done by the Mexican authorities? 19. The result? 20. What was the condition of the missions in 1848? 21. What important discovery was made in that year?

year 1849 nearly one hundred thousand immigrants entered California, and the whole character of the settlements was suddenly changed.

**22.** The gold mines proved to be extraordinarily rich. Immense fortunes were made by digging for gold or groping in the streams and washing gold from the sands. Great numbers of the adventurers, however, found nothing; there was much suffering; crimes and disorders of all sorts became common; and the gold diggings were the resort of the most desperate characters.

**23. New Mexico.**—New Mexico when it was annexed included not only the present Territory of that name but most of Arizona and parts of Colorado and Nevada. The southern portion of Arizona, south of the Gila River, was purchased from Mexico a few years later, and was known as the “Gadsden purchase.”

**24.** The Spanish missionaries were at work in New Mexico three hundred years before that region was acquired by the United States (see pages 26 and 31), and Santa Fe, founded in 1582, was the second permanent settlement in what is now the territory of the Union.

**25.** The missions were so successful that in 1626 there were twenty-seven stations, many of them possessing large churches, and the Indian converts, who were numbered by thousands, could read and write and had adopted the customs of civilization. The fierceness of the pagan tribes and the oppressions of the Spanish colonists were equally the cause of many disasters to these Christian communities; but they have never been entirely obliterated.

**26. The Oregon Boundary.**—When Mr. Polk became President there was a dispute with Great Britain about

---

22. What is said of the gold mines? 23. What did New Mexico include? 24. How long had Spanish missionaries been in the Territory? 25. What is said of the missions?



the boundary between the British and American possessions beyond the Rocky Mountains. The United States claimed as far north as latitude  $54^{\circ} 40'$ , taking in the greater part of what is now British Columbia, and during the political canvass which resulted in Mr. Polk's election a popular cry of the Democratic party was "Fifty-four forty or fight!" A compromise was at last proposed by the President, and the present boundary line of latitude  $49^{\circ}$  was agreed upon.

**27. Immigration.**—It was during the Presidency of Mr. Polk that the great movement of emigration began from Europe to the United States. The number of arrivals annually had been slowly increasing up to 1844; but in 1845 it rose suddenly to 114,000; in 1846 to 154,000; in 1847 to 235,000; and in 1850 it exceeded 310,000. More than half these new settlers were Irish. One cause of the great increase of immigration between 1845 and 1854 was the Irish famine, and another was the political disturbance in Europe.



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

**28. End of Mr. Polk's Term.**—Mr. Polk's term of office ended March 4, 1849. In the elections of the

previous November there were three parties in the field. The Whigs nominated General Zachary Taylor; the Demo-

26. What was the Oregon boundary dispute? How was it settled?

27. What great movement of population began in President Polk's time? Give some of the figures.



crats, General Lewis Cass; and the third, or "Free-Soil," party nominated ex-President Van Buren, who represented the principle that slavery ought to be forbidden in all the Territories of the United States. The choice fell upon General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana; Millard Fillmore, of New York, was elected Vice-President. The 4th of March being Sunday, the inauguration took place on the 5th.

---

## CHAPTER XLIX.

GENERAL TAYLOR PRESIDENT, 1849-50—FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION,  
1850-53—SLAVERY—FRANKLIN PIERCE PRESIDENT, 1853-57—KAN-  
SAS—CUBA—KNOW-NOTHINGISM.

**1. Slavery Agitation Revived.**—The annexation of California renewed the excitement over the slavery question in a more dangerous form than ever. The people of the Territory adopted a constitution prohibiting slavery, and in February, 1850, applied for admission to the Union. The South earnestly opposed the admission of California as a free State, and the extreme Southern party even took some steps towards secession. The debates were conducted on both sides with great bitterness.

**2. Henry Clay's Compromise Bill.**—At last, on the proposal of Henry Clay, a compromise measure was passed (September 9, 1850) which for a time secured peace. It provided for the admission of California as a free State; the formation of the Territory of Utah without slavery, and of the Territory of New Mexico without

---

28. What three candidates were nominated for the Presidency in 1848? Who was elected? 1. What political dispute was revived by the annexation of California? 2. What did Henry Clay propose?





anything being said about slavery; the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia; and a Fugitive Slave Law, under which slaves who escaped to the free States could be arrested and sent back to their masters.

**3. Death of President Taylor.**—During the discussion of this bill President Taylor died after a very short illness, July 9, 1850, and Vice-President Fillmore succeeded to the vacant office. He enforced the Compromise Act impartially, but the provision in regard to the arrest of fugitive slaves was very obnoxious to the North. It was often evaded and sometimes forcibly resisted, and it strengthened the anti-slavery party in the free States, while the agitation of the question of the morality and wisdom of slavery was hotly resented at the South.

**4.** Among the important events during Mr. Fillmore's administration were the invasion of Cuba by five hundred adventurers collected in New Orleans by General Lopez, and known as "filibusters" (1851), nearly all of them being made prisoners by the Spaniards, and Lopez and some of the others shot; the settlement of a dispute with England about the fisheries; and the sailing in 1852 of a squadron under Commodore M. C. Perry (brother of the victor of Lake Erie), by which the empire of Japan was induced to open its ports to American traders.

**5.** The slavery question was the principal issue in the Presidential election of November, 1852. The Democrats nominated Franklin Pierce of New Hampshire, the Whigs General Winfield Scott, and the Free-Soilers John P. Hale of New Hampshire. Some of the Whigs, dissatisfied with General Scott, wished to bring forward

---

3. When did President Taylor die? Who succeeded him? How did he administer the Compromise Act? With what result? 4. Mention the important events of his term. 5. What was the principal question of the next campaign?



Daniel Webster as an independent candidate, but Mr. Webster died in October.\* The election resulted in the choice of Mr. Pierce, with William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President.

**6. Pierce's Administration.**—Mr. Pierce's administration (1853–57) was chiefly occupied with the slavery dispute, on which he represented the policy of the Southern party. He chose William L. Marcy for Secretary of State, James Guthrie for Secretary of the Treasury, Jefferson Davis for Secretary of War, and Caleb Cushing for Attorney-General.

**7. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill.**—In January, 1854, Senator Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, introduced a bill for the virtual repeal of the Missouri Compromise (see p. 274) and the creation of two new Territories, Kansas and Nebraska, leaving the people of each free to determine whether slavery should be admitted or not. This principle was called “popular sovereignty” or “squatter sovereignty.” It was violently opposed by the anti-slavery party and by many others at the North, who regarded the Missouri Compromise Act as a solemn and binding agreement.

**8.** After a very exciting controversy, in which the Administration and the Democratic party in general supported the bill, and Chase and Wade of Ohio, Seward of New York, Everett and Sumner of Massachusetts, Benton of Missouri, and Fessenden of Maine were among the leaders of the opposition, Mr. Douglas's measure was adopted (May, 1854).

---

\* Henry Clay died in June of the same year.

---

Who was elected President in 1852? 6. What is said of his administration? 7. Who was the author of the Kansas-Nebraska bill? What was it? 8. When was it passed?



**9. Civil War in Kansas.**—As the question of slavery was to be decided by the votes of the people of the new Territories, both parties exerted themselves to despatch emigrants thither. Kansas was the scene of the struggle. Anti-slavery men were sent in large number from the East, and slavery men came across the border from Missouri, many of them returning as soon as they had voted at the Kansas elections.

**10.** Five years of violence and disorder followed. Both sides took arms. Elections were carried by wholesale fraud or prevented by force; rival legislatures were dispersed by armed bands; there were murders and riots; six governors in succession were appointed by the President—two were removed, and three of them resigned in despair. At last, after a long reign of anarchy and bloodshed, the free-state party triumphed and slavery was excluded from Kansas.

**11. Filibustering.**—The desire to obtain more territory at the South for the creation of new slave States caused the extreme pro-slavery party to sympathize with the operations of bands of filibusters who tried to revolutionize some of the Spanish American governments by means of expeditions from the United States. William Walker, a native of Tennessee, made various attempts upon Mexico, Nicaragua, and Honduras, and was finally captured and shot by the authorities of the last-named State in 1860.

**12. Cuba.**—Another scheme of the Southern party was the annexation of Cuba. Mr. Pierce proposed to buy it,\*

---

\* Mr. Polk had offered \$100,000,000 for it, which Spain refused with indignation.

9. What was the result in Kansas? 10. How did the struggle end? 11. What is said of filibustering? Who was William Walker? 12. What other scheme was favored by the slavery party?



and at his suggestion a conference was held at Ostend, in Belgium, in 1854, between the American Ministers to Spain, England, and France, Messrs. Pierre Soulé, James Buchanan, and John Y. Mason, to consider the question. A memorandum drawn up by these gentlemen and submitted to the President is known as the "Ostend Manifesto." It declared that Cuba was necessary to the United States; that it was the duty of this country to prevent the emancipation of the slaves in the island; and that if Spain refused to sell Cuba the United States would be justified in taking it from her by force. This declaration caused great indignation at the North. Nothing came of it.

**13. The Know-Nothing Movement.**—A fanatical excitement against the Catholics began to disturb the country in 1853. Tumults were aroused in New York; preachers declaimed in the streets against "Popery"; but the Catholics, by the advice of Archbishop Hughes, kept away from public meetings, and order was easily restored by the militia.

**14.** Archbishop Bedini, Papal Nuncio to Brazil, was visiting the United States at this time, and the rage of the fanatics against him knew no bounds. At Cincinnati a German newspaper openly urged the radicals to murder him. The next night, which was Christmas (1853), a mob of Germans marched with arms to attack the house in which the nuncio was lodged; the police resisted them; a fight occurred, and eighteen persons were killed. When the nuncio sailed from New York on his return to Europe the mob crowded the wharves, intending to maltreat him; their behavior was so threatening

---

What was the Ostend Manifesto? 13. What fanatical excitement began in 1853? What happened in New York? 14. Describe the treatment of the nuncio, Archbishop Bedini.



that the mayor induced Monsignor Bedini to take a tug-boat secretly and go aboard the steamer after she had reached the bay.

15. In the course of 1854 mobs destroyed Catholic churches at Manchester and Dorchester, New Hampshire; at Bath, Maine, and at Newark, New Jersey. The Jesuit Father Bapst was tarred and feathered and ridden on a rail at Ellsworth, Maine. A church in Williamsburg, New York, was attacked, and only saved from destruction by the arrival of the military.

16. These outrages were promoted by secret societies, commonly called "Know-Nothing" associations. They made a political question of hostility to the Catholics, and in 1854 they carried the elections in a great many of the Northern States. In June, 1855, they held a National Convention at Philadelphia, and published a declaration of political principles, in which they avowed their determined opposition to the Roman Catholic Church, and their resolve that none but native Americans should hold office.

17. In August, 1855, there was a terrible riot in Louisville, where the Know-Nothings burned or pillaged about twenty houses, killed a large number of Irish and German Catholics, and were with difficulty prevented from destroying the cathedral.

18. **Reorganization of Parties.**—The old Whig party disappeared about this time. Some of its members joined the Know-Nothing, or, as it preferred to be called, the American party, and the majority, including the old anti-slavery men and Free-Soilers, with many others, took the name of Republicans. They made the first important

---

15. What outrages were committed in 1854? 16. Who promoted these crimes? What were the principles of this party? 17. What happened in Louisville? 18. What became of the Whig party?



display of their strength at the opening of Congress in December, 1855, when, after a long and remarkable contest, they elected Nathaniel P. Banks as speaker of the House of Representatives. Mr. Banks had formerly been a Democrat, but was elected to Congress by a union of Republicans and Know-Nothings.

19. In the Presidential election of 1856 there were three parties in the field. The Democrats nominated James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, the Republicans John C. Fremont, of California, and the Americans ex-President Fillmore. The contest between the Democrats and Republicans was very animated, and resulted in the choice of Mr. Buchanan, with John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, as Vice-President. Mr. Fillmore obtained only the vote of Maryland, and the Know-Nothing party soon broke up.

---

## CHAPTER L.

JAMES BUCHANAN PRESIDENT, 1857-61—MORMON REBELLION—THE  
DRED SCOTT DECISION—JOHN BROWN—ELECTION OF ABRAHAM  
LINCOLN.

1. **Mormon Rebellion.**—Soon after the inauguration of Mr. Buchanan the Mormons of Utah, who had organized a State of their own and made their prophet, Brigham Young, governor of it,\* were found to be in open rebellion against the United States. Under the influence of

---

\* They called this State Deseret, and claimed as parts of it the whole region for hundreds of miles around Utah, from Oregon to New Mexico, and from Colorado almost to the Pacific. They still pretend to own all this territory, including parts of several States of the Union.

---

When did the Republican party first show its strength? 19. What was the result of the election of 1856? 1. What disturbance occurred at the beginning of Mr. Buchanan's term?



fanaticism they had committed a great many murders, and in the summer of 1857 they massacred at a place called the Mountain Meadow a whole company of one hundred and twenty men, women, and children who were passing through Utah on the way to California. As the Mormons refused to recognize the United States officers appointed by the President to govern the Territory, Mr. Buchanan sent an army of twenty-five hundred men to reduce them to obedience. Brigham Young threatened war and raised troops, but submitted at the last moment.

**2. The Atlantic Cable.**—The first telegraph cable between Europe and America was laid in 1858, and congratulations between Queen Victoria and President Buchanan were the first messages that passed through it. The cable, however, was imperfect; communication was soon interrupted; and it was not until eight years later that the persevering efforts of the originator of the project, Mr. Cyrus Field, of New York, were rewarded with permanent success. The money for this costly enterprise was furnished by English and American capitalists jointly, and both Governments lent it valuable aid.

**3. Slavery Agitation continued.**—The agitation of the slavery question, which became steadily more and more alarming, received a fresh impulse at the beginning of Mr. Buchanan's administration from a decision of the Supreme Court of the United States in the case of a slave named Dred Scott, who sued for his freedom on the ground that his master had taken him into the free territory of Illinois. The court decided (March, 1857) that it had no jurisdiction in the suit, because a negro could not be a citizen of the United States.

---

What is said of the Mormons? Of the Mormon war? 2. Of the Atlantic telegraph cable? 3. What gave a fresh impulse to the slavery excitement at this time?



4. Chief-Justice Taney also expressed the opinion that the authors of the Declaration of Independence did not intend to claim the same rights for negroes that they did for other people, because negroes were supposed at that time to be so far inferior to their masters that they had “no rights which white men were bound to respect.”\* He, moreover, pronounced the Missouri Compromise Act, forbidding slavery in the Territories north of latitude 36° 30', to be unconstitutional, slaves being private property which Congress had no right to interfere with.

5. Great excitement was caused by this decision at the North. The abolition party was strengthened; associations for helping slaves to escape became more active; “personal-liberty bills” were passed in several of the free States to prevent the return of negroes under the Fugitive Slave Law without a trial by jury. Finally, an enterprise was undertaken by an anti-slavery enthusiast named John Brown, with about twenty companions, which aroused the whole country.

6. **John Brown's Raid.**—Brown's plan was to raise an insurrection among the slaves of Virginia and arm them to liberate their people by force. In October, 1859, he and his men surprised and seized the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, where there was a large store of muskets and ammunition; but the negroes did not rise, and Brown was overpowered by National and State troops, and hanged (December 2) by the authorities of Virginia.

7. The next election for the Presidency was looked

---

\* Chief-Justice Taney was bitterly denounced for the use of this expression, as if it had been a statement of his own opinion about negroes' rights. That, however, it was not. He said it was the sentiment which did prevail at the time of the Revolution, not that which ought to prevail.

---

4. What was Chief-Justice Taney's opinion in the Dred Scott case? 5. What followed this decision? 6. What was John Brown's raid? The result?





forward to as a critical time. In the long struggle between the free and the slave States for the preponderance in the government, the North had at last gained a decided advantage in preventing the extension of slavery in the new Territories; it had also a small majority of the States, certain to be increased in a short time by the settlement of the Northwest.

8. In 1860 the slave States were fifteen—namely, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Kentucky, Tennessee, Louisiana, Mississippi, Missouri, Arkansas (admitted 1836), Florida (1845), and Texas (1845). The free States were eighteen—namely, Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan (admitted 1837), Iowa (1846), Wisconsin (1848), California (1850), Minnesota (1858), and Oregon (1859). Kansas had adopted a free State constitution, but was not admitted until 1861.

9. A considerable party in the South declared that if the next election should strengthen the preponderance of the North the slave States would break up the Union and form a confederacy of their own. The demands of these extremists produced a schism among the Democrats, and, after a stormy session of the Democratic National Convention in 1860, most of the Southern delegates withdrew and nominated for President John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky (then Vice-President). The more moderate Democrats nominated Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois. The Republicans named Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois: and there was a fourth organization, called the Constitutional Union party, whose candidate was John Bell, of Tennessee.

---

7. What had been the result of the rivalry between North and South so far? 8. Name the slave States. The free States. 9. What was the condition of politics in 1860?



**10. Election of 1860.**—The result of the election in November, 1860, was that Mr. Lincoln received the votes of all the free States except three in New Jersey, which were given to Douglas. Breekinridge had all the votes of the slave States except Virginia, Kentucky, and Tennessee, which voted for Bell, and Missouri, which was carried by Douglas. Mr. Lincoln was thus elected, having 180 electoral votes, while Breekinridge had 72, Bell 39, and Douglas 12. Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, was chosen Vice-President.

**11.** Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, February



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

12, 1809. His parents were poor, and he had little education except what he gave himself by hard study in the intervals of his work. He removed to Illinois while a young man, taught himself law, and was elected to the Legislature and Congress. He first won a national reputation in 1858, when he and Mr. Douglas, being rival candidates for the United States Senate, canvassed Illinois together,

holding a public debate on the slavery question, which attracted the attention of the whole country. Mr. Douglas advocated his scheme of "popular sovereignty," and Mr. Lincoln stated with great force the arguments for the prohibition of slavery in all the new Territories.

---

10. What was the result of the election of 1860? 11. Give an account of Abraham Lincoln.

# PART FIFTH.

---

## THE CIVIL WAR.

---

### CHAPTER LI.

SECESSION—THE CONFEDERACY ORGANIZED—CAPTURE OF FORT SUMTER  
—FIRST BATTLE OF BULL RUN—MISSOURI AND KENTUCKY—THE  
BLOCKADE—THE TRENT AFFAIR.

1. **Secession.**—No sooner was the election of Mr. Lincoln announced than the Southern States prepared to carry out their threat of seceding from the Union. South Carolina took the lead, her Legislature ordering (November 10, 1860) the assembling of a convention, which met December 17 and passed an ordinance, December 20, declaring “that the union now subsisting between South Carolina and other States under the name of the United States of America is hereby dissolved.” As reasons for this course the convention referred to the nullification of the Fugitive Slave Law by the personal-liberty bills and the election of a President “whose opinions and purposes were hostile to slavery.”

2. Mississippi seceded January 9, 1861, Florida January 10, Alabama January 11, Georgia January 19, Louisiana January 26, and Texas February 1. The people in these States seized all the forts, arsenals, custom-

---

1. What followed the election of Lincoln? Which State was the first to secede? What reasons were given for the act? 2. Which States followed South Carolina?



houses, post-offices, and other federal property except Fort Sumter in Charleston harbor, where Major Anderson with about eighty men stood ready to repel any attack, and Fort Pickens at Mobile, which was saved by the energy of Lieutenant Slemmer.

3. Mr. Buchanan's Secretary of War was John B. Floyd, of Virginia, a zealous secessionist, and by his orders an immense quantity of muskets, cannon, ammunition, and other warlike stores had been transferred in 1860 from Northern to Southern arsenals. All this fell into the hands of the secession party. The army was scattered at remote posts where it could be of no use, and most of the navy was on foreign stations.

4. General Scott urged President Buchanan to strengthen the garrisons of the Southern forts, but Mr. Floyd protested and nothing was done. General Cass, of Michigan, Secretary of State, resigned in displeasure at Mr. Buchanan's inaction. Howell Cobb, of Georgia, Secretary of the Treasury, resigned and returned to his own State.

5. When Congress met in December, 1860, Mr. Buchanan recommended several measures designed to conciliate the South. Shortly afterwards, at the suggestion of the Legislature of Virginia, a "peace convention" met in Washington, with ex-President Tyler as chairman, and proposed a number of amendments to the Constitution. Nothing came, however, of any of these schemes.

6. In January a faint attempt was at last made to send men and supplies for the relief of Fort Sumter. An unarmed merchant steamer, the *Star of the West*, was despatched on this errand, but she was fired upon by

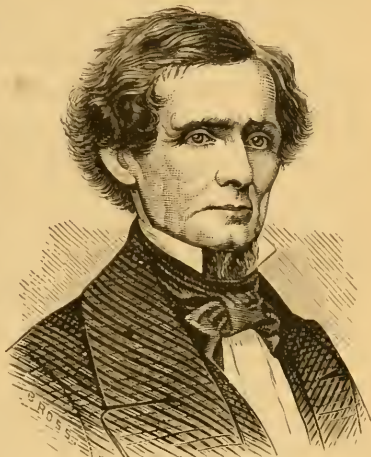
---

What became of the federal property in these States? 3. How had Secretary Floyd helped the secessionists? 4-5. What was the conduct of the Administration? 6. Describe the attempt to re-enforce Sumter.



the South Carolina batteries at the entrance to Charleston harbor, and returned without making a landing.

**7. The Confederacy Organized.**—On the 4th of February, 1861, delegates from six seceding States met at Montgomery, Alabama, and formed the “Southern Confederacy” under the title of the Confederate States of America. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was chosen temporary President by this Montgomery Congress, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-President.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

**8. Inauguration of President Lincoln.**—Mr. Lincoln was inaugurated

March 4, 1861. In his address he declared that he had neither the right nor the desire to interfere with slavery where it already existed; that no State could lawfully go out of the Union; and that he should maintain the laws of the Union in all the States to the best of his ability.

**9. Fort Sumter.**—Mr. Lincoln made immediate preparations to re-enforce Fort Sumter, but before he could do so the Confederate batteries opened fire on it, April 12. This was the beginning of the war. The bombardment lasted till the 14th, when, the interior being in flames and many of the guns dismantled, Major Anderson

---

7. How was the Confederacy organized? Who were chosen President and Vice-President? 8. When was Lincoln inaugurated? What did he say in his address? 9. When and how did the war begin?



marched out with all the garrison and the next day sailed for New York.

10. This event served to consolidate both the North and the South. All the slave States speedily joined the Confederacy, except Maryland and Delaware, which were bound to the North by their geographical position, and Kentucky and Missouri, which wished to remain neutral. In the North there was a general uprising of the people for the defence of the Union, which until now they had refused to believe in real danger.

11. The day after the evacuation of Fort Sumter President Lincoln called for 75,000 volunteers for three months (April 15). The response was so quick that the first companies of Massachusetts troops began their march the same day, and in a surprisingly short time the quota was full. Early in May a call was made for 42,000 volunteers for three years or the war, and 40,000 men for the regular army and navy. These calls also were at once answered.

12. The Government was in no want of men, but the action of Mr. Floyd had almost stripped it of arms. Agents were sent abroad to purchase guns; private manufactories were worked day and night; and in a short time the Administration was able to call more men into the field.

13. A blockade of all the Southern ports was proclaimed April 19, and to increase the navy the Government proceeded to purchase and arm a great many merchant vessels. The important navy-yard at Norfolk, Virginia, being menaced by the Confederates, was evacuated by the officers in command after an attempt.

---

10. What was the effect of the fall of Fort Sumter? 11. What preparations did Mr. Lincoln make for war? 12. How did he procure arms? 13. What naval preparations were made?



only partially successful, to destroy the ships, buildings, and stores.

**14.** The arsenal at Harper's Ferry was captured by the Virginia militia April 18, and Washington itself was for a time in great danger. Massachusetts and Pennsylvania troops on the way to the capital were attacked by the populace in the streets of Baltimore April 19, and some of the soldiers were killed. The mob, which sympathized with the South, declared that no Northern troops should pass through the city. The railroad was blocked up, bridges were burned, telegraph wires were cut, and all direct communication between Washington and the North was stopped, until Mr. Lincoln sent a military force from Annapolis to occupy Baltimore and keep the road open.

**15. The First Battles.**—The Confederate armies, commanded principally by Southern graduates of West Point, who had resigned when their native States seceded, were recruited with quite as much ease as the Northern forces. Their main body advanced into northeastern Virginia, and took position between Harper's Ferry and Norfolk, thus menacing Washington and protecting Richmond, which had become the Confederate capital.

**16.** A small engagement near Fortress Monroe, where General Butler was worsted by a Confederate force under Magruder at Big Bethel, was followed by a series of Union victories in Western Virginia, where Generals McClellan and Roscerans defeated the Confederates at Rich Mountain, Carrick's Ford, Carnifex Ferry, etc.

**17. Bull Run.**—The principal force of the Confederates was posted at Manassas Junction, Virginia, about

14. What happened at Harper's Ferry? In Baltimore? 15. What is said of the Confederate soldiers and officers? 16. Mention some of the first engagements.



thirty miles from Washington, under command of General Beauregard. The Federal troops, drilled and organized by General Scott, occupied Arlington Heights, on the south side of the Potomac, opposite Washington, and thence moved in July to attack the Confederate position. Their commander was General Irvin McDowell.

18. The battle was fought July 21, near Bull Run, a small stream in front of the Confederate camp. During the first part of the day the Union army was successful, driving back the enemy in gallant style; but late in the afternoon the Confederate General Joseph E. Johnston, eluding General Patterson, who had been instructed to keep him in check at Winchester, came upon the field

with several thousand fresh troops, and McDowell's army, seized with a panic, fled in great disorder. The Union loss was about 3,000 and the Confederate loss 2,000. The forces engaged were about 20,000 on each side.



GEORGE B. McCLELLAN.

19. This disaster only stimulated the North to fresh exertions. Congress authorized the President to enlist half a million volunteers, and voted \$500,000,000 for the ex-

penses of the war. General McClellan, whose campaign in Western Virginia had given him a high reputation,

17. How were the two armies posted? Who were their commanders?  
 18. Describe the battle of Bull Run. What were the losses?  
 19. What did the North do after this?





was called to Washington and placed at the head of the Army of the Potomac, and soon afterward he became general-in-chief of the United States armies, General Scott retiring from active service on account of his age and infirmity. A large body of Federal troops had been for some time collecting at Fortress Monroe at the entrance to Chesapeake Bay, and this force was placed under the charge of the veteran General Wool.

**20. Ball's Bluff.**—There were no important movements by the Army of the Potomac during the rest of the year, McClellan wisely preferring to spend the time in preparing his raw and unorganized recruits for the hard work before them. In the autumn, however, a portion of General Stone's command on the Upper Potomac was sent on a reconnoissance into Virginia under Colonel Baker, Senator from Oregon, and, being attacked by the Confederate General Evans at Ball's Bluff, was disastrously defeated. Colonel Baker was among the killed.

**21. The Neutral States.**—Although Missouri had declared itself neutral, a strong party, with which the governor was acting, wished to carry it over to the Confederacy. A Confederate camp near St. Louis was broken up by Captain Lyon, of the regulars, and the St. Louis arsenal was thus saved. The State was afterwards invaded by Confederates from Arkansas, who were defeated by Lyon (now a general) at Booneville, June 17, and by Sigel at Carthage, July 5.

**22.** A large force of Confederates under McCulloch and Price then attacked Lyon at Wilson's Creek, August 10. Lyon was killed, and his command fell back towards the centre of the State. Price with 20,000 men

---

Who was placed in command of the Federal troops on the Potomac ?  
 20. Describe the affair at Ball's Bluff. 21. What happened in Missouri ? 22. Describe Price's invasion.



thereupon pushed forward to Lexington, on the Missouri River, where a little garrison of only 2,000, consisting of the Irish brigade of Chicago, under Colonel James A. Mulligan, held out heroically for three days, and only surrendered (September 20) after their supply of water had been cut off for forty-eight hours.

23. General Fremont was now appointed to the command of the Western department. He drove Price into the southwest corner of the State, and was about to give battle when he was superseded by General Hunter (November 2). Hunter retreated to St. Louis, with Price after him; but in a fortnight Hunter was superseded by Halleck, and Price was driven into Arkansas.

24. Kentucky, like Missouri, was distracted by dissensions among its own people and harassed by the armies of both sides. In September Leonidas Polk, bishop of the Protestant Episcopal Church, having received a commission as major-general in the Confederate army, occupied Hickman and Columbus, towns on the Mississippi in the southwestern corner of Kentucky. There was also a Confederate force at Belmont, Missouri, opposite Columbus.

25. Ulysses S. Grant, recently appointed a brigadier-general of volunteers, now first came into notice. He drove the Confederates out of Belmont, November 7, but was unable to hold the town, because it was commanded by the fortifications of Columbus.

26. **Naval Operations.**—In the meantime formidable expeditions were fitted out to recapture Southern harbors. A combined land and naval force under General Butler and Commodore Stringham reduced and occupied

---

Give an account of the defence of Lexington. 23. What Federal generals opposed Price, and with what result? 24. Who commanded the Confederates in Kentucky? 25. Who defeated them at Belmont?



two forts at Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina, at the entrance to Albemarle and Pamlico sounds (August 29); and Port Royal harbor, near Beaufort, South Carolina, was secured by the reduction of Forts Walker and Beauregard by the fleet of Commodore Dupont (November 7), a land force under General Thomas W. Sherman taking possession of the captured works.

**27. The Blockade.**—These victories were of high value to the Federal cause. They not only closed important Southern ports, but they gave the blockading squadrons on the coast convenient harbors for rendezvous and supplies. It was of great consequence that the blockade declared by the President in April should be rendered effective; otherwise neutral nations, which by international law are never obliged to respect a “paper blockade,” would have been at liberty to enter the Southern ports and trade with them.

**28.** In spite of the watchfulness of the Federal navy several Confederate men-of-war and privateers got out of port and did much damage to merchant ships. The most successful of these first cruisers was the *Sumter*, commanded by Captain Semmes. She was chased into Gibraltar by the United States man-of-war *Tuscarora*, and, being unable to evade that ship and get to sea again, was there sold. Afterwards the Confederates obtained much better vessels, built expressly for them in British ship-yards.

**29.** The practice of “running the blockade” became a very profitable business. An agency was established at the British port of Nassau, in the West Indies, about two days’ sail from Charleston or Savannah. Swift ves-

---

26. What naval expeditions were fitted out in this year? What did they accomplish? 27. What is said of the blockade? 28. Of the Confederate cruisers? 29. The blockade-runners?



sels of light draught, mostly built in England, were employed to ply between this place and the blockaded ports, stealing past the Federal squadrons under cover of the night. They brought out cotton, and took in arms and all sorts of supplies, and their cargoes were transferred at Nassau to or from British ships sailing to Liverpool. Many of the blockade-runners were caught, but the profit on a successful voyage was so enormous that adventurers could afford to take the risk.

**30. Foreign Relations.**—The Confederates were treated by the British Government with undisguised favor, and immediately on the news of the attack upon Fort Sumter the Queen issued a proclamation of neutrality which accorded to them the rights of a belligerent power. By previous arrangement between Lord Palmerston and Napoleon III. the English and French Governments adopted the same policy on the American question.

**31.** The South depended a great deal upon assistance from abroad. It made no doubt that the interests of the British cotton-spinners would soon oblige England to interfere and enforce the recognition of Southern independence. Two commissioners, Messrs. Mason and Slidell, were despatched to London and Paris, and succeeded in escaping from Charleston to Cuba, whence they embarked for England in the British passenger steamer *Trent*.

**32.** On the 8th of November, 1861, Captain Charles Wilkes, of the United States frigate *San Jacinto*, stopped the *Trent* at sea and forcibly took off Messrs. Mason and Slidell and their secretaries. This action, which was illegal and unauthorized, produced an angry excitement in

---

30. How did the British Government treat the Confederates? 31. Upon what did the South rely? What commissioners did it send out? 32. Give an account of the *Trent* affair.



England, and Lord Palmerston made a peremptory demand for the surrender of the prisoners.

33. The American Government had already disavowed Captain Wilkes's act, and in an able paper the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward, showed that while it was justified by the British claim of the "right of search," which led to the war of 1812, it was contrary to American principles, and must therefore be condemned. Messrs. Mason and Slidell were promptly released and sent to England.

34. Just before this occurrence President Lincoln requested two confidential agents to visit France and England, in order to help the cause of the Union and avert the danger of foreign war by their influence with the governments and persons of distinction. He believed that the exertions of Messrs. Slidell and Mason could be best counteracted by unofficial envoys in addition to the regular ambassadors. The persons selected for this delicate and important trust were Archbishop Hughes, of New York, and Mr. Thurlow Weed. They sailed in the beginning of November and rendered very valuable service, Mr. Weed in England and the archbishop in France.

35. **The Confederate Government.**—The eleven Confederate States, acting at first under a provisional government, had now adopted a permanent constitution. Messrs. Davis and Stephens were elected, November 6, President and Vice-President for six years.

---

33. How was it settled? 34. What special envoys did Mr. Lincoln send to Europe? 35. When did the elections under the "permanent" constitution of the Confederacy take place? Who were chosen President and Vice-President?



## CHAPTER LII.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR, 1862—CAMPAIGNS IN TENNESSEE AND KENTUCKY—CAPTURE OF NEW ORLEANS—THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC.

1. **The Second Year of the War.**—At the beginning of 1862 the war had assumed enormous proportions. The number of men under arms North and South was not far from a million, and both sides displayed the highest spirit and courage. The Confederates held possession of the Mississippi River from the Gulf of Mexico to the southern boundary of Kentucky, and occupied a chain of strong positions extending thence through Tennessee and Kentucky to the southwestern corner of Virginia.

2. The counties of Virginia west of the Alleghany Mountains had refused to join the Confederacy, and were afterwards admitted to the Union as the State of West Virginia. Between the Alleghanies and the Blue Ridge is the fertile Shenandoah Valley, often disputed by the two armies. At the east the Confederates were posted in great force between the Potomac and the Rappahannock.

3. The plan of the Federal authorities was to open the Mississippi and penetrate the Confederate line at the West, while at the same time McClellan attacked Richmond, and a land and naval force continued the process of capturing and closing the Southern harbors on the Atlantic coast. Simon Cameron, who had been Secretary of War, resigned January 20, 1862, and was succeeded by Edwin M. Stanton. All the Federal armies were to move simultaneously on Washington's birthday, the 22d of February, but this order could not be strictly carried out.

---

1. What was the military situation at the beginning of 1862? How were the Confederates posted? 3. What was the plan of the Federals? Who succeeded Mr. Cameron as Secretary of War?



4. Operations in the West.—For the operations in the West there were two large armies, one commanded by



Major-General Halleck, with headquarters at St. Louis, the other by General Buell, with headquarters at Louis-

4. What two armies had the Federal Government in the West ?



ville. The chief Confederate positions between the Mississippi River and the Alleghany Mountains were Fort Henry, on the Tennessee River, and Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland (both in Tennessee), and Bowling Green and Mill Spring in Southern Kentucky.

5. General George H. Thomas, with a part of Buell's forces, gained an important victory at Mill Spring, January 19, 1862, the Confederate General Zollicoffer being killed. The reduction of Forts Henry and Donelson, which lay within Halleck's department, was then undertaken by a military force co-operating with a fleet of gunboats.



COMMODORE A. H. FOOTE.

6. **Capture of Fort Henry.**—The gunboats under Commodore Foote left Cairo, at the junction of the Ohio and Mississippi, and ascended the Tennessee River to bombard Fort Henry, while an army under General Grant was

to attack it by land. After a hot fire the fort surrendered to Commodore Foote (February 6) before Grant could invest it, and most of the garrison escaped across the narrow strip of land which here divides the Tennessee from the Cumberland, and reached Fort Donelson.

7. **Capture of Fort Donelson.**—The two streams run side by side, and the forts are only twelve miles apart.

---

What were the Confederate positions between the Mississippi and the Alleghanies? 5. What victory did Gen. Thomas win? 6. How was Fort Henry captured? The date.





The gunboats, however, were obliged to make the long journey down the Tennessee to the Ohio, and then up the Cumberland, so that it was not until the 14th that the combined forces were ready to attack Fort Donelson. This was a much stronger work than the other, and had been heavily re-enforced. It had a garrison of 22,000 men, under Generals Buckner, Pillow, and Floyd (Mr. Buchanan's Secretary of War).

8. Owing to the position of the fort on a high bluff the gunboats were unable to do much service here. They were badly injured, and Commodore Foote received a severe wound. General Grant pressed the land attack, however, with such energy that after a brave resistance the Confederates surrendered, February 16, Floyd and Pillow having previously made their escape.

9. These important victories obliged the Confederates to evacuate Columbus, Bowling Green, and Nashville, and to give up the whole of Kentucky and most of Tennessee. General Buell occupied Nashville; a strong Union party showed itself in Tennessee; and Senator Andrew Johnson was appointed military governor of the State with the rank of brigadier-general.

10. *Shiloh.*—General Grant moved up the Tennessee River and encamped near Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing, where General Buell was to unite with him for an attack upon the new position of the enemy at Corinth. The Confederates resolved to fall upon Grant before this junction could be effected. A dreadful battle was fought at Pittsburg Landing April 6, lasting all day. The Federal troops were driven back step by step to the edge of the river, and owed their safety in great measure to the fine

---

7. How was Fort Donelson attacked? 8. Describe the capture. 9. What were the results of these victories? 10. What was Grant's next move? Describe the battle of Shiloh,



conduct of General William Tecumseh Sherman, who had a division under General Grant. The Confederate commander, General Albert Sidney Johnston, was killed, and Beauregard took his place.

**11.** During the night General Buell's troops arrived, and in the morning Grant ordered an advance against the Confederate lines. The battle of the 7th lasted several hours, and ended in a complete victory for the Union troops, Beauregard retreating to Corinth.

**12. On the Mississippi.**—While these operations were taking place on the Tennessee, Commodore Foote with his gunboats entered the Mississippi, and in conjunction with General Pope attacked a strongly-fortified position at Island No. 10, a few miles below Columbus. The bombardment lasted twenty-three days, and the island was captured April 7, the day of Grant's victory at Shiloh.

**13.** General Pope then moved eastward, and the gunboats proceeded down the Mississippi to attack Fort Pillow. Commodore Foote, suffering from the wound received at Fort Donelson, turned over the command to Captain C. H. Davis, who destroyed a number of Confederate iron-clads, and afterwards (Fort Pillow having been evacuated June 4) forced the surrender of Memphis after a brilliant action with the Confederate gunboats.

**14. Capture of Corinth.**—After the battle of Shiloh Halleck took command in person of the armies of Grant and Buell, and at the head of 100,000 men marched against Corinth, which Beauregard abandoned without a battle. It was occupied by Halleck May 30. Leaving Grant in command there, Halleck then went to Washington to assume the duties of general-in-chief.

---

12. What was accomplished by Foote and Pope on the Mississippi?  
 13. What was the next exploit of the navy? 14. Who now took command of the Union forces? What did he accomplish?



**15. Affairs in Arkansas.**—The Confederate forces of Price and McCulloch, driven out of Missouri by General Curtis, united with the troops of Van Dorn, and on March 7 Van Dorn was thus enabled to attack Curtis and Sigel with a greatly superior army at Pea Ridge, in Northwestern Arkansas. The battle lasted three days, and ended in an important victory for Curtis. McCulloch was killed.

**16. Campaign in Kentucky.**—During the summer the Confederates made a great effort to repair by an invasion of Kentucky the disasters they had suffered on the Tennessee and Mississippi. An army under Kirby Smith moved from Knoxville, in East Tennessee, while another under Bragg marched from Chattanooga. Smith defeated General Nelson near Richmond, Kentucky, August 30, occupied Lexington and Frankfort, and advanced towards the Ohio, threatening Cincinnati. General Lewis Wallace, however, forced him to fall back to Frankfort.

**17. Bragg in the meantime,** after a victory at Mumfordsville, September 17, hastened towards the important city of Louisville. General Buell, as soon as the object of Bragg was disclosed, left Nashville, and by forced marches reached Louisville just one day before his adversary. After obtaining re-enforcements he slowly pushed the Confederates back. Bragg formed a junction with Kirby Smith at Frankfort, and four days later a severe but indecisive battle was fought at Perryville (October 8). The Confederates then retreated through Cumberland Gap, carrying off an immense amount of supplies collected in Kentucky.

**18. Operations of Rosecrans.**—During Bragg's campaign the Union troops at Corinth were threatened by Price and Van Dorn. General Rosecrans defeated Price at Iuka, a

---

15. What happened in Arkansas? 16. What did the Confederates undertake in Kentucky? 17. Describe the campaign of Bragg and Buell. 18. What happened meanwhile at Corinth?



few miles from Corinth, September 19. On October 4 Price and Van Dorn together attacked Corinth, and a very severe battle was fought, ending in the repulse of the Confederates, who lost over five thousand men and were pursued by Rosecrans for about forty miles. General Rosecrans earned



WILLIAM S. ROSECRANS.

a great reputation by this brilliant achievement, and was shortly after appointed to the command of the Army of the Cumberland in place of Buell.

**19. Battle of Stone River.**—Marching from Nashville to attack Bragg, Rosecrans took up a strong position near Murfreesboro, in Central Tennessee. There, after some skirmishing, he attacked the Confederates in force, December 31, and a bloody battle ensued, in which, after the day had been apparently lost, the bravery and ability of General Rosecrans saved his gallant army. This severe engagement is generally known as the battle of Stone River. Rosecrans had 43,000 men, and the Confederates about 60,000. The Union loss was 11,500. On the 2d of January Bragg renewed the attack with great vigor; but in this second battle he was signally defeated and obliged to retire to Chattanooga, while Rosecrans fortified Murfreesboro and made it a depot of supplies during his further advance. The fame which Rosecrans had won at Iuka

Who defeated the Confederates at Iuka? What followed at Corinth? 19. Give an account of the battle of Stone River. What is said of these engagements?



and Corinth was deservedly increased by these remarkable battles.

**20. Attempt on Vicksburg.**—General Grant in the meantime had undertaken an expedition against the strong and important post of Vicksburg, on the Mississippi. He proposed to march from Jackson, Mississippi, while Sherman, with forty thousand men, and Porter with a fleet of gunboats, descended the river from Memphis. The movements were made according to arrangement, but Van Dorn's cavalry succeeded in getting into Grant's rear and cutting off his supplies, so that he was forced to abandon his share of the enterprise:

**21.** Sherman and Porter attacked the bluffs north of Vicksburg, but were repulsed with heavy loss (December 29). Hearing of Grant's misfortune, they then returned to Memphis, capturing on their way the town of Arkansas Post, on the Arkansas River.

**22. Expedition against New Orleans.**—While the Federal armies were thus slowly fighting their way down the Mississippi a formidable expedition was ascending the river from the Gulf. It consisted of



ADMIRAL DAVID G. FARRAGUT.

a fleet of forty-five ships, gunboats, and mortar-boats, under Flag Officer Farragut, and an army of fifteen thousand

---

20. Describe Gen. Grant's first attempt upon Vicksburg. The result. 21. What did Porter and Sherman do? 22. What important land and naval expedition was sent up the Mississippi?



troops under General Butler. The principal Confederate defences which they had to encounter were the two strong forts, Jackson and St. Philip, situated on opposite banks of the Mississippi seventy-five miles below New Orleans. At Fort Jackson there was an obstruction stretching across the river, and consisting of a line of hulks connected by a heavy chain. There were also various batteries on the shores.

23. The mortar-boats, under the immediate orders of Captain David D. Porter, were towed to a sheltered position beneath the banks, and their masts were concealed by dressing them with branches of trees. For six days (April 18-24) they bombarded Fort Jackson, which was the nearest and most important of the Confederate works. Then Captain Farragut determined, with great bravery, to run past the forts with all the best vessels of his fleet.

24. A detachment of gunboats having first cut the chain barrier under fire of the Confederate batteries, the fleet was organized in three divisions, and at three o'clock on the morning of the 24th moved slowly up the river, Farragut leading the way in the flag-ship *Hartford*. The forts were passed in the midst of a tremendous cannonade, and then the fleet found itself in the midst of a Confederate flotilla comprising sixteen armed steamers, the steam-battery *Louisiana*, and the formidable iron-plated ram *Manassas*.

25. Nearly all these vessels were destroyed or captured, and on the 25th Farragut appeared before New Orleans. The Confederate forces evacuated the city, first setting fire to millions of dollars' worth of shipping, cotton, etc. The forts surrendered to Captain Porter on the 28th, and the army of General Butler occupied New Orleans on the

---

Who were the Federal commanders? 23. Describe the bombardment. 24. The passing of the forts. 25. The naval battle. The surrender.



1st of May. Captain Farragut with a part of his fleet then pushed up the river, occupied Baton Rouge, the State capital, passed the batteries at Vicksburg, and met the gunboats of Captain Davis.

**26. Operations on the Coast.**—Hatteras Inlet to Pamlico Sound having already been captured, it was next resolved to attack the Confederate position on Roanoke Island, which commands the passage between Pamlico and Albemarle Sounds. A land and naval expedition under General Burnside and Commodore Goldsborough took the forts and batteries on the island February 8, 1862, destroyed or captured a Confederate flotilla, occupied Newbern, N. C.; after a severe battle, March 14, and reduced Fort Macon, at Beaufort, N. C., April 25.

**27. Expeditions from Port Royal** under Commodore Dupont in March took possession of Fernandina, Jacksonville, and St. Augustine, Florida, and of Darien and Brunswick, Georgia. Fort Pulaski, on the Savannah River, was taken by General Quincy A. Gillmore, April 11. Thus the port of Savannah was completely closed, although no attempt was made for some time to occupy the city.

**28. Confederate Victory in Hampton Roads.**—But while the Confederates were unfortunate in the West and South they were encouraged by a remarkable success in Hampton Roads, at the entrance to Chesapeake Bay. When the Norfolk navy-yard was abandoned at the beginning of the war the steam-frigate *Merrimac* was one of the vessels scuttled and sunk. The Confederates raised her and converted her into a powerful ram, which they called the *Virginia*. Her deck and sides were protected by a slant roof of railroad iron.

---

26. What was accomplished at Roanoke Island? What other captures were made? 27. What was done by Com. Dupont? By Gen. Gillmore? 28. What armored vessel had the Confederates fitted up at Norfolk?



29. On the 8th of March, 1862, this strange craft, looking like nothing ever seen before, came out of the Elizabeth River and headed for the Federal fleet in Hampton Roads. The heaviest guns had no effect upon her, shot and shell rolling off her iron roof and sides like hail. She sank the sloop-of-war *Cumberland* by a blow with her



FIGHT OF THE IRON-CLADS MONITOR AND MERRIMAC.

armored ram, and drove the frigate *Congress* ashore and burned her. At night she went back to Norfolk.

30. The next morning she was seen coming out again to complete the work of destruction, and there appeared to be no way of saving the rest of the fleet. But before she reached the ships a still more novel and curious vessel

---

29. Describe her raid into Hampton Roads.





than the *Merrimac* ran out to meet her. This was the *Monitor*, a little iron-clad of a new design, invented by Captain John Ericsson, which had arrived during the night under command of Lieutenant Worden, this being her first voyage. She was not more than one-fifth as large as her antagonist. Her hull was almost entirely under water, and on her deck she had a revolving, shot-proof turret of iron, with two enormous guns inside. The sailors called her "a cheese-box on a raft."

31. The *Monitor* darted at the great Confederate vessel, and for five hours the battle went on, with great expenditure of powder, but with slight effect on either side. At last the *Merrimac* was disabled and returned to Norfolk. She never appeared again. This was the first battle ever fought between iron-clad ships, and the history of it was studied with great interest all over the world. A number of gunboats on the *Monitor* pattern were immediately constructed, and Ericsson's idea influenced the naval systems of all foreign nations.

---

## CHAPTER LIII.

SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR, CONTINUED—McCLELLAN'S PENINSULA CAMPAIGN—INVASION OF MARYLAND—ANTIETAM—BURNSIDE AT FREDERICKSBURG.

1. **The Shenandoah Valley.**—The military operations in Virginia during the year 1862 offered a strong contrast to the course of events at the West. While General McClellan was organizing a splendid army of 200,000 men

---

30. What vessel opportunely arrived just at this time? What was the *Monitor*? 31. Describe the battle. What was the effect?



near Washington, General Banks was detached with one corps to occupy the Shenandoah Valley. He began his advance in February, and pushed the enemy as far south as Harrisonburg, the division of General Shields being especially distinguished in the victorious advance. General Fremont now approached from the West, endeavoring to unite with Banks near Staunton.

2. To prevent this the Confederate General Jackson, popularly known as "Stonewall Jackson" because his troops at Bull Run stood as firm as a stone wall, hastened to attack the Federal forces in detail. He signally defeated a part of Banks's command at Front Royal May 23, and nearly succeeded in getting into the rear of the main body with a much stronger army than Banks could muster. By a hurried retreat Banks reached and crossed the Potomac, closely pursued by the Confederate cavalry.

3. Jackson then turned south, checked Fremont at Cross Keys, June 8, and overpowered Shields at Port Republic, and having thus saved the Shenandoah Valley to the Confederates, and obliged the Government at Washington to detain for the defence of the capital a large body of troops which McClellan greatly needed for other duty, he joined the Confederate army in front of Richmond.

4. **The Army of the Potomac.**—General McClellan concentrated the Army of the Potomac between Washington and Manassas, as if intending to advance against Richmond by that route. Meanwhile, however, he was collecting boats to transport his men to Fortress Monroe, and thence to march up the peninsula between the James

---

1. What was done by Banks in the Shenandoah Valley? 2. How did the Confederates meet this movement? Why was Jackson called "Stonewall"? 3. What was the consequence of his campaign?



and York Rivers. The enemy found out his plan, and, under the chief command of General Joseph E. Johnston, silently changed their position to meet him.

5. On the 4th of April McClellan, having landed about 120,000 men on the peninsula of Yorktown, began his advance over the ground made memorable by the surrender of Lord Cornwallis to General Washington. The Confederates had a line of earthworks across the peninsula, defended by only seventy-five hundred men under General Magruder. These, however, were so artfully and bravely disposed that General McClellan, deceived as to their number, was detained a month before the lines. This gave General Johnston ample time to complete his preparations for the defence of Richmond. At last, when the Federal troops were about to make an assault, Magruder withdrew. Yorktown was then occupied without opposition, May 4. Norfolk, threatened by General Wool, was evacuated by the Confederates May 3, and the famous ram *Virginia*, or *Merrimac*, was blown up to prevent its falling into the hands of the Union forces.

6. Both armies now concentrated around Richmond. McClellan gained the battles of Williamsburg, May 5, and West Point, May 9, and advanced within seven miles of Richmond. A panic broke out in the Southern capital, and the Congress adjourned in haste. Federal gunboats ascended the James River to a point about eight miles below Richmond, but they were unable to pass Fort Darling and retired considerably injured. It was just at this time that Stonewall Jackson, by his brilliant and daring operations in the Shenandoah Valley, obliged President Lincoln to keep in front of Washington a corps

---

4. What was McClellan's plan of advance? 5. What happened at Yorktown? 6. What victories were gained by McClellan? What happened in Richmond?



under McDowell which was about to co-operate with McClellan by way of Fredericksburg.

7. On the 31st of May the Confederates attacked McClellan's left wing, which had been pushed across the Chickahominy at Fair Oaks and Seven Pines. A terrible battle ensued, lasting two days, and memorable for heroism on both sides. The Federal troops were greatly embarrassed by the nature of the ground; for they occupied a vast swamp, and the Chickahominy, swollen by rains, divided their lines. The result, however, was a Union victory. The Confederate General Johnston was severely wounded, and the command of the Army of Virginia devolved upon General Robert E. Lee, who retained it during the rest of the war.

8. **The Seven Days' Battles.**—The absence of McDowell, who was expected to support McClellan's right, compelled a change in the whole plan of operations. Although Lee had been repulsed in an attack upon the Federal lines at Mechanicsville (June 26), he fell upon them again at Gaines's Mill, or Cold Harbor, the next day, in overwhelming force, and drove them across the Chickahominy with terrible loss. Jackson had now re-enforced Lee, and the Confederate cavalry leader Stuart made the circuit of the Federal army, destroying a quantity of stores at White House, on the Pamunkey, which was McClellan's base of supplies. Unable any longer to keep up his communications with the York River, the Union general decided upon the difficult manœuvre of changing his base to the James.

9. This flank movement began on the night of the 28th and continued until July 1, the troops marching all night and fighting all day, Lee attacking them at Golding's

---

7. Describe the battle of Fair Oaks and Seven Pines? Who succeeded Johnston? 8. What obliged McClellan to change his plan? What happened at Gaines's Mill? What did McClellan undertake?



Farm, Savage's Station, White Oak Swamp, etc., and directing a heavy force against them at Malvern Hill, near the James, where, however, he was signally repulsed. This was the last of a series of engagements known as the



“Seven Days’ Battles,” in the course of which McClellan lost over fifteen thousand men. Lee suffered almost as much.

10. After the battle of Malvern Hill McClellan fell back

9. When did the flank movement begin? Describe it. What were the engagements called? 10. What did McClellan do next?



to Harrison's Landing, on the James, and fortified himself in a strong position where the gunboats could protect him. Both parties were glad of an opportunity to rest and repair damages, and during the next month there were no important engagements.

**11. Lee moves North.**—Feeling no anxiety about Richmond for the present, Lee determined to invade the North. General Pope had been called from the West and placed in command of the troops reserved for the defence of Washington, namely, the corps of McDowell, Banks, and Fremont, amounting to not more than forty thousand men. Lee's advance met Banks at Cedar Mountain, and defeated him in a sharp engagement, August 9.

**12.** As soon as the Confederate design was perceived the President ordered McClellan to abandon the peninsula and transfer his army by water to the Potomac. Pope fell back slowly from the Rappahannock towards Washington, continually fighting with Lee's advance, which he hoped to hold in check until McClellan should arrive. In the meantime, however, Lee had sent Jackson around a mountain ridge at the west, to pass through Thoroughfare Gap and fall upon Pope's rear.

**13.** Jackson executed this manœuvre, and from the 26th of August to the 1st of September there was an almost uninterrupted battle, a part of the fighting taking place on the old field of Manassas, and being known as the second battle of Bull Run. Portions of McClellan's force arrived during these critical days and were placed under Pope, but Pope complained that some of them did not properly support him. In an engagement at Chantilly, September 1, the Confederates were repulsed; but Pope was

---

11. What was Lee's project? Who commanded in front of Washington? What battle was fought? 12. What orders were sent to McClellan? 13. Describe Pope's campaign,



now greatly outnumbered, and, having lost about thirty thousand men and a quantity of guns and stores, he retreated to the defences of Washington and resigned his command. General McClellan, whose popularity with the soldiers was unbounded, was again placed in charge of the Army of the Potomac.

**14. Invasion of Maryland.**—Lee now disregarded Washington, and, moving further up the Potomac, crossed into Maryland at Leesburg, while Jackson proceeded still higher up the river and attacked Harper's Ferry. This important post, commanded by Colonel Miles, surrendered on the 15th of September with thirteen thousand prisoners. Lee's invasion of Maryland was made at the exact time of Bragg's invasion of Kentucky.

**15.** McClellan in the meanwhile pushed between Jackson and Lee, and on the 14th defeated Lee at South Mountain, obliging the Confederate leader to fall back in order to secure his communication with Jackson, who, with characteristic energy and watchfulness, was hastening to join him.

**16. Battle of Antietam.**—The Confederates united at Sharpsburg, Maryland, on a little stream called the Antietam, which flows into the Potomac, and there a severe battle was fought, September 17, 1862, Lee having about 70,000 men and McClellan 87,000. The fighting lasted all day, with a loss of over 12,000 on the Union side, and probably as many on the other. At the close of the slaughter each army held its own ground, but neither was in a condition to renew the struggle next day, and Lee retired and re-crossed the Potomac.

**17.** The invasion was thus repelled, but the President

---

14. What were Lee's next movements? 15. What did McClellan do? 16. Describe the battle of Antietam. Give the date. The result.



was dissatisfied with General McClellan's management of the campaign, and in November replaced him by General Burnside. The new commander moved at once towards Richmond, proposing to cross the Rappahannock at Fredericksburg.

**18. Battle of Fredericksburg.**—Lee posted his army, eighty thousand strong, on a range of heights back of Fredericksburg, on the south side of the river. He was protected by a line of earthworks and a thick stone wall about four feet high. Burnside crossed the Rappahannock on the 11th and 12th of December, and, forming his army in columns of attack under the partial shelter of the houses of Fredericksburg, he attempted on the 13th to scale the heights.

**19.** It was a day of horrible carnage. The Confederates were organized in two corps under Jackson and Longstreet; the Unionists in three grand divisions under Franklin, Hooker, and Sumner, with Hancock, French, W. F. Smith, Stoneman, Reynolds, and Wileox as corps commanders. It was in vain that Burnside's gallant soldiers threw themselves against the heights; the enemy's artillery never failed to sweep away the heads of the columns before they could reach the top. The most formidable of the positions was the stone wall. The Irish brigade of Meagher assailed that no fewer than six times, going into the battle with twelve hundred men, and losing more than nine hundred of them. At night Burnside found himself everywhere repulsed. He had lost about twelve thousand men; the army was demoralized; and retreating to the north side of the river, he was replaced by General Hooker.

---

17. Who replaced McClellan? What was Burnside's plan? 18. Describe the positions at Fredericksburg. 19. Give an account of the battle. Who replaced Burnside?





20. The year closed at the North in gloom and discouragement. At the State elections in the autumn there was a majority against the Administration in several of the Northern States, and the result of the campaigns on the Potomac gave great strength to the peace party, which believed that the attempt to subjugate the South ought to be abandoned.

---

## CHAPTER LIV.

THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR, 1863—CHANCELLORSVILLE—GETTYSBURG—  
VICKSBURG—CHICKAMAUGA—CHATTANOOGA—CONFEDERATE CRUISERS.

1. **Emancipation.**—On the 1st of January, 1863, President Lincoln issued his celebrated Proclamation of Emancipation, in which he declared all slaves in the States or parts of States “in rebellion against the United States” to be for ever free. In the previous September he had publicly announced his intention to take this step if the Southern States did not return to the Union.

2. **The Army of the Potomac.**—Hooker spent three months in reorganizing and strengthening the Army of the Potomac, and at the end of April began his march towards Richmond with 120,000 men. Sending the 6th corps under Sedgwick to cross the Rappahannock below Fredericksburg, he threw his main body across the river a few miles higher, and before Lee understood his purpose he had advanced to Chancellorsville, about five miles from the scene of Burnside’s defeat.

3. **Battle of Chancellorsville.**—Lee had only half as

---

20. What was the effect of these battles at the North? 1. What important proclamation did the President issue? The date? 2. What was Hooker’s plan?



many men as Hooker, but the position was greatly in his favor. The battle lasted all through the 2d and 3d of May. Jackson, at the head of twenty-five thousand men, made a magnificent attack upon the Union right, taking it by surprise, throwing the whole wing into confusion and putting most of it to flight. Sedgwick on the left carried the Heights of Fredericksburg, and was pushing on towards Chancellorsville when the disaster on the right enabled Lee to face him with the main Confederate army. Sedgwick was at last compelled to withdraw during the night that followed the 4th of May, and Hooker recrossed the Rappahannock the next night. The Federal losses were seventeen thousand. The Confederates, on the other hand, sustained a severe misfortune in the death of Stonewall Jackson, who was shot through mistake by his own men.

**4. Invasion of Pennsylvania.**—Lee now repeated the manœuvre he had practised after the defeat of Pope, and hastened with nearly all his force to invade the North. He seemed to have a fair prospect of capturing Washington, but Hooker threw himself between the capital and the invading force, and Lee marched through the Shenandoah Valley, entered Pennsylvania, and advanced to Chambersburg. From that point he threatened not only Washington but Baltimore and Philadelphia. There was great alarm at the North, and re-enforcements were hurried to Pennsylvania from all parts.

**5. Battle of Gettysburg.**—In consequence of a disagreement with General Halleck, Hooker resigned the command of the Army of the Potomac, and it was given (June 28) to General George G. Meade. The two hostile armies, each

---

3. Describe the battle of Chancellorsville. What great loss did the Confederates sustain? 4. Give an account of the invasion of Pennsylvania. 5. Who replaced Hooker?



about 100,000 strong, were now moving north in parallel lines, with the Blue Ridge and South Mountain Range between them. On the 1st of July they met near Gettysburg.

6. Meade took a strong position on a line of hills and awaited the attack. The battle lasted till the close of the 3d, and was one of the most bravely contested of the whole war. Lee was at length driven back with the loss of nearly 40,000 men. Meade's loss was 23,000. On the 4th of July Lee retreated towards the Potomac, which he soon after crossed, and the invasion of the North was at an end. This was the turning-point of the war. The South was never able to collect so fine an army again, and never recovered from the exhaustion of the Gettysburg campaign.

7. **General Grant in the West.**—On the very day of Lee's retreat General Grant gained a decisive victory on the Mississippi. He had failed in several attempts to take Vicksburg from the north, and he now determined to transfer his army to the south side of the place. To do this it was necessary to cross the Mississippi, march down the west bank of the river, then cross again below Vicksburg, and march up the east bank; and the fleet, which had run past the batteries of Vicksburg after the capture of New Orleans, would have to pass them again in order to transport the army over the river and protect the crossing.

8. This plan was put in operation in April. As Vicksburg is built on the high bluff at a bend in the Mississippi, its guns commanded the river for a great distance both above and below, and the passage by the gunboats was attended with extreme danger. Commodore Porter, however, performed his task successfully under a heavy fire, and

---

6. Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg. What is said of this battle? 7. What was General Grant doing in the West? 8. How was his new plan put in operation?



on the 29th of April opened a cannonade upon Grand Gulf, at the mouth of the Big Black River, where it had been determined to attempt a crossing. The Confederate batteries here proving too strong, the fleet ran past them, as it had run the batteries of Vicksburg, and the crossing was made at Bruinsburg, a few miles below.

9. Grant now pushed forward with all speed, and Sherman, who had been left to deceive the enemy by a demonstration against Vicksburg on the north, made haste to join him. The Confederates were beaten at Port Gibson and compelled to evacuate Grand Gulf, and on the 14th of May the troops of McPherson and Sherman captured Jackson, the capital of the State of Mississippi, and a place of great military importance on account of its railway connections. It is forty-five miles east of Vicksburg.

10. The Confederate forces at Jackson consisted of an army hastening from the east under command of General Joseph E. Johnston to relieve Vicksburg. Grant's bold and rapid movements, however, baffled all Johnston's attempts to reach the beleaguered city. After the victory at Jackson the Union army turned around and fell upon the Confederate General Pemberton, who had marched out of Vicksburg with twenty-five thousand men to unite with Johnston. Pemberton was beaten and driven back at Champion Hills on the 16th, and beaten again at the crossing of the Black River on the 17th. He then retired to the defences of Vicksburg.

11. Anxious to carry the city before Johnston could recover from his defeat at Jackson, Grant made two grand assaults (May 19 and 22), but in spite of the gallantry of his heroic army he was beaten back with heavy loss. He

---

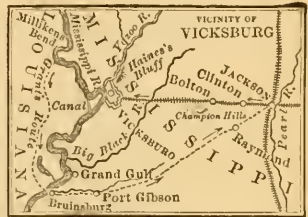
How did the fleet pass the Confederate batteries? 9. Describe the advance towards Jackson. 10. The fighting with Pemberton. 11. The assaults upon Vicksburg.



then began a regular siege. The place was invested on all sides. The formidable batteries at Haines's Bluff, which had so long resisted his attempts to advance from the north, were evacuated, and Porter, after reducing the Confederate positions on the Yazoo River, brought his mortar-boats into a position on the Mississippi from which he could shell the city.

**12. Capture of Vicksburg.**—The siege lasted forty-five days. At the end of that time, being out of provisions and fearing an assault, Pemberton proposed to surrender, and

on the 4th of July, 1863, Grant took possession of the great Confederate stronghold of the West. Pemberton gave up 27,000 prisoners; he had previously lost 10,000 captured in the various



battles before Vicksburg, and as many more killed and wounded. Grant's losses in this memorable campaign, from the time he crossed the Mississippi at Bruinsburg, were eighty-five hundred.

**13.** Sherman was now hurled against Johnston, who did not venture a general engagement, but after making a short stand at Jackson hurriedly retreated. Port Hudson, a strong place on the Mississippi above Baton Rouge, surrendered to General Banks July 8. Helena, on the Arkansas side of the river, some distance above Vicksburg, was attacked by the Confederates in vain. From this time the Union forces held control of the whole Mississippi, the Confederacy being thus cut in two.

**14.** The Vicksburg campaign marked the decline of the

---

12. Give an account of the siege of Vicksburg. When did it surrender? 13. What operations followed? 14. What is said of the Vicksburg campaign?



Confederate fortunes in the West, as the Gettysburg campaign did in the East. The South had put forth its utmost efforts and used almost its last resources. About the middle of April General Grant had detached a force of one thousand cavalry under Colonel Grierson to traverse Mississippi and cut the railroads east of Vicksburg. In two weeks Grierson rode the whole length of the State, from a point near Memphis to Baton Rouge, destroying stores, passing between the armies of Johnston and Pemberton, and losing only twenty-seven men. He reported that the country was exhausted, being little more than a shell.

**15. The Draft Riots.**—As early as April, 1862, the Confederate Congress had passed a conscription act, enrolling in the army all adult white males below a certain age. In March, 1863, the United States Congress passed a somewhat similar act for the enrollment of all able-bodied male citizens between eighteen and forty-five, and the President was authorized to make drafts for the military service, those between twenty and thirty-five to be first called upon. A call for 300,000 troops under this law was made in May, and as the full number was not obtained by volunteering a draft was ordered to supply the deficiency. This draft took place in New York City in July, just after the battle of Gettysburg, and was followed by a riot, which lasted four days (July 13–16), and resulted in a number of shocking murders and the destruction of \$2,000,000 worth of property. There were riots also in Boston, Jersey City, and other places.

**16. Tennessee and Georgia.**—After his brilliant victory near Murfreesboro in January Rosecrans remained quiet for

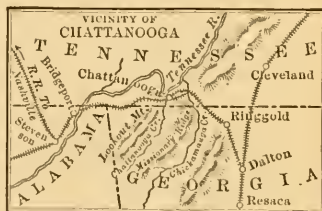
---

What is said of the condition of the South? Of Grierson's raid? 15. Give an account of the draft riots. 16. What did Rosecrans do after his victory near Murfreesboro?



some time, preparing for a new campaign. It was not until the end of June that he was able to advance. His movements were so well planned that in a few days he obliged General Bragg to evacuate Middle Tennessee and fall back in haste towards Georgia.

**17. Battle of Chickamauga.**—Rosecrans followed him across the Tennessee River, and was beyond the strong position of Chattanooga when Bragg, having been heavily re-enforced by a part of Johnston's army and by Longstreet's corps from Lee, turned at Chickamauga Creek to give battle. A severe engagement was fought September 19 without decisive result. But the next day the Confederates, now largely outnumbering their adversaries, gained a clear victory, Longstreet routing the right wing of the Union army after a determined contest. The stubborn resistance of Thomas on the left prevented the rout from becoming general. Bragg did not venture to follow up his advantage, and after a day's inaction Rosecrans retired to Chattanooga.



**18. Burnside's Operations.**—The Government at Washington had committed the mistake of dividing its forces; for while Rosecrans with only 55,000 men was left to face the 92,000 concentrated under Bragg, General Burnside was sent into East Tennessee with an independent army of 20,000 men. The Confederates wisely retired before him until they had overwhelmed Rosecrans, and then Longstreet was despatched to attack Burnside at Knoxville.

17. Give an account of the battles at Chickamauga Creek. What followed? 18. What mistake had been made by the Federal Government? How did the Confederates take advantage of it?



A brave assault was gallantly repelled at the end of November, and soon afterwards the defeat of Bragg obliged Longstreet to abandon the siege and retreat to Virginia.

**19. Grant at Chattanooga.**—In October General Rosecrans was relieved of his command and General Grant placed in charge of all the Western armies, the immediate command of the Army of the Cumberland being entrusted to General G. H. Thomas. Grant proceeded to Chattanooga, and, being there joined by Sherman from the Mississippi and Hooker with two corps from the Potomac, assaulted Bragg's position on two parallel ranges called Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge.

**20.** Hooker carried Lookout Mountain by storm November 24, part of the fighting taking place in the midst of a thick mist which covered the summit; hence this is called the "battle above the clouds." On the next day Missionary Ridge was scaled by the main army, Hooker on the right, Thomas in the centre, and Sherman on the left, and Bragg retreated into Georgia. A part of the victorious army was at once sent to the relief of Burnside at Knoxville. Hooker pursued the retiring enemy, but was checked at Ringgold by the dashing Confederate general, Pat. Cleburne. Bragg was soon afterwards relieved of his command.

**21. Morgan's Raid.**—The Confederate cavalry leader, General John Morgan, made a remarkable raid through Kentucky into Indiana and Ohio in the summer of this year at the head of about three thousand horsemen. Most of his men were captured, and Morgan with the remnant of the band at last surrendered. He was sent to prison, but escaped by digging out, and was killed in battle the next year.

---

19. What changes were made in the commands at the West? 20. Describe the battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. 21. Give an account of Morgan.





**22. Operations on the Coast.**—Operations on the coast began inauspiciously for the Unionists this year, the Confederates under Magruder capturing Galveston, Texas, on the 1st of January, and getting possession of one armed vessel and destroying another.

**23. Affairs at Charleston.**—The strongest of the Southern seaports, as well as the most important, was Charleston, and many attempts were made to reduce it. An attack by a fleet of nine iron-clads, under Commodore Dupont, was beaten off April 7, 1863, one of the vessels being sunk. In July General Gillmore undertook a siege of the harbor forts. An assault upon Fort Wagner, on Morris Island, having been repulsed with heavy loss, batteries were erected on the island, and by extraordinary exertions an enormous Parrott gun was secretly planted in the marshes, whence the city itself could be reached. Fort Wagner was taken September 7, after a tremendous bombardment, in which the fleet, under Commodore Dahlgren, cooperated with Gillmore's batteries. Fort Sumter was reduced to ruins; the blockading ships were thus enabled to enter the harbor, and the port of Charleston was entirely closed.

**24. Confederate Cruisers.**—With the aid of the British government the Confederate authorities succeeded in fitting out several formidable cruisers, which in the course of the year 1863 did enormous damage to Northern commerce. The *Florida*, built at Liverpool, ran the blockade into Mobile, and issued from that port in January, 1863. She captured twenty-one vessels, and was then seized in the harbor of Bahia, Brazil (October, 1864). Three of her captures were fitted out as cruisers and manned from her officers and crew.

---

22 What occurred at Galveston on the 1st of January? 23. Describe the attacks upon Charleston. How was the port finally closed? 24. How did the Confederates obtain armed vessels of war?



25. The *Georgia* was built at Glasgow, and put to sea in April, but was captured after a short cruise by the United States frigate *Niagara*. The *Olustee* (or *Tallahassee*), *Chickamauga*, and *Shenandoah* were built or purchased in England afterwards.

26. The most important of the cruisers was the *Alabama*, built at Liverpool for Captain Semmes after the sale of the *Sumter*. Mr. Adams, the American minister in London, urged the British Government to enforce its own laws and prevent her going to sea; nevertheless, she was allowed to sail in July. After destroying more than sixty vessels the *Alabama* challenged the United States war steamer *Kearsarge*, Captain Winslow, to fight her off the harbor of Cherbourg, France—an invitation which was gladly accepted. The two ships were fairly matched, but Captain Winslow had the better gunners, and after an action of about an hour the *Alabama* was sunk, Captain Semmes and many of his crew being picked up by an English yacht, while nearly all the rest were rescued by the *Kearsarge* (June 19, 1864).

27. By the operations of these cruisers, which obtained all their supplies, etc., in British ports, the foreign shipping trade of the United States was almost ruined, and what this country lost the English ship-owners secured. The unlawful conduct of Great Britain in this matter was long a cause of bad feeling between the two countries. The matter was at last settled by England's paying to the United States fifteen and a half million dollars in satisfaction of the "*Alabama* claims." (See page 373.)

28. In June of this year the western counties of Virginia, which had refused to join the Southern Confede-

25. Name some of the Confederate cruisers. 26. Which was the most important of them? What became of her? 27. What was the effect of these cruisers upon American trade?



racy, were admitted into the Union as the State of West Virginia.

---

## CHAPTER LV.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR, 1864—GENERAL GRANT IN COMMAND OF ALL THE FEDERAL ARMIES—BATTLES OF THE WILDERNESS—SIEGE OF PETERSBURG—EARLY AND SHERIDAN—SHERMAN'S ATLANTA CAMPAIGN—THOMAS AT NASHVILLE—SHERMAN'S MARCH TO THE SEA—CAPTURE OF SAVANNAH—FARRAGUT AT MOBILE—RE-ELECTION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

**1. Minor Operations.**—At the beginning of the year 1864 there were numerous detached operations which attracted a great deal of notice at the time, but may be passed over briefly, because they had little direct bearing upon the final campaigns now close at hand. General Seymour led a Union expedition into Florida and was defeated. General Sherman marched into Mississippi and destroyed railroads, bridges, and supplies. General Banks, accompanied by Commodore Porter with his gunboats, ascended the Red River to attack Shreveport and bring away cot-



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

---

28. When was the State of West Virginia admitted? Of what was it formed? 1. Mention some of the minor operations at the beginning of 1864.



ton. This expedition ended in disaster. While the fleet was up the river the water became low and the boats were unable to pass the rapids on their return. Porter would have been obliged to destroy the whole fleet, but Lieutenant-Colonel Bailey, who had been a lumberman in Wisconsin, built a dam below the rapids and raised the water so that the gunboats could pass; then the dam was cut and the fleet shot through the opening.

2. The Confederate General Forrest made a raid into Tennessee and Kentucky, and captured Fort Pillow April 12, where a number of negro troops were killed.

3. General Rosecrans, having been appointed to command in Missouri, discovered there an extensive secret organization for co-operating with the Confederates. He arrested some of the members, and was afterwards engaged in repelling an invasion by General Sterling Price, whom at last he drove out of the State.

4. **Reorganization of the Armies.**—At the opening of the spring a change of great importance was made in the manner of conducting the war. Much had hitherto been lost by the failure of the various generals to co-operate with one another, and an act of Congress now revived the grade of lieutenant-general (never held before by any one in this country, except General Washington, although Scott had been lieutenant-general by brevet), with the understanding that it should be conferred upon General Grant. Mr. Lincoln accordingly nominated Grant for the new rank March 1, and he became general-in-chief\* of all the

---

\* By the Constitution the President is commander-in-chief of the army and navy. The lieutenant-general stands in the President's place, and is the highest in rank under him.

---

What ingenious plan was devised on the Red River? 2. What is said of Forrest's raid? 3. What did General Rosecrans do in Missouri? 4. What important measure was adopted in the spring?



armies of the United States. General Halleck had the rank of chief of staff of the army.

5. The three western armies of the Ohio, the Cumberland, and the Tennessee were now placed under the command of Sherman, while Grant took personal direction of the campaign against Richmond, Meade retaining the immediate charge of the Army of the Potomac. The Army of the Potomac was reorganized in three corps, under Hancock, Warren, and Sedgwick, to which was soon added another under Burnside, and Sheridan, called from the West, was appointed to the command of all the cavalry of this army. Lee had likewise divided his forces into three corps, under Ewell, A. P. Hill, and Longstreet. They were the flower of the Southern troops.

6. **The Wilderness.**—It having been arranged that Meade and Sherman should move at the same time, the Army of the Potomac crossed the Rapidan May 4, 1864, and found itself on the edge of a table-land called the Wilderness, covered with a thick growth of bushes and small trees, a short distance west of the battle-field of Chancellorsville. It was Grant's object to push through this difficult country as rapidly as possible, and Lee's object to attack him incessantly while he was still entangled in the labyrinth of the woods.

7. The battles began on the 5th and continued without interruption till the 12th, both sides fighting like heroes and suffering severely, but Lee being slowly forced back or outflanked and so compelled to retreat little by little. On the 9th Grant was clear of the Wilderness and concentrated near Spottsylvania Court-House. Here the most furious and obstinate fighting raged with little

---

5. How were the armies reorganized? 6. When did the Army of the Potomac move? What was the Wilderness? What was Grant's object? What was Lee's?



intermission during ten days. Grant, who had lost nearly twenty thousand men in the Wilderness, lost ten thousand more here, and among the killed was the commander of the Sixth Corps, General Sedgwick, a brave and thorough soldier. Lee's losses, however, had also been severe, General Hancock's corps alone taking seven thousand prisoners and twenty-one pieces of artillery, and Lee was much less able to bear such losses than Grant.

8. On the 11th Grant had telegraphed to Washington: "I propose to fight it out on this line, if it takes all summer." He continued, in spite of repeated repulses, to move to the left and try again. At the end of May he had reached McClellan's old battle-ground near the Chickahominy. There he fought two severe battles at Cold Harbor. In the second of these (June 3) Colonel McMahan, at the head of a New York regiment, succeeded in planting his colors inside the Confederate works, when he was killed. In twenty minutes the army was hurled back with the loss of ten thousand men.

9. Grant now crossed the Chickahominy, and, moving far to the right of his adversary, transferred his army beyond the James to assail Richmond from the south. This involved the reduction of the strongly-fortified town of Petersburg, on the Appomattox, practically a part of the defences of Richmond, from which it is twenty miles distant.

10. **General Butler on the James.**—In connection with Grant's movement from the Rapidan General Butler had been sent up the James from Fortress Monroe with thirty thousand men. He reached a peninsula called Bermuda Hundreds, which lies between the Appomattox

---

7. Describe the battles of the Wilderness. What followed near Spottsylvania Court-House? What were Grant's losses? 8. What occurred at Cold Harbor? 9. To what point was the attack on Richmond now shifted?



and a bend in the James, and was there attacked by Beauregard, May 16, and brought to a stop.

**11. Siege of Petersburg**—Re-enforced, so that his army now amounted to 150,000 men, Grant crossed the James, and in conjunction with Butler made three attempts (June 15, 16, and 18) to carry Petersburg by assault. These trials failed, and cost the Federal commander ten thousand men. A battle a few days later on the Federal left, where Grant endeavored to seize the railroad running south from Richmond and Petersburg to Weldon, resulted in the loss of four thousand men with little compensating advantage. An attempt to capture one of the Confederate forts by exploding a mine under it, and throwing an assaulting column into the chasm, was a terrible failure (July 30). All through the summer the fighting continued at various parts of the line, and when Grant at last desisted from these bloody assaults and settled down to a regular siege, the losses of his army (from the crossing of the Rapidan in May to the end of October) reached the enormous total of 100,000 men, while Lee had lost about forty thousand.

**12. The Shenandoah Valley.**—A force under General Sheridan was sent to cut the railroad communications west of Richmond in the spring, and another under Sigel (soon succeeded by Hunter) operated in the Shenandoah valley. Hunter was obliged to retreat into West Virginia, and Lee at once seized the opportunity to send Early into the valley with a corps strong enough to menace Washington, hoping that this would induce Grant to call off troops from Petersburg.

**13.** Early crossed into Maryland July 5, 1864, de-

---

10. What movement did General Butler make? 11. Describe the first attempts to take Petersburg. What were the losses on each side in six months? 12. What happened west of Richmond?



feated a Federal force under General Lewis Wallace at the Monocacy, and approached within a few miles of Baltimore and Washington. Both cities were too well defended to be attacked, and Early, having collected a great many horses and cattle and spread general alarm, recrossed the Potomac and retreated as far as Winchester.

14. There he turned and defeated a pursuing force under General Crook, July 23, the gallant General Mulligan (famous for his defence of Lexington in 1861) being among the killed. Elated by victory, Early invaded Maryland again, entered Pennsylvania, and burned the town of Chambersburg, July 30. Still Grant would not quit the James River, but he sent Sheridan to take command in the valley, and gave him thirty thousand troops with Generals Wright, Wilson, Torbert, Crook, and others. Sheridan defeated Early at



PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.

Winchester September 19, and at Fisher's Hill two days later, after which he destroyed all the rich crops in the valley and carried off the cattle, so that the Confederates need have no temptation to go back there.

15. The campaign in the Shenandoah was supposed to be ended, but Early obtained fresh troops and sud-

---

13. Describe Early's raid into Maryland. 14. What did he do after reaching Winchester? What happened at Chambersburg? How did Grant meet this invasion? What did Sheridan do?





denly fell upon the Federals at Cedar Creek, October 19, driving them in great confusion. Sheridan was at Winchester when this happened. Hearing the guns, he leaped to his horse, and by hard riding reached the field in time to restore his lines and change the defeat into a victory. Early's army was practically broken up.

**16. Sherman's Atlanta Campaign.**—General Grant's plan having provided for the advance of the eastern and western armies simultaneously, Sherman, with 100,000 men under Thomas, McPherson, and Schofield, began his march from Chattanooga May 7, three days after Grant's crossing of the Rapidan. The Confederates opposed to him were about sixty thousand strong, commanded by one of the very ablest of the Southern generals, Joseph E. Johnston. Sherman's first object was the capture of Atlanta, Georgia, a very strongly fortified place about one hundred miles south of Chattanooga, and the chief manufactory of military supplies for the Confederate armies.



WILLIAM T. SHERMAN.

**17.** Johnston with his inferior force could not afford to fight a regular battle, but he made the best use of the various defensive positions which the rough and mountainous country afforded. Sherman, on the other hand,

---

15. Describe "Sheridan's Ride." 16. What movement was made at the West while Grant was in the Wilderness? What was Sherman's force? Who was opposed to him? What was Sherman's first object?



conducted his advance with remarkable skill, constantly flanking his enemy and compelling him to evacuate one position after another. These movements were not effected without fighting, and there were severe engagements at Resaca (May 15), Dallas (May 25), Lost Mountain, where the Confederate general Bishop Polk was killed (June 14), and Kenesaw Mountain, where Sherman lost three thousand men in an unsuccessful assault (June 27). By the 10th of July Johnston was behind the defences of Atlanta, and Sherman was facing him, with the Chattahoochee River between the two armies.

18. This campaign reflected great credit upon both commanders; but the Confederate Government was dissatisfied with Johnston's careful defensive tactics, and replaced him by Hood, who was expected to pursue a bolder policy. Hood accordingly attacked Sherman with great spirit July 20 and 26, but he could do nothing against greatly superior forces, and sacrificed in the two fruitless assaults about thirteen thousand men. The Federals sustained a heavy loss in the death of General McPherson.

19. **Capture of Atlanta.**—At length by a masterly movement Sherman succeeded in suddenly transferring almost his entire army to the rear of Atlanta and cutting Hood's forces in two. This obliged the Confederates after some sharp fighting to retreat in all haste, and on the 2d of September Sherman entered Atlanta.

20. General Hood now determined to invade Tennessee, in order to compel Sherman to fall back and defend that State. But Sherman was no more to be controlled by this device than Grant had been by Early's invasion of

---

17. Describe the advance to Atlanta. 18. What is said of the campaign? Who took the place of Johnston? What did he attempt? 19. How was Atlanta captured? 20. What did Hood do?



Maryland and Pennsylvania. He followed Hood for a little while, and then, returning to Atlanta, arranged the remarkable and brilliant campaign which brought the war in the West to a close. General Thomas, with the Army of the Tennessee, was sent to take care of Hood, while Sherman himself with the rest of his force should cut loose from all his connections and march boldly to Savannah.

21. Hood advanced towards Nashville, fighting a severe engagement (November 30) with General Schofield at Franklin, where the Confederates lost six thousand men. Among their killed was General Patrick Cleburne, called "the Stonewall Jackson of the West," an Irishman who had been a private in the British army, and who won a great reputation as a daring hard fighter.



GEORGE H. THOMAS.

22. When Hood reached Nashville his command was reduced to about forty thousand men, while General Thomas, who awaited him there behind the fortifications, was rapidly increasing his forces, so that, although they had been greatly inferior to Hood's at the beginning, the two armies were now nearly equal.

23. On the 15th of December Thomas suddenly fell upon

---

What was Sherman's plan? Who was instructed to take care of Hood? 21. Describe Hood's advance? Who was General Cleburne? 22. What was the strength of each side at Nashville?



the Confederate lines. The battle lasted two days, and ended in the complete overthrow and demoralization of Hood's army, General Wilson, with his cavalry, pursuing the fugitives for fifty miles. In the course of his campaign Thomas had taken twelve thousand prisoners.

**24. The March to the Sea.**—In the meanwhile General



Sherman, burning Atlanta, destroying the railroads and telegraphs in his rear, and sending back the sick and wounded and much of the baggage, began (November 14) his march of more than two hundred miles across Georgia. His army, sixty-five thousand strong, was spread out

23. Give an account of Hood's defeat. 24. What did Sherman do at Atlanta? What was the number of his men? How far had he to march?



over a breadth of forty miles, and moved with difficulty over deep roads and through dense swamps, subsisting on the produce of the country, and followed by long trains of captured cotton and stores and thousands of fugitive slaves. There was little fighting. The Confederates had numerous bodies of troops which might have been concentrated to oppose the march, but Sherman's dispositions were so artfully made that they never could tell which way he was going.

25. For four weeks nothing was heard of him at the North. At last, when the country had become very uneasy, he appeared in the rear of Savannah and attacked Fort McAllister. This work was taken by assault December 13. Gunboats now came up the river, and on the 20th Savannah was evacuated, Sherman sending the news of the capture to President Lincoln as a "Christmas gift." The spoils of Savannah included one hundred and fifty heavy guns and twenty-five thousand bales of cotton.

26. **The War on the Coast.**—The only important ports, except Galveston, that remained open to the Confederates in the summer of this year were Mobile in Alabama and Wilmington in North Carolina. The entrance to Mobile Bay was defended by two formidable fortifications, Gaines and Morgan, besides a number of batteries. Farragut, with a fleet of eighteen vessels, four of which were iron-clads, attacked the forts August 5, fought his way past them, captured a powerful iron-plated ram called the *Tennessee*, dispersed or captured several gunboats, and then resumed fire upon the forts, which soon surrendered to the co-operating land force of General Granger. During the battle Farragut had himself tied to the main-top of his

---

Describe "the March to the Sea." 25. How long did it last? Where was Sherman heard of? What "Christmas gift" did he send to the President? 26. Describe the battle of Mobile Bay.



flag-ship, the *Hartford*, so that he could see and direct everything. The port of Mobile was now closed, but no attempt was made for the present to take the city.

27. The approach to Wilmington was commanded by Fort Fisher, at the mouth of the Cape Fear River. A fleet under Commodore Porter, accompanied by an army under General Butler, attacked it unsuccessfully about Christmas. The next month a larger military force was landed near the fort under command of General Terry, and captured it by assault, January 16, 1865, after a bombardment from Porter.

28. The Confederates had a powerful iron-clad ram called the *Albemarle* in the Roanoke River, with which, after capturing Plymouth, North Carolina, they inflicted a great deal of damage upon the Federal gunboats in Albemarle Sound. In October, 1864, Lieutenant Cushing, of the navy, volunteered to destroy this vessel. He went up the river in a small boat, and under severe fire coolly fastened a torpedo to the ram, blew her up, and made his escape by swimming.

29. **Re-election of President Lincoln.**—The Presidential election took place in November of this year, and Mr. Lincoln was chosen for a second term by a very large majority, with Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, as Vice-President. The candidates of the Democrats were General McClellan, and Mr. Pendleton, of Ohio.

---

27. Give an account of the attacks upon Fort Fisher. Where is that work? 28. What happened in Albemarle Sound? How was the ram *Albemarle* destroyed? 29. What was the result of the election of 1864?



## CHAPTER LVI.

## THE END OF THE WAR—ASSASSINATION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

1. **Sherman Marches North.**—Sherman rested a month in Savannah and then marched northward to co-operate with Grant. He started on the 1st of February, seized Columbia, and so obliged the Confederates to evacuate Charleston, crossed the whole State of South Carolina, devouring everything on his way, and about the middle of March reached Fayetteville, North Carolina.

2. Here a gunboat ascending the Cape Fear River brought news of the capture of Fort Fisher and the surrender of Wilmington to the Federal forces. A halt was made, and Generals Schofield and Terry, who were waiting on the coast with re-enforcements, were ordered to unite with Sherman at Goldsborough.

3. The Federal general had avoided serious opposition by repeating his old device of baffling the enemy as to his object. A considerable Confederate force, however, comprising the commands of Hardee from Charleston, Beauregard from Columbia, Cheatham from Tennessee, Bragg and Hoke from North Carolina, and the cavalry of Wheeler and Wade Hampton, had now been collected in his front and placed under the charge of General Johnston. There was some sharp fighting north of Fayetteville; but Goldsborough was reached March 21, and the army was rested and reloaded. Johnston was at Raleigh. While preparations were made for the final conflict Sherman took a steamer on the coast and hurriedly visited the James River, where he met the President, General

---

1. What was Sherman's course after the capture of Savannah? 3. How did he avoid a battle? What force now opposed him? What did he do after reaching Goldsborough?



Grant, and General Meade, and arranged with them the plan of operations for the future.

4. During Sherman's march through South Carolina Sheridan was sent again into the Shenandoah Valley to destroy Lee's communications in the rear of Richmond. He defeated Early at Waynesborough, cut the railroads and canals, and, passing around Richmond, rejoined Grant near Petersburg just as Sherman arrived there for his conference with the President and the general-in-chief.

5. **Last Battles before Richmond.**—The situation of Lee was now desperate. He was not only pressed by Grant, but threatened with the speedy approach of the victorious Sherman, and the Confederacy had used up all its resources and called out its last man. Lee's only hope was to cut his way out of Richmond and unite with Johnston in North Carolina. With this purpose he made a severe attack upon Grant's lines at Fort Steedman, east of Petersburg, March 25, expecting that the besieging army would be obliged to concentrate there to resist him, when he intended to break through at another place and to combine with Johnston in crushing Sherman. The movement failed, and Lee was repulsed with heavy loss.

6. On the 29th Grant began a general advance upon the Confederate positions before Petersburg. It continued with some interruptions until the 2d of April. Sheridan, on the extreme left, gained a decisive and hard-won victory at Five Forks, April 1, practically demolishing Lee's right wing. The Confederate lines in two other places were carried by assault the next morning. Lee saw that it was no longer possible to hold either Peters-

---

4. What did Sheridan do during Sherman's march? 5. What was Lee's condition now? How did he try to extricate himself? The result? 6. Describe the final advance upon Petersburg.





burg or Richmond, and accordingly telegraphed to President Davis on Sunday morning, April 2, that the capital must be evacuated the same evening.

**7. Fall of Richmond.**—The Confederate authorities hastened to escape to Danville with what little they could carry, first setting fire to the shipping, tobacco warehouses, etc., at Richmond, and Lee retreated towards Lynchburg, still hoping to effect a junction there with Johnston. The Federal troops occupied Petersburg on the 3d, and entered Richmond the same day.

**8. Surrender of Lee.**—No time was wasted in celebrations of the victory. Grant pursued Lee with all speed. He had so disposed the Federal army that escape was almost impossible. Sheridan pushed out to the left, severed Lee's communications with Danville, and intercepted his provision trains. Crook, Custer, and Wright cut off General Ewell and his whole corps, forcing them to surrender. Custer, under Sheridan's orders, captured the Confederate supplies again near Appomattox Court-House. On the 7th General Grant, reminding General Lee of the hopelessness of further resistance, asked him to lay down his arms, and April 9, 1865, the Confederate commander, finding his last avenue of retreat



ROBERT E. LEE.

What message did Lee send to President Davis on the 2d of April? 7. What followed? 8. What proposal did Lee make to General Grant? What was the date?



blocked up, proposed an interview to discuss the terms of surrender. The two generals met at Appomattox the same day. The surrender was promptly agreed to. Lee took an affectionate farewell of his officers and men, and the prisoners, twenty-seven thousand in number, were released on parole not to take up arms again against the Government of the United States.

**9. Surrender of Johnston.**—Sherman had begun to press Johnston when news arrived of the surrender of Lee. Johnston thereupon capitulated April 26. All the other Confederate forces in the field speedily did the same, and the great civil war came to an end with enthusiastic rejoicings all over the North. Jefferson Davis, while trying to escape, was captured by a detachment of General J. H. Wilson's cavalry at Irwinsville, Georgia, and was sent to Fortress Monroe, and long confined there a close prisoner on charge of treason. He was at last liberated on bail furnished by Horace Greeley and others, and all proceedings against him were finally abandoned.

**10. Cost of the War.**—At the close of the war the Federal armies numbered 1,000,000 men, of whom about 600,000 were present in the field. The number of Confederate soldiers surrendered and paroled was 174,000, besides whom there were 63,000 prisoners then in the hands of the Federals. The whole number of men who served on the Federal side during the war was about a million and a half; 96,000 were killed, 184,000 died of disease while in the service; many thousands more died of wounds or sickness after leaving the service. The Confederates had about 600,000 men in the field, and about half of them lost their lives by wounds or disease.

---

Where did the two generals meet? What were the terms of surrender? 9. What did Johnston do when he heard of it? What became of Jefferson Davis? 10. Give some figures of the loss on each side.



11. The expenses of the Federal Government amounted at one time to three and a half million dollars a day, and, besides the regular outlay by the Government, enormous sums were spent by the States and cities in bounties to volunteers, and by the Sanitary Commissions and other societies for the comfort of sick and wounded soldiers. The debt of the United States at the end of the war was \$2,750,000,000. The Confederate debt was about \$2,000,000,000, but this was wiped out by the failure of the Confederacy, all its bonds and notes becoming worthless.

12. In the United States funds were raised by the sale of bonds, the issue of paper money, or "greenbacks," and the imposition of heavy taxes, including for some years a tax on incomes. The notes became greatly depreciated, so that in July, 1864, it took nearly three dollars in paper to buy a dollar in gold. Gold and silver entirely disappeared from circulation. The difficult task of managing the finances of the nation was committed to Salmon P. Chase, of Ohio, as Secretary of the Treasury. Mr. Chase resigned in June, 1864, and soon afterward, on the death of Roger B. Taney, was appointed Chief-Justice of the United States. Mr. Fessenden succeeded Mr. Chase as Secretary of the Treasury.

13. The finances of the Confederacy were in a ruinous condition long before the end of the war. The paper money, like that of the Revolution, declined in value, so that it took fifty dollars in paper to buy a dollar in coin; fabulous sums were needed to pay for a pair of boots; food and clothing became very scarce; luxuries of all kinds disappeared; and almost the entire population was reduced to extreme poverty.

---

11. Of the cost of the war. 12. How was money raised in the North?  
13. Give an account of the Confederate finances.



**14. Assassination of President Lincoln.**—In the midst of the rejoicings over the capture of Richmond a crime was committed at Washington which sent a thrill of horror through all civilized countries. President Lincoln was murdered at the theatre, on the evening of April 14, 1865, by an actor named J. Wilkes Booth, who entered the box unperceived and shot Mr. Lincoln through the head, crying, “The South is avenged.” Almost at the same time one of Booth’s accomplices, named Payne, forced his way into the sick-room of Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, stabbed him repeatedly, and severely wounded several members of the family. Both the assassins escaped for the time, but they were soon caught. Booth was killed in resisting arrest. Payne and three accomplices were hanged, and others concerned in the plot were sentenced to imprisonment. Mr. Seward recovered. Andrew Johnson, the Vice-President, immediately took the oath of office as chief executive.

---

14. Describe the assassination of President Lincoln. What was the date? Who became President?

## PART SIXTH.

---

### THE UNION RESTORED.

---

#### CHAPTER LVII.

RECONSTRUCTION—IMPEACHMENT OF PRESIDENT JOHNSON—PRESIDENT GRANT—THE TREATY OF WASHINGTON—THE CENTENARY OF INDEPENDENCE—PRESIDENT HAYES.

1. **Reconstruction.**—The first business that engaged the attention of the President and Congress after the restoration of peace was the establishment of regular governments in the Southern States. Various proclamations of amnesty relieved all the people of those States from any punishment on account of their share in the war, and amendments to the Constitution were adopted to secure the colored people in their freedom and give them the privileges of citizens and voters. About the manner of restoring the State governments, however, a serious quarrel soon arose between President Johnson and Congress.

2. The President appointed provisional governors in the States of the late Confederacy, who were to call conventions of the people for the purpose of restoring their relations to the Union. As this plan would result in

---

1. What was the first important public business after the establishment of peace? 2. What was Mr. Johnson's plan of reconstruction?



excluding the colored people from a share in the reconstruction, Congress disapproved it, and caused military governors to be appointed, under whose supervision elections were held in which the freedmen participated. New constitutions were adopted, and governors and legislatures chosen; and as the reconstructed States complied with the conditions exacted by Congress, their senators and representatives were readmitted to the national capitol.

3. In the course of the disputes over this question the President gradually separated from the Republican party. A law, called the "Tenure-of-Office Act," was passed to prevent his removing civil officers without the consent of the Senate (March, 1867). He removed Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, in violation, as it was alleged, of this law, and the House of Representatives thereupon determined to impeach him.

4. **Impeachment of the President.**—The articles of impeachment accused him of disobeying the tenure-of-office law, and of various other offences, and the trial took place according to the Constitution, members of the House appearing as accusers and the Senate acting as judges. The exciting trial lasted two months, and ended in May with a vote of thirty-five guilty and nineteen not guilty; two-thirds being required to convict, this amounted to an acquittal.

5. **Alaska.**—The Russian possessions in North America, comprising a large and thinly-populated territory at the northwest corner of the continent, were purchased by the United States in 1867 for the sum of \$7,200,000. This territory is known as Alaska.

---

What plan was preferred by Congress? 3. What was the Tenure-of-Office Act? 4. Give an account of the impeachment of the President. 5. What territory was purchased from Russia?



6. Nevada, the thirty-sixth State, was admitted to the Union during Mr. Lincoln's administration (1864). Nebraska, the thirty-seventh, was admitted in 1867; Colorado, the thirty-eighth, in 1876.

7. **Election of President.**—In 1868 General Grant was elected President, as the candidate of the Republican party, and Schuyler Colfax Vice-President. The Democratic candidates were Horatio Seymour, of New York, and Frank P. Blair, of Missouri.

8. **The Alabama Claims.**—The most important event of General Grant's administration was the settlement of the disputes with Great Britain about the responsibility for the depredations of the Confederate cruisers. President Lincoln addressed the British Government on this subject, through Mr. Adams, the American minister at London. The correspondence was continued during the term of Mr. Johnson, the United States urging that Great Britain ought to make compensation for the injury inflicted by her acts, and England refusing to admit any liability.

9. A treaty was at last concluded at Washington, 1871, by which it was agreed that a tribunal of arbitrators appointed by both parties should meet at Geneva, in Switzerland, to decide the question. The tribunal of arbitration decided (1872) that Great Britain was liable, and assessed the damages at fifteen and a half millions of dollars, which sum was promptly paid.

10. **The Fisheries.**—The Treaty of Washington also provided for the settlement of a long-standing dispute about the right of the people of the United States to catch fish off the coasts of the British American provinces. A commission appointed by both parties met at Halifax, and after

---

6. What new States were admitted? 7. What was the result of the elections of 1868? 8. What was the most important act of Gen. Grant's administration? 9. What did the Treaty of Washington provide?



hearing argument decided (1878) that the United States should pay five and a half million dollars for the privilege of the fisheries during twelve years.

**11. The Northwest Boundary.**—A third question considered by the Treaty of Washington was the boundary between British America and the United States on the Northwest, where a small piece of territory was still in dispute. This controversy was referred to the Emperor of Germany, who decided in favor of the claim of the United States.

**12. Re-election of President Grant.**—In 1872 General Grant was nominated by the Republicans for a second term, with Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President. A number of Republicans, dissatisfied with the policy of his administration, organized themselves as the Liberal Republican party and nominated Horace Greeley, editor of the *New York Tribune*, for President, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri, for Vice-President. The Democratic National Convention met soon afterwards and resolved, instead of naming Democratic candidates, to support Greeley and Brown. Grant and Wilson were elected by a large majority. Mr. Greeley died a few weeks after the election.

**13. Indian Hostilities.**—Great trouble was caused soon after the close of the war by the depredations of the Indian tribes of the West and Southwest. The Sioux and Cheyennes began hostilities. An expedition was sent out against them under direction of General Hancock in 1867, and another beyond the Arkansas River in 1868, when General Custer gained an important victory. In an expedition against the Modocs of Oregon in 1873 General Canby was treacherously murdered during a parley

---

10. How was the dispute about the fisheries settled? 11. That about the Northwest boundary? 12. How did the elections of 1872 result? 13. Mention recent incidents in the Indian wars.





with the Indian chiefs. In June, 1876, General Custer and his entire command of two hundred men were killed by the Indians on the Big Horn branch of the Yellowstone River, Montana.

**14. Relations with Spain.**—The relations between the United States and Spain were frequently disturbed by incidents growing out of an insurrection in Cuba. In October, 1873, the steamer *Virginius*, sailing under the United States flag, was seized on the high seas by a Spanish man-of-war on the ground that she was employed by the Cuban insurgents. Preparations were made to enforce amends for this wrong, but at the demand of the President Spain surrendered the steamer.

**15. The Centenary of Independence.**—In 1876 the United States celebrated the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence. There were great rejoicings throughout the country, and the various battles of the Revolution, as well as the signing of the Declaration, were commemorated by appropriate exercises. The Centennial year was chosen for the holding of a great international exhibition at Philadelphia, to which all the nations of the world were invited to contribute. It was opened in May and closed in November, having been visited by about ten millions of people.

**16. Elections of 1876.**—At the elections of 1876 the Republicans supported Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for President, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democratic candidates were Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. The contest was very close, and a dispute arose as to how the votes of certain States ought to be counted,

---

14. What is said of the relations between the United States and Spain? Give an account of the *Virginius* affair. 15. How was the hundredth anniversary of American independence celebrated?



both sides claiming them. Congress finally settled the controversy by creating an Electoral Commission, composed of five senators, five representatives, and five judges of the Supreme Court, to whom the disputed returns were referred. Under the rulings of this commission the votes were counted for Hayes and Wheeler, who thus obtained a majority of one, and were duly inaugurated March 4, 1877.

## CHAPTER LVIII.

### THE CATHOLIC CHURCH IN THE UNITED STATES IN 1878.

#### 1. Growth of the Catholic Church in the United States.

—We have seen that the Catholic Church in the United States at the time of the Revolution was weak and unpopular. It comprised hardly more than twenty-five thousand people, with about twenty-five priests, scattered here and there, and no bishops, and in all the colonies—even in Maryland—it was oppressed by unjust laws and a persecuting public opinion. The first bishop was appointed in 1790, and for eighteen years he was the only one in the United States. There were no Catholic colleges or schools at the time of the Revolution, and no convents, hospitals, or asylums.

2. In fifty years after the erection of the see of Baltimore the number of bishops had increased to seventeen, the number of priests to four hundred and eighty-two, and the Catholic population to about a million and a half. Catholics were then about one in eleven of the whole

---

16. Who were the candidates at the elections of 1876? What dispute arose over the returns? How was it settled? With what result?  
 1. What was the condition of the Catholic Church in America at the time of the Revolution?



number of inhabitants, while in 1776 they were only one in one hundred and twenty.

3. The increase in the numbers of the clergy was everywhere followed by a rapid development of Catholic spirit. Faith was revived among descendants of the early settlers of Louisiana and Maryland, who had long been deprived of the consolations of their religion; churches suddenly arose where a Catholic, only a little while before, had been looked upon as a curiosity; Catholic settlers were found on the most remote frontiers; and many converts were made among the Protestant population.

4. After 1847 a still more remarkable impulse was given to the growth of the Church by the setting in of the great tide of immigration. The early persecuting laws had for the most part been repealed by the States, and the general Government had adopted a policy of hospitality to immigrants; and, favored by these circumstances, hundreds of thousands of Irish and German settlers came to seek their fortunes in the New World. Nearly all the Irish and a large proportion of the Germans were Catholics. Catholics were also among the less numerous arrivals from other foreign nations.

5. Thus at the end of the first hundred years of the nation the Catholics of the United States were supposed to amount to 6,500,000, or one-sixth of all the inhabitants of the Union, having increased, therefore, in the course of a century from one in one hundred and twenty to one in six.

6. They have given to the country a long line of il-

---

2. To what numbers had the Catholic clergy and laity increased in the course of fifty years? 3. What is said of the development of Catholic spirit? 4. What great impulse was given to the growth of the Church after 1847? What is said of the religion of the immigrants? 5. What was the number of the Catholics in 1876? What proportion of the whole population was that?



lustrious men—theologians, philosophers, controversialists, scholars, preachers, statesmen, soldiers. Their missionaries have sought out the most savage Indian tribes; their sisterhoods have carried peace and comfort into hospitals and tenements; a flourishing branch of the Sisters of Charity was established in the United States by an American Catholic lady. Catholic schools have been founded in almost every city, and a system of Christian education has been sustained in the face of great difficulties.

7. In March, 1875, Pope Pius IX. testified his regard for the Church in the United States by creating the first American cardinal. The hat was conferred upon the Most Reverend John McCloskey, Archbishop of New York, and he was solemnly invested with the insignia of his office in the Cathedral of New York, April 27, 1875.

8. In 1878 the Church in the United States had 11 archbishops, 54 bishops and vicars-apostolic, 5,548 priests, 5,634 church buildings, 1,777 chapels and stations, 21 theological seminaries, 74 colleges, 519 academies, 2,130 parish schools, and 350 asylums and hospitals.

---

6. Mention some of the services which Catholics have rendered to the country. 7. What signal mark of regard did Pope Pius IX. show the American Church? Who was the first American cardinal? When was he invested with the dignity? 8. How many archbishops were there in the United States in 1878? Bishops? Priests? Churches? Chapels and stations? Seminaries? Colleges? Academies? Parish schools? Asylums and hospitals?

# APPENDIX.

---

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

PASSED JULY 4, 1776.

*A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America,  
in Congress assembled.*

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over



these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world :

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained ; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise ; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States ; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat-out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us :

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States :



For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world :

For imposing taxes on us without our consent :

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury :

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences :

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies :

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments :

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high-seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace friends.



We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES ; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved ; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

(Signed) JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire.*—JOSIAH BARTLETT, WM. WHIPPLE, MATTHEW THORNTON.

*Massachusetts Bay.*—SAMUEL ADAMS, JOHN ADAMS, ROBERT TREAT PAINE, ELBRIDGE GERRY.

*Rhode Island.*—STEPHEN HOPKINS, WILLIAM ELLERY.

*Connecticut.*—ROGER SHERMAN, SAMUEL HUNTINGTON, WILLIAM WILLIAMS, OLIVER WOLCOTT.

*New York.*—WM. FLOYD, PHILIP LIVINGSTON, FRANCIS LEWIS, LEWIS MORRIS.

*New Jersey.*—RICHARD STOCKTON, JOHN WITHERSPOON, FRANCIS HOPKINSON, JOHN HART, ABRAHAM CLARK.

*Pennsylvania.*—ROBERT MORRIS, BENJAMIN RUSH, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, JOHN MORTON, GEORGE CLYMER, JAMES SMITH, GEORGE TAYLOR, JAMES WILSON, GEORGE ROSS.

*Delaware.*—CÆSAR RODNEY, GEORGE READ, THOMAS M'KEAN.

*Maryland.*—SAMUEL CHASE, WILLIAM PACA, THOMAS STONE, CHARLES CARROLL of Carrollton.

*Virginia.*—GEORGE WYTHE, RICHARD HENRY LEE, THOMAS JEFFERSON, BENJAMIN HARRISON, THOMAS NELSON, JUN., FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE, CARTER BRAXTON.

*North Carolina.*—WILLIAM HOOPER, JOSEPH HEWES, JOHN PENN.

*South Carolina.*—EDWARD RUTLEDGE, THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN., THOMAS LYNCH, JUN., ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

*Georgia.*—BUTTON GWINNETT, LYMAN HALL, GEORGE WALTON.





## CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

## PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, ensure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

## THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.



The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years ; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year ; of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year ; and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside ; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States ; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof ; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall con-



stitute a quorum to do business ; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same ; and for any speech or debate in either house they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time ; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives ; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States ; if he approve, he shall sign it ; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If



any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States ; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8. The Congress shall have power—

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States ; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States ;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes ;

To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court ;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high-seas, and offences against the law of nations ;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

To provide and maintain a navy ;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions ;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and



for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress ;

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings ; and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or ex-post-facto law shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another ; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States ; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment



of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships-of-war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.—THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows :

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress ; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[\*The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves ; and they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President ; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But in choosing the President the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State

\* This clause has been superseded by the Twelfth Amendment, on page 17.



having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.]

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes ; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President ; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office he shall take the following oath or affirmation : " I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States : he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices ; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and, by and with the advice and con-



sent of the Senate, shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law : but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers ; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.—THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls ; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more States ; between a State and citizens of another State ; between citizens of different States ; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.





In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury : and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

#### ARTICLE IV.—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State ; and the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union ; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State, nor any State be formed by the junction of



two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States ; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the legislature or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

#### ARTICLE V.—POWERS OF AMENDMENT.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress ; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

#### ARTICLE VI.—PUBLIC DEBT, SUPREMACY OF THE CONSTITUTION, OATH OF OFFICE, RELIGIOUS TEST.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land : and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers,



both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII.—RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,

*President, and Deputy from Virginia.*

*(Signed by Deputies from all the States except Rhode Island.)*

The Constitution was adopted by the Convention September 17, 1787, and was ratified by conventions of the several States at the following dates, viz. :

Delaware,	December 7, 1787.	Maryland,	April 28, 1788.
Pennsylvania,	December 12, 1787.	South Carolina,	May 23, 1788.
New Jersey,	December 18, 1787.	New Hampshire,	June 21, 1788.
Georgia,	January 2, 1788.	Virginia,	June 26, 1788.
Connecticut,	January 9, 1788.	New York,	July 26, 1788.
Massachusetts,	February 6, 1788.	North Carolina,	Nov. 21, 1789.
		Rhode Island,	May 29, 1790.

#### ARTICLES IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF, THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES,

*Proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the Fifth Article of the foregoing Constitution.*

##### ARTICLE I.—FREEDOM OF RELIGION.

*The first ten articles were proposed by Congress in 1789, and declared adopted in 1791.*

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof ; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press, or of the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.



## ARTICLE II.—RIGHT TO BEAR ARMS.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

## ARTICLE III.—QUARTERING SOLDIERS ON CITIZENS.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

## ARTICLE IV.—SEARCH-WARRANTS.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched and the persons or things to be seized.

## ARTICLE V.—TRIAL FOR CRIME.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb, nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

## ARTICLE VI.—RIGHTS OF ACCUSED PERSONS.

In all criminal prosecutions the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor ; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

## ARTICLE VII.—SUITS AT COMMON LAW.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.



## ARTICLE VIII.—EXCESSIVE BAIL.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

## ARTICLE IX.—RIGHTS RETAINED BY THE PEOPLE.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

## ARTICLE X.—RESERVED RIGHTS OF THE STATES.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

## ARTICLE XI.—RESTRICTION ON THE JUDICIAL POWER.

*Proposed by Congress in 1794 and declared adopted in 1793.*

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

## ARTICLE XII.—METHOD OF ELECTING A PRESIDENT.

*Proposed by Congress and declared adopted in 1804.*

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves ; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives



shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President ; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

### ARTICLE XIII.—SLAVERY.

*Proposed by Congress in 1865, and declared adopted December, 1865.*

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

### ARTICLE XIV.—CIVIL RIGHTS.

*Proposed by Congress in —, and declared adopted July 28, 1868.*

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States ; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law ; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed ; but when

the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State (being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States), or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in said State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector, or President, or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties, for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned; but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave. But all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this Article.

## ARTICLE XV.—CIVIL RIGHTS.

*Proposed—; adopted—.*

SECTION 1. The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.



## ADMINISTRATIONS OF THE FIRST

YEAR.	PRESIDENTS.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.	SECRETARIES OF STATE.	SECRETARIES OF TREASURY.
1789-1797	George Washington (Federal).	John Adams.	Thomas Jefferson, Edmund Randolph, Timothy Pickering.	Alex. Hamilton, Oliver Wolcott.
1797-1801	John Adams (Fed.)	Thos. Jefferson.	Timothy Pickering, John Marshall.	Oliver Wolcott, Samuel Dexter.
1801-1809	Thomas Jefferson (Republican).	Aaron Burr, George Clinton.	James Madison.	Samuel Dexter, Albert Gallatin.
1809-1817	James Madison (Democrat).	George Clinton, Elbridge Gerry.	Robert Smith, James Monroe.	Albert Gallatin, Geo. W. Campbell, Alex. J. Dallas.
1817-1825	James Monroe (D.)	D. D. Tompkins.	John Q. Adams.	Wm. H. Crawford.
1825-1829	John Quincy Adams (Coalition).	John C. Calhoun.	Henry Clay.	Richard Rush.
1829-1837	Andrew Jackson (Dem.)	John C. Calhoun, Martin Van Buren.	Martin Van Buren, Edward Livingston, Louis McLane, John Forsyth.	S. D. Ingham, Louis McLane, Wm. J. Duane, Roger B. Taney, Levi Woodbury.
1837-1841	Martin Van Buren (Dem.)	Richard M. Johnson.	John Forsyth.	Levi Woodbury.
1841-1845	William Henry Harrison (Whig). (D. April 4, 1841, and John Tyler became President.)	John Tyler.	Daniel Webster, Hugh S. Legaré, Abel P. Upshur, John Nelson, John C. Calhoun.	Thomas Ewing, Walter Forward, Caleb Cushing, John C. Spencer, G. M. Bibb.
1845-1849	James K. Polk (D.)	George M. Dallas.	James Buchanan.	Robert J. Walker.
1849-1853	Zachary Taylor (W. (Died July 9, 1850, and Millard Fillmore became President.)	Millard Fillmore.	John M. Clayton, Daniel Webster, Edward Everett.	Wm. M. Meredith, Thomas Corwin.
1853-1857	Franklin Pierce (D.)	William R. King.	William L. Marcy.	James Guthrie.
1857-1861	Jas. Buchanan (D.)	John C. Breckinridge.	Lewis Cass, Jeremiah S. Black.	Howell Cobb, Phillip F. Thomas, John A. Dix.
1861-1869	Abr'm Lincoln (R. (Died Ap. 15, 1865, in 2d term, and And. Johnson became President.)	Hannibal Hamlin, Andrew Johnson.	Wm. H. Seward.	Salmon P. Chase, W. I. Fessenden, Hugh McCulloch.
1869-1876	Ulysses S. Grant (R.)	Schnyler Colfax, Henry Wilson.	E. B. Washburne, Hamilton Fish.	Geo. S. Boutwell, W. A. Richardson, B. H. Bristow, L. M. Morrill.

*Present Administration—1877-1881—R. B. Hayes, Pres.; Wm. A. Wheeler, Vice-Pres.; of War; R. W. Thompson, Sec. of Navy; Carl Schurz, Sec. of Interior;*





## CENTURY OF THE REPUBLIC.

SECRETARIES OF WAR.	SECRETARIES OF NAVY.	SECRETARIES OF INTERIOR.	POSTMASTER-GENERALS.	ATTORNEY-GENERALS.	
Henry Knox, Tim. Pickering, Jas. McHenry.	(No Navy Dept. during Washington's Administration.)	(The Department of the Interior was organized in 1849.)	Samuel Osgood, T. Pickering, J. Habersham.	E. Randolph, Wm. Bradford, Charles Lee.	
Jas. McHenry, Samuel Dexter, R. Griswold.	George Cabot, Benjamin Stoddert.		J. Habersham.	Charles Lee.	
H. Dearborn.	Benjamin Stoddert, Robert Smith, Jac. Crowninshield.		J. Habersham, Gid. Granger.	Levi Lincoln, Robert Smith, J. Breckinridge, Chas. A. Rodney.	
William Eustis, J. Armstrong, W. H. Crawford.	Paul Hamilton, William Jones, Benj. W. Crowninshield.		Gid. Granger, Return J. Meigs.	Chas. A. Rodney, Wm. Pinckney, Richard Rush.	
Isaac Shelby, G. Graham, J. C. Calhoun.	Benj. W. Crowninshield, Smith Thompson, John Rogers, Samuel L. Southard.		Return J. Meigs, John McLean.	Richard Rush, William Wirt.	
James Barbour, P. B. Porter.	Samuel L. Southard.		John McLean.	William Wirt.	
John H. Eaton, Lewis Cass.	John Branch, Levi Woodbury, M. Dickerson.		Wm. T. Barry, Amos Kendall.	J. McP. Berrien, Roger B. Taney, Benj. F. Butler.	
J. R. Poinsett.	M. Dickerson, James K. Paulding.		Amos Kendall, John M. Niles.	Benj. F. Butler, Felix Grundy, H. D. Gilpin.	
John Bell, John McLean, J. C. Spencer, J. M. Porter, W. Williams.	George E. Badger, Abel P. Upshur, D. Henshaw, Thomas W. Gilmer, John Y. Mason.		F. Granger, C. A. Wickliffe.	J. J. Crittenden, Hugh S. Legaré, John Nelson.	
Wm. L. Marcy.	George Bancroft, John Y. Mason.		Cave Johnson.	John Y. Mason, N. Clifford, Isaac Toucey.	
G. W. Crawford, W. A. Graham, J. P. Kennedy.	W. B. Preston.		Thomas Ewing, J. A. Pearce, T. McKennon, A. H. H. Stuart.	Jacob Collamer, N. K. Hall, S. D. Hubbard.	R. Johnson, J. J. Crittenden.
Jefferson Davis, John B. Floyd, Joseph Holt.	James C. Dobbin, Isaac Toucey.		R. McClellan, Jac. Thompson.	Jas. Campbell, A. V. Brown, Joseph Holt, Horatio King.	Caleb Cushing, J. S. Black, E. M. Stanton.
Sim'n Cameron, E. M. Stanton.	Gideon Welles.		Caleb B. Smith, J. P. Usher, James Harlan, O. H. Browning.	Montgom. Blair, Wm. Dennison, A. W. Randall.	Edward Bates, James Speed, H. F. Stanbery.
J. M. Schofield, J. A. Rawlins, W. W. Belknap, J. D. Cameron.	Adolph E. Borie, George M. Robeson.		Jacob D. Cox, C. Delano, Zach. Chandler.	J. A. J. Cresswell, Marshall Jewell, J. N. Tyner.	E. R. Hoar, A. T. Akerman, G. H. Williams, E. Pierrepont, A. Taft.

Wm. M. Evarts, Sec. of State; John Sherman, Sec. of Treasury; G. W. McCrary, Sec. D. M. Key, Postmaster-Gen.; Chas. Devens, Attorney-Gen.

# BATTLE RECORD OF THE REPUBLIC.

## REVOLUTIONARY WAR.\*

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		American.	British.		Am.	Br.
April 19, 1775	Concord.....	Parker.....	Pitcairn....	Amer.	88	273
April 19, "	Lexington.....	Barrett.....	Pitcairn....			
June 17, "	Bunker Hill.....	Prescott.....	Howe.....	Brit.	449	1054
Dec. 9, "	Great Bridge.....	Woodford.....		Amer.	Nil.	62
Dec. 31, "	Quebec.....	Montgomery..		Brit.	586	20
Feb. 27, 1776	Moore's Creek Bridge	Caswell.....	McDonald...	Amer.	Nil	70
Mar. 17, "	Boston (surrendered)....	Washington...	Howe.....	Amer.	Nil.	Nil.
June 23, "	Fort Sullivan.....	Moultrie.....	Parker.....	Amer.	24	225
Aug. 27, "	Long Island.....	Sullivan.....	Clinton.....	Brit.	1600	367
Sept. 16, "	Harlem Heights.....	Knowlton.....		Amer.	50	100
Oct. 28, "	White Plains.....	Washington...	Howe.....	Indec.	300	300
Nov. 16, "	Fort Washington.....	Magaw.....	Knyphautsen	Brit.	2500	1000
Dec. 26, "	Trenton.....	Washington...	Rahl.....	Amer.	4	1040
Jan. 3, 1777	Princeton.....	Washington...	Mawhood...	Amer.	100	430
July 7, "	Hubbardton.....	Warren.....	Fraser.....	Brit.	300	183
Aug. 6, "	Oriskany.....	Herkimer.....	St. Leger.....	Brit.		
Aug. 16, "	Bennington.....	Stark.....	Baum.....	Amer.	56	807
Sept. 11, "	Brandywine.....	Washington...	Howe.....	Brit.	1200	590
Sept. 19, "	Bemis' Heights.....	Gates.....	Burgoyne...	Indec.	319	600
Sept. 20, "	Paoli.....	Wayne.....	Grey.....	Brit.	300	
Oct. 4, "	Germantown.....	Washington...	Howe.....	Brit.	1000	600
Oct. 6, "	Fts. Clinton & Montgom.	Jas. Clinton..	Sir H. Clinton	Brit.	300	140
Oct. 7, "	Bemis' Heights (2d battle)	Gates.....	Burgoyne...	Amer.	150	1700
Oct. 22, "	Fort Mercer.....	Greene.....	Donop.....	Amer.	50	400
Nov. 16, "	Fort Mifflin.....	Smith.....	Howe.....	Brit.	250	400
June 28, 1778	Monmouth.....	Washington...	Clinton.....	Amer.	229	300
July 4, "	Wyoming †.....	Zeb. Butler...	John Butler..	Brit.	400	
Aug. 29, "	Quaker Hill.....	Sullivan.....	Pigot.....	Amer.	200	220
Dec. 29, "	Savannah.....	Robt. Howe...	Campbell....	Brit.	553	24
Feb. 14, 1779	Kettle Creek.....	Pickens.....	Boyd.....	Amer.	38	145
Mar. 3, "	Brier Creek.....	Ashe.....	Prevost.....	Brit.	2000	16
June 20, "	Stono Ferry.....	Lincoln.....	Prevost.....	Brit.	300	270
July 16, "	Stony Point.....	Wayne.....	Johnson.....	Amer.	98	606
Aug. 18, "	Paulus' Hook.....	Lee.....		Amer.		159
Oct. 4-9, "	Savannah (besieged)....	Lincoln.....	Prevost.....	Brit.	1457	120
May 12, 1780	Charleston (surrendered)...	Lincoln.....	Clinton.....	Brit.	6000	
June 23, "	Springfield.....	Greene.....	Knyphausen	Amer.		
July 30, "	Rocky Mount.....	Sumter.....		Brit.	13	20
Aug. 6, "	Hanging Rock.....	Sumter.....		Amer.	53	
Aug. 16, "	Sanders' Creek.....	Gates.....	Cornwallis..	Brit.	1000	325
Oct. 7, "	King's Mountain.....	Campbell....	Ferguson....	Amer.	20	1100
Nov. 18, "	Fish Dam Ford.....	Sumter.....	Wemyss.....	Amer.		
Nov. 20, "	Blackstocks.....	Sumter.....	Tarleton....	Amer.	8	200
Jan. 17, 1781	Cowpens.....	Morgan.....	Tarleton....	Amer.	80	700
Mar. 15, "	Guilford C. H.....	Greene.....	Cornwallis..	Brit.	400	600
April 25, "	Hobkirk's Hill.....	Greene.....	Rawdon....	Brit.	266	258
May, "	Ft. Ninety-Six (besieged)...	Greene.....	Cruger.....	Brit.	150	
May, "	Augusta (besieged).....	Lee.....	Brown.....	Amer.	51	386
July 9, "	Jamestown.....	Wayne.....	Cornwallis..	Brit.		
Sept. 6, "	Groton.....	Ledyard.....	Arnold.....	Brit.	60	
Sept. 6, "	New London.....		Arnold.....	Brit.		
Sept. 8, "	Eutaw Springs.....	Greene.....	Stewart.....	Amer.	555	693
Oct. 19, "	Yorktown (surrendered)...	Washington....	Cornwallis..	Amer. & Fr'nch	300	7567

\* In these tables several mere skirmishes are omitted.

† Burgoyne's whole army, numbering 5,791, was surrendered on October 17.

‡ Massacre.

§ The French, under D'Estaing, lost 637.

— † —  
THE WAR OF 1812.

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		Victor.	Loss.	
		American.	British.		Am	Br.
July 17, 1812	Fort Mackinaw.....			Brit.		
Aug. 4, "	Brownstown.....	Van Horne.....		Brit.	25	
Aug. 16, "	Detroit (surrendered)	Hull.....	Brock	Brit.	2340	
Oct. 13, "	Queenstown Heights.....	Van Rensselaer	Brock	Brit.	1014	
Jan. 18, 1813	Frenchtown.....	Allen.....		Amer.	67	88
Jan. 22, "	River Raisin (massacre)	Winchester	Proctor	Brit.	946	182
Feb. 22, "	Ogdensburg.....	Forsyth.....		Brit.	20	55
April 27, "	York.....	Pike.....	Sheaffe	Amer.	280	700
May 27, "	Fort George.....	Dearborn.....		Amer.	121	893
May 29, "	Sackett's Harbor.....	Brown.....	Prevost	Amer.	106	
June 6, "	Stony Creek.....	Chandler.....	Vincent	Brit.	153	
June 13, "	Hampton.....	Crutchefield	Beckwith	Amer.	1	200
June 22, "	Craney Island.....	Beatty.....		Amer.	Nil.	200
June 23, "	Beaver Dams.....	Baerster.....		Brit.	535	65
July 11, "	Black Rock.....	Porter.....	Bisshopp	Amer.	9	23
Aug. 2, "	Fort Stephenson.....	Croghan.....	Proctor	Amer.	8	150
Aug. 9, "	Stonington.....		Hardy	Amer.	6	80
Aug. 30, "	Fort Mifflin.....	Beasley.....		Ind'ns	300	600
Oct. 5, "	Thames.....	Harrison.....	Proctor	Amer.	29	617
Nov. 9, "	Talladega.....	Jackson.....		Amer.	101	290
Nov. 11, "	Chrysler's Field.....	Boyd.....	Morrison	Brit.	338	
Nov. 18, "	Hillabee Towns.....	White.....		Amer.	Nil.	317
Dec. 19, "	Fort Niagara.....	McClure.....	Murray	Brit.	423	8
Dec. 30, "	Black Rock.....	Hall.....		Indec.	102	75
Jan. 22, 1814	Emucfau.....	Jackson.....		Amer.	95	190
Mar. 27, "	Horseshoe Bend.....	Jackson.....		Amer.	204	600
Mar. 30, "	La Colle Mills.....	Wilkinson.....	Hancock	Amer.	138	56
May 5, "	Fort Oswego.....	Mitchell.....		Amer.	69	235
July 5, "	Chippewa.....	Brown.....	Riall	Amer.	300	550
July 25, "	Lundy's Lane.....	Brown.....	Drummond	Amer.	743	878
Aug. 1, "	Fort Erie (besieged).....	Gaines.....	Drummond	Amer.	112	1400
Aug. 4, "	Fort Mackinaw.....	Croghan.....		Brit.	74	
Aug. 24, "	Bladensburg.....	Winder.....	Ross	Brit.	190	
Sept. 11, "	Plattsburg.....	McComb.....	Prevost	Amer.	102	1500
Sept. 12, "	North Point.....	Strycker.....	Ross	Amer.	163	220
Sept. 17, "	Fort Erie.....	Brown.....		Amer.	295	1000
Jan. 8, 1815	New Orleans.....	Jackson.....	Pakenham	Amer.	53	2053

## MEXICAN WAR.

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		Victor.	Loss.	
		American.	Mexican.		Am	M'x
May 3, 1816	Fort Brown.....	Brown.....	Ampudia	Amer.	1	
May 8, "	Palo Alto.....	Taylor.....	Arista	Amer.	53	600
May 9, "	Resaca de la Palma.....	Taylor.....	Arista	Amer.	110	1100
Sep. 21-24, "	Monterey.....	Taylor.....	Ampudia	Amer.	561	1000
Feb. 23, 1817	Buena Vista.....	Taylor.....	Santa Anna	Amer.	716	2000
Feb. 28, "	Chihuahua.....	Doniphan.....		Amer.		
Mar. 22-26 "	Vera Cruz (siege)	Scott.....		Amer.	80	7000
April 18, "	Cerro Gordo.....	Scott.....	Santa Anna	Amer.	431	4000
Aug. 20, "	Contreras.....	P. F. Smith.....	Valencia	Am. }	1015	7000
Aug. 20, "	Churubusco.....	Worth.....	Santa Anna	A. n. }		
Sept. 8, "	El Molino del Rey.....	Worth.....	Santa Anna	Amer.	800	1000
Sept. 13, "	Chapultepec.....	Scott.....	Santa Anna	Amer.		
Sept. 14, "	City of Mexico (surrend.)	Scott.....	Santa Anna	Amer.		
Dec. 25, "	Bracito.....	Doniphan.....		Amer.		



## THE CIVIL WAR.

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	Loss.	
		Federal.	Confederate.		Fed.	Con.
April 14, 1861	Fort Sumter . . . . .	Anderson . . . . .	Beauregard . . . . .	Conf.	Nil.	Nil.
June 10, "	Big Bethel . . . . .	Butler . . . . .	Magruder . . . . .	Conf.	100	8
June 17, "	Booneville . . . . .	Lyon . . . . .	Marmaduke . . . . .	Fed.	.....	.....
July 6, "	Carthage . . . . .	Sigel . . . . .	Price . . . . .	Indec	43	190
July 10, "	Rieh Mountain . . . . .	Rosecrans . . . . .	Pegram . . . . .	Fed.	.....	735
July 21, "	Bull Run . . . . .	McDowell . . . . .	Beauregard . . . . .	Conf.	3051	1887
Aug. 10, "	Wilson's Creek . . . . .	Lyon . . . . .	McCulloch . . . . .	Conf.	1236	1095
Aug. 26-30, "	Hatteras Expedition . . . . .	Butler . . . . .	Barron . . . . .	Fed.	.....	700
Sept. 20, "	Lexington . . . . .	Mulligan . . . . .	Price . . . . .	Conf.	160	100
Oct. 21, "	Ball's Bluff . . . . .	Baker . . . . .	Evans . . . . .	Conf.	1000	155
Oct. 29-Nov. 7, "	Port Royal Expedition . . . . .	T. W. Sherman . . . . .	Drayton . . . . .	Fed.	.....	.....
Nov. 7, "	Belmont . . . . .	Grant . . . . .	Polk . . . . .	Indec	400	800
Jan. 10, 1862	Middle Creek . . . . .	Garfield . . . . .	Marshall . . . . .	Fed.	.....	.....
Jan. 19, "	Mill Spring . . . . .	Thomas . . . . .	Crittenden . . . . .	Fed.	246	343
Feb. 6, "	Fort Henry . . . . .	Foote . . . . .	Tilghman . . . . .	Fed.	73	83
Feb. 7-9, "	Roanoke Island . . . . .	Burnside . . . . .	Wise . . . . .	Fed.	260	2500
Feb. 16, "	Fort Donelson . . . . .	Grant . . . . .	Floyd . . . . .	Fed.	2000	12000
Mar. 7-8, "	Pea Ridge . . . . .	Curtis . . . . .	Van Dorn . . . . .	Fed.	1351	1300
April 6-7, "	Shiloh . . . . .	Grant . . . . .	Johnston . . . . .	Fed.	13575	10699
April 7, "	Island No. 10 . . . . .	Pope . . . . .	Makall . . . . .	Fed.	.....	6976
May 5, "	Williamsburg . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Johnston . . . . .	Fed.	2228	1300
May 25, "	Winchester . . . . .	Banks . . . . .	Jackson . . . . .	Conf.	904	397
May 27, "	Hanover Court-House . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Johnston . . . . .	Fed.	397	930
May 31-June 1, "	S'v'n Pin's or F'ire O'ks . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Johnston . . . . .	Fed.	5739	4232
June 8, "	Cross Keys . . . . .	Fremont . . . . .	Jackson . . . . .	Indec	664	329
June 9, "	Port Republic . . . . .	Shields . . . . .	Jackson . . . . .	Conf.	450	67
J'c 26-Jul. 1, "	Seven Days' Battles . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Ind.*	15249	19000
Aug. 5, "	Baton Rouge . . . . .	Williams . . . . .	Breckinridge . . . . .	Fed.	300	400
Aug. 9, "	Cedar Mountain . . . . .	Banks . . . . .	Jackson . . . . .	Conf.	2000	1314
Aug. 30, "	Bull Run (2d battle) . . . . .	Pope . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Conf.	18000	8400
Sept. 14, "	South Mountain . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Fed.	1568	2000
Sept. 15, "	Harper's Ferry . . . . .	Miles . . . . .	Jackson . . . . .	Conf.	11583	.....
Sept. 17, "	Antietam . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Indec	12469	13533
Sept. 19, 20, "	Iuka . . . . .	Rosecrans . . . . .	Price . . . . .	Fed.	782	1438
Oct. 3, "	Corinth . . . . .	Rosecrans . . . . .	Van Dorn . . . . .	Fed.	2359	9271
Oct. 8, "	Perryville . . . . .	Buell . . . . .	Bragg . . . . .	Indec	4348	2500
Dec. 7, "	Prairie Grove . . . . .	Blunt . . . . .	Hindman . . . . .	Fed.	1148	1317
Dec. 13, "	Fredericksburg . . . . .	Burnside . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Conf.	12000	6000
Dec. 20, "	Holly Springs . . . . .	Murphy . . . . .	Van Dorn . . . . .	Conf.	1900	20
Dec. 27, 29, "	Chickasaw Bayou . . . . .	Sherman . . . . .	Pemberton . . . . .	Conf.	2000	207
D'c 31-J' n 2, 1863	Stone River, etc. . . . .	Rosecrans . . . . .	Bragg . . . . .	Fed.	8778	10000
Jan. 11, "	Arkansas Post . . . . .	McClermand . . . . .	Churchill . . . . .	Fed.	977	4640
May 1, "	Port Gibson . . . . .	McClermand . . . . .	Bowen . . . . .	Fed.	848	580
May 1-4, "	Chancellorsville . . . . .	Hooker . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Indec	17197	13000
May 12, "	Raymond . . . . .	McPherson . . . . .	Gregg . . . . .	Fed.	442	823
May 14, "	Jackson . . . . .	McPherson . . . . .	Walker . . . . .	Fed.	265	845
May 16, "	Champion Hill . . . . .	Grant . . . . .	Pemberton . . . . .	Fed.	2457	4400
May 17, "	Big Black . . . . .	Grant . . . . .	Pemberton . . . . .	Fed.	276	1500
June 27, "	Hanover Junction . . . . .	McClellan . . . . .	Johnston . . . . .	Fed.	399	930
July 1-4, "	Gottysburg . . . . .	Meade . . . . .	Lee . . . . .	Fed.	23186	36000
July 4, "	Vicksburg (surrender) . . . . .	Grant . . . . .	Pemberton . . . . .	Fed.	4236	27000
July 4, "	Helena . . . . .	Prentiss . . . . .	Holmes . . . . .	Fed.	250	1636
July 9, "	Port Hudson . . . . .	Banks . . . . .	Gardiner . . . . .	Fed.	3000	7208
July 16, "	Jackson . . . . .	Sherman . . . . .	Johnston . . . . .	Fed.	500	600
July 10-18, "	Fort Wagner . . . . .	Gillmore . . . . .	Keitt . . . . .	Conf.	1700	670
Sept. 19, 20, "	Chickamauga Creek . . . . .	Rosecrans . . . . .	Bragg . . . . .	Conf.	16351	18000
Nov. 16, "	Campbell's Station . . . . .	Burnside . . . . .	Longstreet . . . . .	Indec	300	300
Nov 17-D'c 4, "	Knoxville (besieged) . . . . .	Burnside . . . . .	Longstreet . . . . .	Fed.	1000	2500

\* The results of these battles varied from day to day, but on the whole the advantage was with the Federals.

†

THE CIVIL WAR (Continued).

DATE.	BATTLE.	COMMANDER.		VICTOR.	LOSS.	
		Federal.	Confederate.		Fed.	Con.
Nov. 24, 1863	Lookout Mountain	Grant	Bragg	Fed		
Nov. 25, "	Missionary Ridge	Grant	Bragg	Fed	5616	8000
Feb. 20, 1864	Olustee	Seymour	Pinnegan	Conf.	2000	730
April 8, "	Sabine Cross Roads	Banks	Smith	Conf		
April 9, "	Pleasant Hill	Banks	Smith	Fed	5000	5000
April 12, "	Fort Pillow	Booth	Forrest	Conf.	550	80
May 5, 6, "	Wilderness	Grant	Lee	Indec	29410	8000
May 7-12, "	Spottsylvania	Grant	Lee	Indec	10381	
May 14, 15, "	Resaca	McPherson	Johnston	Indec		
May 25, "	New Hope Church	Sherman	Johnston	Indec		
June 1-3, "	Cold Harbor	Grant	Lee	Conf.	13153	1600
June 21, 22, "	Weldon Railroad	Birney	Hill	Conf.	4000	
June 27, "	Kenesaw Mountain	Sherman	Johnston	Conf.	3000	442
July 20, "	Peach Tree Creek	Sherman	Hood	Indec	1500	5000
July 22, "	Decatur	Sherman	Hood	Indec		
July 20-26, "	Atlanta	Sherman	Hood	Fed.		13000
July 15-Jul. 30, "	Petersburg (3 assaults)	Grant	Lee	Conf.	18989	
Aug. 18-21, "	Weldon Railroad	Warren	Hill	Fed.	4543	1200
Aug 31-Sept 1, "	Jonesborough	Sherman	Hardee	Fed.		
Sept. 2, "	Atlanta (captured)	Sherman	Hood	Fed.		
Sept. 19, "	Winchester	Sheridan	Early	Fed.	3000	8000
Sept. 22, "	Fisher's Hill	Sheridan	Early	Fed.		1100
Oct. 6, "	Allatoona Pass	Corse	French	Fed.	707	642
Oct. 19, "	Cedar Creek	Sheridan	Early	Fed.	3000	3350
Oct. 27, "	Hatcher's Run	Grant	Lee	Conf.	1500	1600
Nov. 30, "	Franklin	Schofield	Hood	Fed.	2300	5500
Dec. 14, "	Fort McAllister	Hazen		Fed.	90	210
Dec. 15, 16, "	Nashville	Thomas	Hood	Fed.		
Jan. 16, 1865	Fort Fisher (captured)	Terry	Whiting	Fed.	646	2083
Feb. 5, "	Hatcher's Run	Grant	Lee	Conf.	2000	1000
March 16, "	Averysborough	Sherman	Hardee	Fed.	554	550
March 18, "	Bentonville	Sherman	Johnston	Fed.	1643	1892
Mar 31-Apr 1, "	Five Forks	Sheridan	Lee	Fed.	1000	6000
April 2, "	Petersburg (evacuated)	Grant	Lee	Fed.		
April 8-12, "	Mobile	Canby	Taylor	Fed.	35	
April 9, "	Appomattox C. H.*	Grant	Lee	Fed.		27000
April 26, "	Smithfield	Sherman	Johnston	Fed.		35000

\* Lee here capitulated with his whole army, and on the 26th Johnston also surrendered, while minor commands elsewhere were given up later on, and the war ended.

### INDIAN WARS.

**BLACK HAWK WAR.**—This war began with attacks on the frontier settlers of Illinois by the Sacs, under their chief, Black Hawk. The war lasted from the middle of May, 1832, till August 2 of the same year, when it ended in the utter defeat of the Indians at the junction of the Bad Axe and Mississippi rivers. During the war twenty-two white people were killed and forty wounded; the Indians lost in killed 233.

**SEMINOLE WAR.**—This war began toward the close of 1835, and grew out of an attempt by the Government to remove the Seminoles beyond the Mississippi. With varying fortunes it dragged along for seven years, ending with the engagement at Pīlaklikaha Big Hammock on April 19, 1842. The war cost the United States many valuable lives and millions of treasure.

There have been several minor wars with Indian tribes, such as the Modoc War, in which Gen. Canby was murdered, and that with Sitting Bull's tribe, in which Gen. Custer and his entire command perished.



## NAVAL BATTLES.

- April, 1778. Paul Jones attacks Whitehaven.  
 Sept. 23, 1779. Paul Jones, in the *Bon Homme Richard*, captures British frigate *Serapis*.  
 Feb., 1799. French frigate *L'Insurgente* taken by U. S. frigate *Constellation*.  
 Feb., 1800. Engagement between *Constellation* and *La Vengeance*.  
 Feb. 3, 1804. U. S. frigate *Philadelphia*, which had been taken by the Tripolitans, was destroyed in the harbor of Tripoli by Decatur.  
 Aug., 1804. Tripoli bombarded by Commodore Preble.  
 May 16, 1811. Combat between U. S. frigate *President* and British sloop *Little Belt*.  
 Aug. 13, 1812. U. S. frigate *Essex* captured British sloop *Alert*.  
 Aug. 13, 1812. U. S. frigate *Constitution* captured British frigate *Guerriere*.  
 Oct. 18, 1812. U. S. sloop *Wasp* took British brig *Frolic*, but both vessels were captured on same afternoon by British seventy-four *Poitiers*.  
 Oct. 25, 1812. U. S. frigate *United States* captured British frigate *Macedonia*.  
 Dec. 29, 1812. U. S. frigate *Constitution* captured British frigate *Java*.  
 Feb. 10, 1813. U. S. sloop *Hornet* captured British brig *Resolute*, and on Feb. 24 the British brig *Peacock*.  
 June 1, 1813. U. S. frigate *Chesapeake* surrendered to British frigate *Shannon*.  
 Aug. 14, 1813. U. S. sloop *Argus* surrendered to British sloop *Pelican*.  
 Sept. 5, 1813. U. S. brig *Enterprise* captured British brig *Boxer*.  
 Sept. 13, 1813. Commodore Perry captured British fleet on Lake Erie.  
 Oct. 5, 1813. Commodore Chamcey captured British flotilla on Lake Ontario.  
 Mar. 28, 1814. U. S. frigate *Essex* surrendered to British ships *Phœbe* and *Cherub*.  
 April 20, 1814. U. S. sloop *Frolic* surrendered to British frigate *Orpheus*.  
 April 29, 1814. U. S. sloop *Peacock* captured British brig *Epervier*.  
 June 28, 1814. U. S. sloop *Wasp* captured British brig *Reindeer*.  
 Aug. 9-12, 1814. A British fleet, under Commodore Hardy, attacked Stonington.  
 Sept. 11, 1814. Commodore Macdonough's fleet on Lake Champlain captured British fleet.  
 Jan. 15, 1815. U. S. frigate *President* surrendered to British frigate *Endymion*.  
 Feb. 20, 1815. U. S. frigate *Constitution* captured British ships of war *Cyane* and *Levant*.  
 Feb. 23, 1815. U. S. sloop *Hornet* captured British brig *Penguin*.  
 March, 1847. Commodore Conner, with U. S. fleet, bombarded Vera Cruz.  
 July 13, 1854. U. S. sloop *Cyane*, Captain Hollins, bombarded San Juan de Nicaragua.  
 Aug. 29, 1861. Federal fleet, under Com. Stringham, captured forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C.  
 Nov. 7, 1861. Federal fleet, under Com. Dupont, captured Port Royal, S. C.  
 Feb. 6, 1862. Federal gunboats, under Com. Foote, captured Fort Henry, Tenn.  
 Mar. 9, 1862. Engagement between Federal iron-clad *Monitor* and Confederate iron-clad *Merrimae*, after the latter had destroyed the *Cumberland* and Congress.  
 April 25, 1862. Federal fleet, under Flag-Officer Farragut, after reducing Forts Jackson and St. Philip, and destroying a Confederate fleet, captured New Orleans.  
 June 5, 1862. Federal fleet, under Com. Davis, destroyed Confederate fleet and captured Memphis.  
 Feb. 8, 1863. Federal fleet, under Com. Goldsborough, captured forts on Roanoke Island, N. C.

NAVAL BATTLES (*Continued*).

- April 7, 1863. Federal fleet, under Com. Dupont, is repulsed in an attempt to reduce Charleston, S. C.
- April. 1863. U. S. frigate Niagara captured Confederate cruiser Georgia.
- Sept. 7, 1863. Federal fleet, under Com. Dahlgren, aided in reduction of Fort Wagner, by which the port of Charleston was entirely closed.
- March, 1864. A Federal fleet, under Rear-Admiral Porter, co-operated with a land force under General Banks, in an expedition against Shreveport, on the Red River, La. The expedition was unsuccessful, and the fleet was only saved from destruction by a dam constructed under the supervision of Lieut.-Col. Bailey.
- June 19, 1864. Federal sloop-of-war Kearsarge, Capt. Winslow, sunk Confederate steamer Alabama.
- Aug. 5, 1864. Federal fleet, under Rear-Admiral Farragut, reduced Forts Gaines and Morgan, and destroyed Confederate fleet in Mobile Bay.
- Oct., 1864. Lieut. Wm. B. Cushing, with thirteen men, destroys Confederate iron-clad Albemarle in Roanoke River.
- Jau. 16, 1865. Federal fleet, under Com. Porter, aided in capture of Fort Fisher.



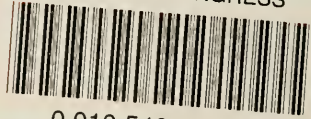








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 010 546 391 1

